

ASME BPE-2012
(Revision of ASME BPE-2009)

Bioprocessing Equipment

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012

AN INTERNATIONAL STANDARD



**The American Society of
Mechanical Engineers**

Copyright © 2012 by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
No reproduction may be made of this material without written consent of ASME.



INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

ASME BPE-2012
(Revision of ASME BPE-2009)

Bioprocessing Equipment

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012

AN INTERNATIONAL STANDARD



**The American Society of
Mechanical Engineers**

Three Park Avenue • New York, NY • 10016 USA

Copyright © 2012 by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
No reproduction may be made of this material without written consent of ASME.



Date of Issuance: September 28, 2012

The next edition of this Standard is scheduled for publication in 2014. There will be no addenda issued to this edition.

ASME issues written replies to inquiries concerning interpretations of technical aspects of this Standard. Periodically, certain actions of the ASME BPE Committee may be published as Code Cases. Code Cases and interpretations are published on the ASME Web site under the Committee Pages at <http://cstools.asme.org/> as they are issued.

Errata to codes and standards may be posted on the ASME Web site under the Committee Pages to provide corrections to incorrectly published items, or to correct typographical or grammatical errors in codes and standards. Such errata shall be used on the date posted.

The Committee Pages can be found at <http://cstools.asme.org/>. There is an option available to automatically receive an e-mail notification when errata are posted to a particular code or standard. This option can be found on the appropriate Committee Page after selecting "Errata" in the "Publication Information" section.

ASME is the registered trademark of The American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

This code or standard was developed under procedures accredited as meeting the criteria for American National Standards. The Standards Committee that approved the code or standard was balanced to assure that individuals from competent and concerned interests have had an opportunity to participate. The proposed code or standard was made available for public review and comment that provides an opportunity for additional public input from industry, academia, regulatory agencies, and the public-at-large.

ASME does not "approve," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

ASME does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any items mentioned in this document, and does not undertake to insure anyone utilizing a standard against liability for infringement of any applicable letters patent, nor assume any such liability. Users of a code or standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility.

Participation by federal agency representative(s) or person(s) affiliated with industry is not to be interpreted as government or industry endorsement of this code or standard.

ASME accepts responsibility for only those interpretations of this document issued in accordance with the established ASME procedures and policies, which precludes the issuance of interpretations by individuals.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form,
in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise,
without the prior written permission of the publisher.

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

Copyright © 2012 by
THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
All rights reserved
Printed in U.S.A.



CONTENTS

Foreword	ix
Statements of Policy	x
Committee Roster	xi
Summary of Changes	xv
Part GR	General Requirements
GR-1	Introduction
GR-2	Scope of the ASME BPE Standard
GR-3	Manufacturer's Quality Assurance Program
GR-4	Inspection
GR-5	Documentation Requirements
GR-6	Metric
GR-7	References
GR-8	Terms and Definitions
Part SD	Systems Design
SD-1	Purpose and Scope
SD-2	General Guidelines
SD-3	Process Components
SD-4	Process Utilities
SD-5	Process Systems
SD-6	Testing
Part DT	Dimensions and Tolerances for Process Components
DT-1	Purpose and Scope
DT-2	Pressure Rating
DT-3	Wall Thickness
DT-4	Dimensions
DT-5	Materials
DT-6	Tests
DT-7	Tolerances
DT-8	Weld Ends
DT-9	Hygienic Clamp Unions
DT-10	Minimum Examination Requirements
DT-11	Marking
DT-12	Packaging
Part MJ	Material Joining
MJ-1	Purpose and Scope
MJ-2	Materials
MJ-3	Weld Joint Design and Preparation
MJ-4	Joining Processes and Procedures
MJ-5	Procedure Qualifications
MJ-6	Performance Qualifications
MJ-7	Examination, Inspection, and Testing
MJ-8	Weld Acceptance Criteria
MJ-9	Documentation Requirements
MJ-10	Passivation
Part SF	Product Contact Surface Finishes
SF-1	Purpose and Scope
SF-2	Metallic Applications



SF-3	Polymeric Applications	126
Part SG	Sealing Components	128
SG-1	Purpose and Scope	128
SG-2	Sealing Component Types	128
SG-3	Sealing Components General Design Requirements (General Provisions)	144
SG-4	Seal Performance Requirements	150
SG-5	Seal Applications	152
Part PM	Polymeric and Other Nonmetallic Materials	153
PM-1	Purpose and Scope	153
PM-2	Materials	153
PM-3	Properties and Performance	155
PM-4	Applications	157
Part CR	Certification	166
CR-1	Purpose and Scope	166
CR-2	General	166
CR-3	Acquiring an ASME BPE Certificate	169
CR-4	Requirements Subject to Change	171
Part MM	Metallic Materials	172
MM-1	Purpose and Scope	172
MM-2	Alloy Designations	172
MM-3	Uses of Specifications	172
MM-4	Referenced Specifications	173
MM-5	Fabrication	176
MM-6	Mechanical Properties	180
MM-7	Corrosion Resistance Requirements	181
MM-8	Unlisted Alloys	181
Part PI	Process Instrumentation	182
PI-1	Purpose and Scope	182
PI-2	Process Instrumentation General Requirements	182
PI-3	Instrument Receiving, Handling, and Storage	183
PI-4	Flowmeters	183
PI-5	Level Instruments	187
PI-6	Pressure Instruments	187
PI-7	Temperature Instruments	187
PI-8	Analytical Instruments	187
PI-9	Optical	194
Figures		
SD-3.1.1-1	Flat Gasket Applications	21
SD-3.1.2.2-1	Accepted Point-of-Use Designs	25
SD-3.1.2.3-1	Double Block-and-Bleed Valve Assembly	26
SD-3.2.1-1	Flexible Hygienic Hose Design	28
SD-3.3.2.2-1	Pump Impeller Configurations	29
SD-3.3.2.2-2	Acceptable Impeller Attachments	29
SD-3.3.2.2-3	Casing Drain Configurations	30
SD-3.3.2.2-4	Casing Drain <i>L/D</i> Ratios	30
SD-3.3.2.4-1	Rotary Lobe Pump Rotor Attachment	31
SD-3.4.2-1	Nozzle Design	32
SD-3.4.2-2	Side and Bottom Connections	33
SD-3.4.2-3	Sidewall Instrument Ports	33
SD-3.2.4-4	Accepted Nozzle Penetrations	34
SD-3.4.2-5	Vessel Design Tangential Nozzles	35
SD-3.4.2-6	Sight Glass Design (Accepted)	36
SD-3.4.2-7	Typical Nozzle Detail	37



SD-3.4.3-1	Internal Support Members	38
SD-3.5.1-1	Agitator Mounting Flanges	40
SD-3.5.2-1	Shaft Coupling Construction	41
SD-3.5.2-2	Shaft Coupling Seal Arrangements	41
SD-3.5.2-3	Fastener Seal Arrangements	42
SD-3.5.5-1	Shaft Steady Bearing	43
SD-3.5.5-2	Magnetically Coupled Mixer (Typical Bottom-Mount)	44
SD-3.6.1-1	Double Tubesheet Heat Exchanger Bonnet Design	46
SD-3.7.1-1	Transfer Panel Looped Headers	47
SD-3.7.2-1	Transfer Panel Tolerances	48
SD-3.7.4-1	Transfer Panel Jumpers	50
SD-3.9.1-1	Dynamic Spray Device: Single Axis	51
SD-3.9.1-2	Two Axes Dynamic Spray Device	51
SD-3.9.2.1-1	Static Spray Device	53
SD-3.9.2.1-2	Flow Rate Guideline for Vertical Cylindrical Vessels	53
SD-3.9.2.1-3	Flow Rate Guideline for Horizontal Cylindrical Vessels	54
SD-3.9.2.3-1	Impact Pattern Build-Up	54
SD-3.12-1	Steam Traps for Clean Steam Systems	56
SD-4.1.2.1-1	Point-of-Use Piping	57
SD-4.1.2.2-1	Physical Break in Point-of-Use Piping	58
SD-4.2.2-1	Typical Clean Steam System Isometric	59
SD-4.2.2-2	Clean Steam Point-of-Use Design	60
SD-5.1.1.1-1	Fermentor Sterile Envelope	62
SD-5.1.1.1-2	Bioreactor Sterile Envelope	63
SD-5.1.1.2.3-1	Gas Sparging Assembly — Lance	65
SD-5.1.1.2.3-2	Gas Sparging Assembly — Sintered	66
SD-5.1.1.2.3-3	Gas Sparging Assembly — Ring	67
SD-5.1.1.2.3-4	Gas Sparging Assembly — Single Orifice	68
SD-5.1.1.3.1-1	Exhaust Gas Condenser	69
SD-5.1.1.3.1-2	Exhaust Gas Heater	69
SD-5.1.1.3.1-3	Electrically Heat Traced Filter Housing	71
SD-5.2.1-1	Tank/Vessel Vent Filters	72
SD-5.3.3.5.1-1	CIP Looped Header (Supply or Return)	77
SD-5.3.3.5.1-2	Zero-Static Chain	78
SD-5.3.3.5.1-3	Swing Elbow Arrangement	78
DT-2-1	Clamp Conditions at Installation	85
MJ-8.4-1	Acceptable and Unacceptable Weld Profiles for Tube Welds	119
MJ-8.4-2	Discoloration Acceptance Criteria for Weld Heat-Affected Zones on Electropolished 316L Tubing	120
MJ-8.4-3	Discoloration Acceptance Criteria for Weld Heat-Affected Zones on Mechanically Polished 316L Tubing	121
SG-2.2.2-1	Hygienic Union per Table DT-7-1	129
SG-2.2.2-2	Hygienic Clamp Union per Table DT-7-1	129
SG-2.2.2-3	Hygienic Union per DIN 11864	130
SG-2.2.2-4	Hygienic Clamp Union per DIN 11864	130
SG-2.2.2-5	Nonhygienic Connections	131
SG-2.3.1.2-1	Weir Valves	132
SG-2.3.1.2-2	Radial Valves	133
SG-2.3.1.2-3	Weirless Diaphragm Valve	133
SG-2.3.1.2-4	Linear Control Valves	134
SG-2.3.1.2-5	Regulator Valve	134
SG-2.3.1.3-1	Ball Valves	135
SG-2.3.1.4-1	Rising Stem Single, Double Seat Mix Proof, and Needle Valves	135
SG-2.3.1.5-1	Butterfly Valve	136
SG-2.3.1.7-1	Back Pressure Control Valve	136
SG-2.3.1.8-1	Pinch Valve	137



SG-2.3.1.9-1	Pressure Relief and Check Valves	137
SG-2.3.1.10-1	Plug Valve	137
SG-2.3.2.2-1	Single Mechanical Seal	138
SG-2.3.2.2-2	Single Seal for Top Entry Agitator	138
SG-2.3.2.3-1	Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seal for Pumps	139
SG-2.3.2.3-2	Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seal for Top Entry Agitator	139
SG-2.3.2.3-3	Dual Unpressurized Mechanical Seal for Pumps	139
SG-2.3.2.4-1	Flush Plan 01	140
SG-2.3.2.4-2	Flush Plan 02	140
SG-2.3.2.4-3	Flush Plan 11	140
SG-2.3.2.4-4	Flush Plan 32	141
SG-2.3.2.4-5	Flush Plan 52 for Pump	141
SG-2.3.2.4-6	Flush Plan 52 for Top Entry Agitator	142
SG-2.3.2.4-7	Flush Plan BPE52 for Pump	142
SG-2.3.2.4-8	Flush Plan 53 for Pump	142
SG-2.3.2.4-9	Flush Plan 53 for Top Entry Agitator	142
SG-2.3.2.4-10	Flush Plan 54 for Pump	143
SG-2.3.2.4-11	Flush Plan 54 for Top Entry Agitator	143
SG-2.3.2.4-12	Flush Plan 74 for Pump	143
SG-2.3.2.4-13	Flush Plan 74 for Top Entry Agitator	143
SG-3.3.2.2-1	Static O-Ring	146
SG-3.3.2.3-1	Seals for Rising Stem Valves	148
SG-4.2-1	Typical Hygienic Clamp Union: Allowable Gasket Intrusion	151
PM-4.2.8.1-1	Acceptable and Unacceptable Weld Profiles for Beadless Welds	163
CR-2.3.1-1	ASME Mark With BPE Designator	166
CR-2.3.2-1	Options for Certification of Organizations	167
PI-2.2.1-1	In-Line and At-Line Instrument Installation Examples	183
PI-2.2.2-1	Accepted Insertion Device Installation Examples	184
PI-4.1.3.2-1	Manifold or Flow Splitter for Dual Tube Construction Flowmeters and Potential for Product Holdup	185
PI-4.1.3.3-1	Concentrically Reducing Process Connection	186
PI-4.1.4.3-1	Vertical Installation	186
PI-4.1.4.4-1	Minimum Angle of Inclination, α	186
PI-8.1.2-1	Conductivity Type Examples	188
PI-8.1.3-1	Accepted Installations for Conductivity Sensors	189
PI-8.1.3.6-1	Installation Clearance Requirements	190
PI-8.2.2-1	pH Sensor Components	191
PI-8.2.3-1	Accepted pH Sensor Installations	192
PI-8.2.3.4-1	Accepted Mounting Orientations	193
PI-8.2.3.5-1	Insertion Length or Depth	194
PI-9.1.3.3-1	Vessel Light Glass Design and Mounting	196
PI-9.1.3.5-1	In-Line Insertion Length	197
PI-9.1.3.5-2	Insertion Probe Length	197
Tables		
GR-4.2-1	Inspector's Delegate Capabilities	3
SD-2.4.3.1-1	Slope Designations for Gravity-Drained Lines	19
SD-3.1.2.2-1	L/D Dimensions for Flow-Through Tee: Full-Size Standard Straight Tee With Blind Cap	22
SD-3.1.2.2-2	L/D Dimensions for Flow-Through Tee: Short Outlet Reducing Tee With Blind Cap	23
SD-3.4.2-1	Annular Spacing Recommendations for Hygienic Dip Tubes	34
SD-5.3.3.3-1	Flow Rates to Achieve 5 ft/sec (1.52 m/s)	76
DT-2-1	Hygienic Unions: Rated Internal Working Pressure	84
DT-3-1	Final Tolerances for Mechanically Polished Fittings and Process Components	86
DT-3-2	Final Tolerances for Electropolished Fittings and Process Components	87



DT-4-1	Nominal O.D. Tubing Sizes	87
DT-4.1-1	Tangent Lengths	87
DT-4.1.1-1	Automatic Tube Weld: 90-deg Elbow	88
DT-4.1.1-2	Automatic Tube Weld: Hygienic Clamp Joint, 90-deg Elbow	88
DT-4.1.1-3	Hygienic Clamp Joint: 90-deg Elbow	89
DT-4.1.1-4	Automatic Tube Weld: 45-deg Elbow	89
DT-4.1.1-5	Automatic Tube Weld: Hygienic Clamp Joint, 45-deg Elbow	90
DT-4.1.1-6	Hygienic Clamp Joint: 45-deg Elbow	90
DT-4.1.1-7	Automatic Tube Weld: 180-deg Return Bend	91
DT-4.1.1-8	Hygienic Clamp Joint: 180-deg Return Bend	91
DT-4.1.2-1	Automatic Tube Weld: Straight Tee and Cross	92
DT-4.1.2-2	Automatic Tube Weld: Short Outlet Hygienic Clamp Joint Tee	92
DT-4.1.2-3	Hygienic Mechanical Joint: Short Outlet Run Tee	93
DT-4.1.2-4	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Straight Tee and Cross	93
DT-4.1.2-5	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Short Outlet Tee	94
DT-4.1.2-6	Automatic Tube Weld: Reducing Tee	94
DT-4.1.2-7	Automatic Tube Weld: Short Outlet Hygienic Clamp, Joint Reducing Tee	95
DT-4.1.2-8	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Reducing Tee	96
DT-4.1.2-9	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Short Outlet Reducing Tee	97
DT-4.1.2-10	Automatic Tube Weld: Instrument Tee	97
DT-4.1.2-11	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Instrument Tee	97
DT-4.1.3-1(a)	Automatic Tube Weld: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	98
DT-4.1.3-1(b)	Automatic Tube Weld: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	99
DT-4.1.3-2(a)	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Tube Weld Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	100
DT-4.1.3-2(b)	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Tube Weld Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	101
DT-4.1.3-3(a)	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	102
DT-4.1.3-3(b)	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer	103
DT-4.1.4-1	Automatic Tube Weld: Ferrule	104
DT-4.1.5-1	Automatic Tube Weld: Cap	105
DT-4.1.5-2	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Solid End Cap	105
DT-4.4-1-1	Hygienic Clamp Joint: Weir Style Diaphragm Valve	105
DT-7-1	Hygienic Clamp Ferrule Standard Dimensions and Tolerances	106
DT-7-2	Transfer Panel and Jumper Tolerances	108
DT-9.3-1	Hygienic Clamp Ferrule: Design Criteria	109
MJ-6.2-1	Tube/Pipe Diameter Limits for Orbital GTAW Performance Qualification	112
MJ-6.2-2	Weld Thickness Limits for Orbital GTAW Performance Qualification	112
MJ-8.2-1	Acceptance Criteria for Welds on Pressure Vessels and Tanks	115
MJ-8.3-1	Acceptance Criteria for Welds on Pipe	116
MJ-8.4-1	Acceptance Criteria for Groove Welds in Tube-to-Tube Butt Joints	117
MJ-8.5-1	Acceptance Criteria for Tube-Attachment Welds	122
SF-2.2-1	Acceptance Criteria for Metallic Product Contact Surface Finishes	124
SF-2.2-2	Additional Acceptance Criteria for Electropolished Metallic Product Contact Surface Finishes	125
SF-2.4-1	R_a Readings for Metallic Product Contact Surfaces	125
SF-2.6-1	Acceptance Criteria for Metallic Passivated Product Contact Surface Finishes	126
SF-3.3-1	Acceptance Criteria for Polymeric Product Contact Surface Finishes	127
SF-3.4-1	R_a Readings for Polymeric Product Contact Surfaces	127
PM-2.1.1-1	Common Thermoplastic Polymers and Applications	154
PM-2.1.2-1	Common Thermoset Polymers and Applications	154
PM-2.1.3-1	Examples of Nonmetallics	155
PM-2.2.1-1	Information for Certificate of Compliance	156
PM-4.2.1-1	Size Comparison of Common Thermoplastic Sizing Standards	160
MM-2.1-1	Wrought Stainless Steels: Nominal Compositions (wt. %)	173



MM-2.1-2	Wrought Nickel Alloys: Nominal Compositions (wt. %)	174
MM-2.1-3	Stainless Steel and Nickel Alloy Cast Designations	175
MM-5.1.2-1	Filler Metals	177
MM-5.1.2-2	Consumable Inserts for Superaustenitic and Duplex Stainless Steels	179
MM-5.1.4-1	Predicted Ferrite Number (FN) Ranges for Various 316 Product Forms and Welds	179
Mandatory Appendix		
I	Submittal of Technical Inquiries to the Bioprocessing Equipment (BPE) Committee	199
Nonmandatory Appendices		
A	Commentary: Slag	201
B	Material Examination Log and Weld Log	202
C	Slope Measurement	207
D	Rouge and Stainless Steel	208
E	Passivation Procedure Qualification	216
F	Corrosion Testing	226
G	Ferrite	229
H	Electropolishing Procedure Qualification	230
I	Vendor Documentation Requirements for New Instruments	232
J	Standard Process Test Conditions (SPTC) for Seal Performance Evaluation	236
K	Standard Test Methods for Polymers	241
L	Spray Device Coverage Testing	244
M	Commentary: 316L Weld Heat-Affected Zone Discoloration Acceptance Criteria	246
N	Guidance When Choosing Polymeric and Nonmetallic Materials	247
O	References: General Background for Extractables and Leachables	248
P	Temperature Sensors and Associated Components	249
Q	Instrument Receiving, Handling, and Storage	256
R	Application Data Sheet	257
Index		260



FOREWORD

At the 1988 ASME Winter Annual Meeting (WAM), many individuals expressed interest in developing standards for the design of equipment and components for use in the biopharmaceutical industry. As a result of this interest, the ASME Council on Codes and Standards (CCS) was petitioned to approve this as a project. The initial scope was approved by the CCS on June 20, 1989, with a directive to the Board on Pressure Technology to initiate this project with the following initial scope:

This standard is intended for design, materials, construction, inspection, and testing of vessels, piping, and related accessories such as pumps, valves, and fittings for use in the biopharmaceutical industry. The rules provide for the adoption of other ASME and related national standards, and when so referenced become part of the standard.

(a) At the 1989 WAM, an ad hoc committee was formed to assess the need to develop further the scope and action plan. The committee met in 1990 and there was consensus concerning the need to develop standards that would meet the requirements of operational bioprocessing, including:

- (1) the need for equipment designs that are both cleanable and sterilizable
- (2) the need for special emphasis on the quality of weld surfaces once the required strength is present
- (3) the need for standardized definitions that can be used by material suppliers, designers/fabricators, and users
- (4) the need to integrate existing standards covering vessels, piping, appurtenances, and other equipment necessary for the biopharmaceutical industry without infringing on the scopes of those standards

(b) The BPE Main Committee was structured with six functioning subcommittees and an executive committee comprising the main committee chair and the subcommittee chairs. The initial subcommittees were

- (1) General Requirements
- (2) Design Relating to Sterility and Cleanability of Equipment
- (3) Dimensions and Tolerances
- (4) Material Joining
- (5) Surface Finishes
- (6) Seals

(c) Throughout the development of the Standard, close liaison was made with the European CEN, ASTM, and the AAA Dairy Standards. The purpose was to develop an ASME standard that would be distinctive, germane, and not in conflict with other industry standards. Wherever possible, the Committee strived to reference existing standards that are applicable to biopharmaceutical equipment design and fabrication.

This Standard represents the work of the BPE Standards Committee and this edition includes the following Parts:

- (1) General Requirements
- (2) Systems Design
- (3) Dimensions and Tolerances for Process Components
- (4) Material Joining
- (5) Product Contact Surface Finishes
- (6) Sealing Components
- (7) Polymeric and Other Nonmetallic Materials
- (8) Certification
- (9) Metallic Materials of Construction
- (10) Process Instrumentation

The first edition of this Standard was approved as an American National Standard on May 20, 1997. This edition was approved by ANSI on July 30, 2012.

Requests for interpretations or suggestions for revision should be sent to Secretary, BPE Committee, The American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016.



STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF CERTIFICATION MARKS AND CODE AUTHORIZATION IN ADVERTISING

ASME has established procedures to authorize qualified organizations to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Codes and Standards. It is the aim of the Society to provide recognition of organizations so authorized. An organization holding authorization to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the Codes and Standards may state this capability in its advertising literature.

Organizations that are authorized to use the Certification Mark for marking items or constructions that have been constructed and inspected in compliance with ASME Codes and Standards are issued Certificates of Authorization. It is the aim of the Society to maintain the standing of the Certification Mark for the benefit of the users, the enforcement jurisdictions, and the holders of the Certification Mark who comply with all requirements.

Based on these objectives, the following policy has been established on the usage in advertising of facsimiles of the symbols, Certificates of Authorization, and references to Codes or Standards construction. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers does not “approve,” “certify,” “rate,” or “endorse” any item, construction, or activity and there shall be no statements or implications that might so indicate. An organization holding a Certification Mark and/or a Certificate of Authorization may state in advertising literature that items, constructions, or activities “are built (produced or performed) or activities conducted in accordance with the requirements of the applicable ASME Code or Standard.” An ASME corporate logo shall not be used by any organization other than ASME.

The Certification Mark shall be used only for stamping and nameplates as specifically provided in the Code or Standard. However, facsimiles may be used for the purpose of fostering the use of such construction. Such usage may be by an association or a society, or by a holder of a Certification Mark who may also use the facsimile in advertising to show that clearly specified items will carry the Certification Mark. General usage is permitted only when all of a manufacturer’s items are constructed under the rules of the applicable Code or Standard.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF ASME MARKING TO IDENTIFY MANUFACTURED ITEMS

The ASME Codes and Standards provide rules for the construction of various items. These include requirements for materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, and stamping. Items constructed in accordance with all of the applicable rules of ASME are identified with the official Certification Mark described in the governing Code or Standard.

Markings such as “ASME” and “ASME Standard” or any other marking including “ASME” or the Certification Mark shall not be used on any item that is not constructed in accordance with all of the applicable requirements of the Code or Standard.

Items shall not be described on ASME Data Report Forms nor on similar forms referring to ASME which tend to imply that all requirements have been met when in fact they have not been. Data Report Forms covering items not fully complying with ASME requirements should not refer to ASME or they should clearly identify all exceptions to the ASME requirements.

ASME’s certification related to products means that the capability by the supplier to fulfill requirements in the applicable standard has been reviewed and accepted by ASME. The supplier is responsible for ensuring that products meet, and if applicable continue to meet, the requirements.



ASME BIOPROCESSING EQUIPMENT COMMITTEE

(The following is the roster of the Committee at the time of approval of this Standard.)

STANDARDS COMMITTEE OFFICERS

J. Ankers, *Chair*
M. Pelletier, *Vice Chair*
P. D. Stumpf, *Secretary*

STANDARDS COMMITTEE PERSONNEL

J. Ankers , LifeTek Solutions, Inc.	D. T. Klees , Magnetrol International, Inc.
D. D. Baram , Clifton Enterprises	G. Kroehnert , Neumo
E. A. Benway , Ironwood Specialist, Inc.	J. T. Mahar , 3M Purification, Inc.
W. H. Cagney , JSG, LLC	F. J. Manning , VNE Corp.
R. D. Campbell , Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.	D. M. Marks , DME Alliance, Inc.
A. P. Cirillo , Cirillo Consulting Services, LLC	D. J. Mathien , Behringer Corp.
R. A. Cotter , Cotter Brothers Corp.	S. Murakami , Hitachi Plant Technologies Ltd.
J. Dvorscek , Abbott Laboratories	C. N. Pacheco , Amgen, Inc.
M. Embury , ASEPCO	M. Pelletier , CRB
E. B. Fisher , Fisher Engineering	L. J. Peterman , United Industries, Inc.
M. M. Gonzalez , BioPharm Engineering Consultant	W. L. Roth , Procter & Gamble
Z. Gu , Shanghai Morimatsu Pharmaceutical	P. D. Sedivy , RathGibson
R. Hanselka , M + W Group	P. D. Stumpf , The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
B. K. Henon , Arc Machines, Inc.	P. L. Sturgill , SWCC
M. A. Hohmann , Quality Coalescence	C. A. Trumbull , Paul Mueller Co.
L. T. Hutton , Arkema, Inc.	J. D. Vogel , BioProcess Institute
K. D. Kimbrel , UltraClean Electropolish, Inc.	R. J. Zinkowski , <i>Past Vice Chair</i> , Burkert Fluid Control Systems

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE

M. Pelletier , <i>Chair</i> , CRB	C. E. Kettermann , RathGibson
J. Ankers , <i>Vice Chair</i> , LifeTek Solutions, Inc.	D. T. Klees , Magnetrol International, Inc.
W. H. Cagney , JSC, LLC	D. M. Marks , DME Alliance, Inc.
R. D. Campbell , Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.	D. J. Mathien , Behringer Corp.
A. P. Cirillo , Cirillo Consulting Services, LLC	P. D. Sedivy , RathGibson
M. Embury , ASEPCO	D. Smith , Consultant
B. K. Henon , Arc Machines, Inc.	P. L. Sturgill , SWCC
L. T. Hutton , Arkema, Inc.	J. D. Vogel , BioProcess Institute
	R. J. Zinkowski , <i>Past Chair</i> , Burkert Fluid Control Systems

SUBCOMMITTEE ON GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND EDITORIAL REVIEW

M. Embury , <i>Chair</i> , ASEPCO	B. K. Henon , Arc Machines, Inc.
T. J. Winter , <i>Vice Chair</i> , Winter Technologies	M. A. Hohmann , Quality Coalescence
T. B. Fridman , <i>Secretary</i> , Vanasyl, LLC	D. Kwilosz , Eli Lilly & Co.
P. W. Ainsworth , <i>Past Vice Chair</i> , Consultant	J. LaFleur , L J Star, Inc.
E. A. Benway , Ironwood Specialist, Inc.	J. W. Minor , Paul Mueller Co.
W. P. Burg , DECCO, Inc.	V. Norton , Stainless Integrity
W. H. Cagney , JSG, LLC	W. Ortiz , Eli Lilly & Co.
R. D. Campbell , Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.	M. Pelletier , CRB
A. P. Cirillo , Cirillo Consulting Services, LLC	K. Seibert , ABEC, Inc.
R. Fitts , Spraying Systems Co.	P. L. Sturgill , SWCC



SUBCOMMITTEE ON SYSTEMS DESIGN

D. M. Marks, *Chair*, DME Alliance, Inc.
M. L. Balmer, *Vice Chair*, Sanofil Pasteur
R. J. Zinkowski, *Vice Chair*, Burkert Fluid Control Systems
R. A. Michalak, *Secretary*, Eli Lilly & Co.
J. Ankers, LifeTek Solutions, Inc.
D. D. Baram, Clifton Enterprises
B. A. Billmyer, Central States Industrial Equipment
T. M. Canty, JM Canty Associates, Inc.
C. Chapman, GEMU Valves
R. A. Cotter, Cotter Brothers Corp.
J. Daly, BSI Engineering
J. Dvorscek, Abbott Laboratories
A. Dyrness, ADVENT Engineering Services, Inc.
M. Embury, ASEPCO
J. Feldman, Yula Corp.
E. B. Fisher, Fisher Engineering
G. P. Foley, Sr., PBM, Inc.
R. F. Foley, M + W Group
J. Fortin, BMS
J. Franks, Electrol Specialties Co.
R. Gerra, Shire Pharmaceuticals
Z. Gu, Shanghai Morimatsu Pharmaceutical
R. Hanselka, M + W Group
S. M. Hartner, Sanofi Pasteur
J. Hays, Pall Corp.
J. Henon, Syntiro Dynamics, LLC

T. L. Hobick, Holland Applied Technologies
M. Inoue, Fujikin, Inc.
B. Jensen, Alfa Laval
C. Johnson, Genentech, Inc.
M. J. Kennedy, Glaxosmithkline
L. Klitgaard, NNE Pharmaplan
P. M. Kubera, Associated Bioengineers & Consultants
J. D. Larson, DCI, Inc.
G. Lewandowski, Quality Assurance Management, Inc.
J. Mahar, 3M Purification, Inc.
R. Manser, Garlock Sealing Technologies
P. Martin, Stauff USA
D. P. McCune, Allegheny Bradford Corp.
M. McFeeters, Steridose
K. Milton, AWH
J. W. Minor, Paul Mueller Co.
S. Muller, GE Healthcare
A. Obertanec, Clark-Reliance Corp.
W. Ortiz, Eli Lilly & Co.
C. N. Pacheco, Amgen, Inc.
G. Page, Jr., Nicholson Steam Trap
M. Pelletier, *Past Vice Chair*, CRB
A. Powell, Merck & Co., Inc.
S. Sharon, Genentech, Inc.
R. Snow, Genzyme
K. J. Westin, Roplan Sales, Inc.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON DIMENSIONS AND TOLERANCES

D. J. Mathien, *Chair*, Behringer Corp.
F. J. Manning, *Vice Chair*, VNE Corp.
B. A. Billmyer, *Secretary*, Central States Industrial Equipment
D. Brockman, Alfa Laval, Inc.
E. Burgess, QAM
C. H. Carnes, Consultant
J. Chapek, Swagelok Co.
C. Chapman, GEMU Valves
P. M. Dunbar, VNE Corp.
R. J. Elbich, Exigo Manufacturing
R. F. Foley, M + W Group

M. Golterman, DCI, Inc.
M. M. Gonzalez, BioPharm Engineering Consultant
G. Kroehnert, Neumo
I. Lisboa, Stockval Tecno Comercial Ltda.
P. McClune, ITT Engineered Valves
H. P. G. Montgomery, Tank Components Industries
H. Murphy, Global Stainless Ltd.
D. Perona, Advance Fittings Corp.
L. J. Peterman, United Industries, Inc.
C. Taylor, Crane Process Flow Technologies
T. G. Wilson, Top Line Process Equipment Co.
T. J. Winter, Winter Technologies

SUBCOMMITTEE ON MATERIAL JOINING

R. D. Campbell, *Chair*, Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.
J. Dvorscek, *Vice Chair*, Abbott Laboratories
W. L. Roth, *Secretary*, Procter & Gamble
E. A. Benway, Ironwood Specialist, Inc.
K. Bhaila, ITT Corp.
W. P. Burg, DECCO, Inc.
J. Cosentino, MECO
R. A. Cotter, Cotter Brothers Corp.
R. G. Duran, QAM
C. W. Elkins, Central States Industrial Equipment
J. Fritz, TMR Stainless
E. L. Gayer, Holloway America
B. K. Henon, Arc Machines, Inc.

M. A. Hohmann, Quality Coalescence
W. M. Huitt, W.M. Huitt Co.
C. E. Kettermann, RathGibson
K. Matheis, Sr., Complete Automation, Inc.
T. M. O'Connor, Central States Industrial Equipment
W. Ortiz, Eli Lilly & Co.
H. Reinhold, FST Technical Services
J. A. Shankel, BMW Constructors, Inc.
D. P. Sisto, Purity Systems, Inc.
P. L. Sturgill, SWCC
G. R. Tabor, Eli Lilly & Co.
B. J. Uhlenkamp, DCI, Inc.
C. Weeks, CRB Builders, LLC
J. Williams, Enerpipe Systems, Inc.



SUBCOMMITTEE ON SURFACE FINISH

P. D. Sedivy, *Chair*, RathGibson
K. D. Kimbrel, *Vice Chair*, UltraClean Electropolish, Inc.
J. Hamilton, *Secretary*, RathGibson
R. E. Avery, Nickel Institute
P. H. Banes, Astro Pak Corp.
Y. Binenfeld, EGMO Ltd.
D. Brockmann, Alfa Laval, Inc.
E. Burgess, QAM
C. H. Carnes, Bechtel Corp.
J. Cosentino, MECO
J. R. Daniels, ITT PureFlo
C. W. Elkins, Central States Industrial Equipment
E. L. Gayer, Holloway America
M. M. Gonzalez, *Past Chair*, BioPharm Engineering Consultant

S. T. Harrison, Harrison Electropolishing L.P.
B. K. Henon, Arc Machines, Inc.
G. Kroehnert, Neumo
C. F. Kuo, King Lai Hygienic Material Co., Ltd.
F. J. Manning, VNE Corp.
D. J. Mathien, Behringer Corp.
R. McGonigle, Active Chemical Corp.
D. Perona, Advance Fittings Corp.
L. J. Peterman, United Industries, Inc.
P. A. Petrillo, Millennium Facilities Resources
R. K. Raney, UltraClean Electropolish, Inc.
J. Rau, Dockweiler AG
M. S. Solamon, Feldmeier Equipment, Inc.
C. Taylor, Crane Saunders
C. A. Trumbull, Paul Mueller Co.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON SEALING COMPONENTS

J. D. Vogel, *Chair*, BioProcess Institute
M. McFeeters, *Vice Chair*, Steridose
C. N. Pacheco, *Secretary*, Amgen, Inc.
D. D. Baram, Clifton Enterprises
J. J. Blumenthal, Perceptual Focus, LLC
L. Bongiorno, Flow Smart, Inc.
M. L. Bridge, Swagelok
J. Daniels, ITT PureFlo
S. J. DeFusco, Integra Companies, Inc.
D. Donnelly, James Walker & Co. Ltd.
R. Dubiel, Parker Hannifin
P. Esbensen, Alfa Laval Kolding A/S
G. P. Foley, PBM, Inc.
T. B. Fridman, Vanasyl, LLC
M. C. Gagne, AlphaBio, Inc.
L. Harper, GEA Tuchenhausen GmbH
T. Harvey, Gemu Valves, Inc.
D. Helmke, Flow Products LLC
L. T. Hutton, Arkema, Inc.

M. Inoue, Fujikin, Inc.
C. Johnson, Genentech, Inc.
J. Marshall, Perrigo, Inc.
R. A. Michalak, Eli Lilly & Co.
A. R. Obertanec, Clark-Reliance Corp.
G. Page, Jr., Nicholson Steam Trap
A. K. Parker, Jr., W. L. Gore & Associates, Inc.
S. Pitolaj, Garlock Sealing Technologies
A. Powell, Merck & Co., Inc.
R. Rieger, John Crane, Inc.
R. W. Schnell, DuPont Performance Elastomers
R. A. Smith, Flowserve Corp.
E. Souliere, Fisher Controls International, LLC
J. Vitti, Crane ChemPharma Flow Solutions
K. J. Westin, Roplan Sales, Inc.
D. Wise, Genentech, Inc.
N. Wu, Fristam Pumps
R. J. Zinkowski, Burkert Fluid Control Systems
M. A. Zumbum, Maztech, Inc.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON POLYMERS AND OTHER NONMETALLIC MATERIALS

L. T. Hutton, *Chair*, Arkema, Inc.
T. B. Fridman, *Vice Chair*, Vanasyl, LLC
M. A. Zumbum, *Vice Chair*, Maztech, Inc.
P. G. Galvin, *Secretary*, George Fischer, Inc.
J. K. Argasinski, Solvay Solexis
G. E. Carpenter, Saint-Gobain Performance Plastics
S. J. DeFusco, Integra Companies, Inc.
V. DiChiara, Vivalert, Inc.
D. Donnelly, James Walker & Co. Ltd.
M. W. Eggers, W. L. Gore & Associates, Inc.

G. Evans, Aflex Hose, USA
R. Hanselka, M + W Group
T. Larkin, Amgen, Inc.
J. Mahar, 3M Purification, Inc.
R. Pembleton, DuPont Fluoropolymer
E. Pitchford, Parker Page
R. W. Schnell, DuPont Performance Elastomers
R. P. Schroder, Newman Gasket
D. A. Seiler, Arkema, Inc.
J. Stover, NewAge Industries, Inc./AdvantaPure
J. D. Vogel, BioProcess Institute, Inc.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON METALLIC MATERIALS

P. L. Sturgill, *Chair*, SWCC
J. Rau, *Vice Chair*, Dockweiler AG
C. E. Kettermann, *Secretary*, RathGibson
R. Anderson, Northland Stainless, Inc.
R. E. Avery, Nickel Institute
R. D. Campbell, Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.
J. Franks, Electrol Specialties Co.
J. D. Fritz, TMR Stainless
S. T. Harrison, Harrison Electropolishing L.P.

W. M. Huitt, W. M. Huitt Co.
K. D. Kimbrel, UltraClean Electropolish, Inc.
K. J. Matheis, Sr., Complete Automation, Inc.
D. P. McCune, Allegheny Bradford Corp.
R. McGonigle, Active Chemical Corp.
T. M. O'Connor, Central States Industrial Equipment
H. Reinhold, FST Technical Services
D. Roll, Astro Pak Corp.
W. L. Roth, Procter & Gamble
N. A. Schmidt, Complete Automation, Inc.



EUROPEAN BPE SUBCOMMITTEE

Y. Binenfeld, EGMO Ltd.
D. Birch, Crane Process Flow Technologies
E. Gallagher, Elan Pharma
J. Kranzpillar, GEA Tuchenhausen GmbH

R. P. Pierre, Pierre Guerin SAS
A. van der Lans, Centocor BV
S. J. Watson-Davies, PBM, Inc.
P. Williams, Crane Process Flow Technologies Ltd.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON CERTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

C. E. Kettermann, *Chair*, RathGibson
T. L. Hobick, *Vice Chair*, Holland Applied Technologies
B. A. Billmyer, Central States Industrial Equipment
D. Brockmann, Alfa Laval, Inc.
R. D. Campbell, Bechtel Construction Operations, Inc.
P. M. Dunbar, VNE Corp.
J. Dvorscek, Abbott Laboratories
R. J. Elbich, Exigo Manufacturing
E. L. Gayer, Holloway America
M. M. Gonzalez, BioPharm Engineering Consultant

D. R. Helmke, Flow Products LLC
M. A. Hohmann, Quality Coalescence
W. M. Huitt, W. M. Huitt Co.
L. T. Hutton, Arkema, Inc.
K. D. Kimbrel, UltraClean Electropolish, Inc.
K. J. Matheis, Sr., Complete Automation, Inc.
A. R. Obertanec, Clark-Reliance Corp.
W. L. Roth, Procter & Gamble
J. A. Shankel, BMW Constructors, Inc.
T. G. Wilson, Top Line Process Equipment Co.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON PROCESS INSTRUMENTATION

D. T. Klees, *Chair*, Magnetrol International, Inc.
T. M. Canty, *Vice Chair*, J. M. Canty, Inc.
V. Gorbis, *Vice Chair*, Genentech/Roche
J. Cheatham, *Secretary*, Weed Instruments
G. Anton, Qualtech, Inc.
B. B. Bailey, Flow Products, LLC
J. Blumenthal, Perceptual Focus, LLC
R. Bond, Anderson Instrument Co.
C. Bragg, Burns Engineering, Inc.
J. M. Featherston, Weed Instrument Co.

M. Golterman, DCI, Inc.
R. Govaert, Mettler-Toledo Ingold/Thornton
J. Homoly, Magnetrol International, Inc.
D. Kresge, CRB Consulting Engineers
D. Kwilosz, Eli Lilly & Co.
A. Lamore, Borkert Fluid Control Systems Ltd.
P. Petrillo, Millennium Facilities Resources, Inc.
M. Robinson, Endress + Hauser
S. Sharon, Genentech, Inc.
G. Woods, Cross Point Engineering Group
S. Zuehlke, Endress + Hauser GmbH Co. KG

ASME BPE-2012

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

Following approval by the ASME BPE Committee and ASME, and after public review, ASME BPE-2012 was approved by the American National Standards Institute on July 30, 2012.

ASME BPE-2012 includes editorial changes, revisions, and corrections introduced in ASME BPE-2009 and a Supplement printed in June 2011, as well as the following changes identified by a margin note, (12).

<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
1–16	Part GR	Revised in its entirety
17–19	Part SD	Title revised
	SD-1	Revised
	SD-2	Redesignated from previous SD-3 and revised
20–80	SD-3	(1) Revised in its entirety (2) All figure and table designators from previous edition renumbered in accordance with newly revised paragraph references
	SD-4	(1) Revised in its entirety (2) All figure and table designators from previous edition renumbered in accordance with newly revised paragraph references
	SD-5	(1) Revised in its entirety (2) All figure and table designators from previous edition renumbered in accordance with newly revised paragraph references
	SD-6	Revised
81–109	Part DT	Revised in its entirety
110, 411	MJ-2	Revised in its entirety
	MJ-3	Redesignated from previous MJ-4 and revised
	MJ-4	Redesignated from previous MJ-3 and revised
112–114	MJ-5	Redesignated from previous MJ-8 and revised
	MJ-6	Redesignated from previous MJ-9 and revised
	MJ-7	Revised
	MJ-8	Redesignated from previous MJ-6 and revised



<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
	MJ-9	Redesignated from previous MJ-10 and revised
	MJ-10	Redesignated from previous MJ-11 and revised
120	Fig. MJ-8.4-2	Added
121	Fig. MJ-8.4-3	Added
123–127	Part SF	(1) Title revised (2) Revised in its entirety
128–152	Part SG	(1) Title revised (2) Revised in its entirety
153–165	Part PM	(1) Title revised (2) Revised in its entirety
166	Fig. CR-2.3.1-1	Added
167, 168	Fig. CR-2.3.2-1	Redesignated and revised
	CR-2.3.3	Revised
	CR-2.3.4.1	Added
169	CR-3.2.1	Revised
	CR-3.2.2	Revised
170	CR-3.2.4	Added
	CR-3.2.5	Added
	CR-3.2.6	Added
	CR-3.2.7	Added
172–181	Part MM	(1) Redesignated from Part MMOC and title revised (2) Revised in its entirety
	Table MM-2.1-1	UNS Number N08904 added
	Table MM-2.1-2	Revised in its entirety
	Table MM-2.1-3	Revised in its entirety
	Table MM-5.1.2-1	Revised in its entirety
	Table MM-5.1.2-2	Revised in its entirety
182–197	Part PI	Added
199, 200	Mandatory Appendix I	Added
236	Nonmandatory Appendix J	Revised
241–243	Nonmandatory Appendix K	Added
244, 245	Nonmandatory Appendix L	Added
246	Nonmandatory Appendix M	Added
247	Nonmandatory Appendix N	Added
248	Nonmandatory Appendix O	Added
249–255	Nonmandatory Appendix P	Added



<i>Page</i>	<i>Location</i>	<i>Change</i>
256	Nonmandatory Appendix Q	Added
257–259	Nonmandatory Appendix R	(1) Added (2) Form J-1 redesignated as Form R-1
260–270	Index	Updated

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012



ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



BIOPROCESSING EQUIPMENT

Part GR General Requirements

(12)

GR-1 INTRODUCTION

The ASME Bioprocessing Equipment Standard was developed to aid in the design and construction of new fluid processing equipment used in industries that require a defined level of purity and bioburden control.

The Standard typically applies to

(a) components that are in contact with the product, raw materials, or product intermediates during manufacturing, development, or scale-up

(b) systems that are a critical part of product manufacture [e.g., water-for-injection (WFI), clean steam, filtration, and intermediate product storage]

The General Requirements Part states the scope of the ASME BPE Standard and provides references and definitions that apply throughout the document.

When operating under pressure conditions, systems shall be constructed in accordance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC), Section VIII, and/or ASME B31.3 Process Piping Code or applicable local, national, or international codes or standards. The owner/user may stipulate additional or alternative specifications and requirements.

This Standard shall govern the design and construction of piping systems for hygienic service. For process piping systems designed and constructed in accordance with ASME B31.3, it is the owner's responsibility to select a fluid service category for each fluid service. Should any fluid service meet the definition of high purity fluid service (ASME B31.3, Chapter X) it is recommended that such fluid service be selected and the requirements of this Standard and ASME B31.3, Chapter X be met.

When an application is covered by laws or regulations issued by an enforcement authority (e.g., municipal, provincial, state, or federal), the final construction requirements shall comply with these laws.

Items or requirements that are not specifically addressed in this Standard are not prohibited. Engineering judgments must be consistent with the fundamental principles of this Standard. Such judgments shall not be used to override mandatory regulations or specific prohibitions of this Standard.

GR-2 SCOPE OF THE ASME BPE STANDARD

The ASME BPE Standard provides requirements for systems and components that are subject to cleaning and sanitization and/or sterilization including systems that are cleaned in place (CIP'd) and/or steamed in place (SIP'd) and/or other suitable processes. This Standard also provides requirements for single use systems and components.

This Standard applies to

(a) new system (and component) design and fabrication

(b) definition of system boundaries

(c) specific metallic, polymeric, and elastomeric (e.g., seals and gaskets) materials of construction

(d) component dimensions and tolerances

(e) surface finishes

(f) material joining

(g) examinations, inspections, and testing

(h) certification

This Standard is intended to apply to new fabrication and construction. It is not intended to apply to existing, in-service equipment. If the provisions of this Standard are optionally applied by an owner/user to existing, in-service equipment, other considerations may be necessary. For installations between new construction and an existing, in-service system, the boundaries and requirements must be agreed to among the owner/user, engineer, installation contractor, and inspection contractor.

For a system or component to be BPE-compliant, adherence to all applicable parts of this Standard is required.

GR-3 MANUFACTURER'S QUALITY ASSURANCE PROGRAM

The manufacturer shall implement a quality assurance program describing the systems, methods, and procedures used to control materials, drawings, specifications, fabrication, assembly techniques, and examination/inspection used in the manufacturing of bioprocessing equipment.



GR-4 INSPECTION

The inspection requirements are specified in each Part of this Standard. If an inspection or examination plan is required, it shall be developed and agreed to by the owner/user, contractor, inspection contractor, and/or engineer ensuring that the systems and components meet this Standard.

GR-4.1 Inspector/Examiner

Inspector and examiner in this Standard shall be defined for the following:

(a) *Pressure Vessels*. Authorized Inspector, as defined in ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, para. UG-91.

(b) *Piping, Tubing, and Non-Code Vessels*. Owner's inspector, as defined in ASME B31.3, paras. 340.4(a) and (b). Inspector's Delegate, as defined in GR-8, meets the additional requirements listed in GR-4.2.

(c) *Piping and Tubing*. Examiner, defined as a person who performs quality control examinations for a manufacturer as an employee of the manufacturer as defined in ASME B31.3, para. 341.1.

When local regulations require that pressure equipment be designed and constructed in accordance with standards other than ASME codes/standards, the inspector in this Standard is defined as one who is acceptable to the relevant regulatory authority.

GR-4.2 Inspector's Delegate

Inspector's Delegate qualifications shall be in accordance with the requirements listed herein. The employer of the Inspector's Delegate shall have documented training and qualification programs to ensure the qualifications and capabilities of personnel are met.

The capabilities requirements are listed in Table GR-4.2-1. It is required that a capability listed for a lower level of qualification is also required for subsequent higher levels of qualification.

GR-4.2.1 Levels of Qualification. There are four levels of qualification for Inspector's Delegate. Examination personnel qualifications are not covered in this section but shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, para. 342.

(a) *Trainee*. An individual who is not yet certified to any level shall be considered a trainee. Trainees shall work under the direction of a certified Quality Inspector Delegate and shall not independently conduct any tests or write a report of test results.

(b) *Quality Inspector Delegate 1 (QID-1)*. This individual shall be qualified to properly perform specific calibrations, specific inspections, and specific evaluations for acceptance or rejection according to written instructions. A QID-1 may perform tests and inspections according to the capabilities' requirements under the supervision of, at a minimum, a QID-2.

(c) *Quality Inspector Delegate 2 (QID-2)*. This individual shall be qualified to set up and calibrate equipment

and to interpret and evaluate results with respect to applicable codes, standards, and specifications. The QID-2 shall be thoroughly familiar with the scope and limitations of the inspection they are performing and shall exercise assigned responsibility for on-the-job training and guidance of trainees and QID-1 personnel. A QID-2 may perform tests and inspections according to the capabilities' requirements.

(d) *Quality Inspector Delegate 3 (QID-3)*. This individual shall be capable of establishing techniques and procedures; interpreting codes, standards, specifications, and procedures; and designating the particular inspection methods, techniques, and procedures to be used. The QID-3 shall have sufficient practical background in applicable materials, fabrication, and product technology to establish techniques and to assist in establishing acceptance criteria when none are otherwise available. The QID-3 shall be capable of training personnel. A QID-3 may perform tests and inspections according to the capabilities' requirements.

GR-4.2.2 Qualification Requirements. The qualification requirements listed herein shall be met prior to consideration for examination/certification.

(a) *Trainee*

(1) be a high school graduate or hold a state or military approved high school equivalency diploma

(2) receive a minimum of 8 hr of relevant documented training (total 8 hr), including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1

(b) *QID-1*. To be considered as a QID-1, personnel shall meet the following:

(1) be a trainee for a minimum of 6 mo of documented relevant industry experience. Alternate methods for meeting the work experience requirement are at least one of the following:

(a) prior or current certification as a QID-1

(b) completion with a passing grade of at least 2 yr of engineering or science study in a university, college, or technical school

(c) possess an AWS CWI certificate¹ or ACCP Level II VT certificate², or international equivalent

(d) 2 yr of documented relevant experience in inspection, examination, or testing activities

(2) receive a minimum of 16 additional hours of relevant documented training (minimum total = 24 hr), including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1

(3) pass a written test and practical performance examination, including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1 for this level

¹ Certifications from the American Welding Society (AWS). CAWI is a Certified Associate Welding Inspector, and CWI is a Certified Welding Inspector.

² Certifications from the American Society of Nondestructive Testing (ASNT). ACCP is the ASNT Central Certification Program.



Table GR-4.2-1 Inspector's Delegate Capabilities

Capability	Trainee	QID-1	QID-2	QID-3
Materials				
(a) Identify materials				
(1) Fitting type	X	...	...	...
(2) Tube/pipe	X	...	...	...
(3) Filler materials	...	X	...	...
(4) Elastomers	...	X	...	...
(5) Process components	...	X	...	...
(b) Verify material marking to standard	X	...	...	...
(c) Measure material dimensions	X	...	...	...
(d) Measure material surface finish	X	...	...	...
(e) Verify material documentation				
(1) Material test reports (MTR)	...	X	...	...
(2) Certificates of compliance	...	X	...	...
(3) Instrument calibration records	...	X	...	...
(4) Elastomers	...	X	...	...
(f) Evaluate to acceptance criteria	...	X	...	...
(g) Verify material compliance to specification	...	X	...	...
(h) Verify material storage/handling compliance	...	...	X	...
Equipment Use				
(a) Mirrors/magnifiers	X	...	...	...
(b) Measuring devices	...	...	...	...
(1) Steel rule	X	...	...	...
(2) Calipers (dial, digital)	X	...	...	...
(3) Fillet gauge	...	X	...	...
(4) Radius gauge	...	X	...	...
(5) Temperature sensitive crayon (tempilstick)	...	X	...	...
(6) Slope level	...	X	...	...
(7) Undercut gage	...	X	...	...
(c) Borescope/fiberscope	...	X	...	...
(d) Profilometer	X	...	...	...
(e) Positive material identification (PMI)	...	...	X	...
(f) Calibration records (inspection equipment)	...	X	...	...
Knowledge and Skills				
Understand inspection fundamentals				
(a) Effective oral and written communication	...	X	...	...
(b) Quality procedures				
(1) Prepare documentation control requirements	...	...	...	X
(2) Develop inspection procedures	...	...	...	X
(c) Review of specifications	...	...	X	...
(d) Codes and Standards (training)				
(1) ASME BPE	GR/DT/SF	MJ/SD 3.12	X	...
(2) ASME B31.3	...	...	Chapter VI	X
(3) ASME BPVC Section IX	...	...	X	...
(e) Interpret welding symbols and drawings				
(1) Detail drawings (mechanical)	...	...	X	...
(2) P&ID	...	...	X	...
(3) Single line isometric drawings (weld maps)	...	X	...	...
(4) Isometric drawings (slope maps)	...	X	...	...
(5) General/fabrication arrangement drawings (details)	...	...	X	...
(6) Interpret welding symbols	...	...	X	...
(f) Prepare documents/reports in accordance with GR-5.3				
(1) Material examination log	...	X	...	...
(2) Nonconformance reports	...	X	...	...
(3) Visual weld inspection	...	X	...	...
(4) Slope verification (isometric)	...	X	...	...
(5) Pressure test	...	...	X	...



Table GR-4.2-1 Inspector's Delegate Capabilities (Cont'd)

Capability	Trainee	QID-1	QID-2	QID-3
Knowledge and Skills (Cont'd)				
(g) Turnover package				
(1) Assemble	...	...	X	...
(2) Review	...	...	...	X
(h) Basic understanding of NDT/NDE				
(1) PT	...	...	X	...
(2) UT	...	...	X	...
(3) RT	...	...	X	...
(4) Eddy current	...	...	X	...
(5) Pressure/leak testing	...	...	X	...
Inspection				
(a) Perform visual inspection (other than weld inspection)	...	X	...	...
(b) Perform weld inspection	...	X	...	...
(c) Evaluate weld inspection results	...	...	X	...
(d) Perform slope verification	...	X	...	...
(e) Witness pressure tests	...	...	X	...
(f) Verify inspection compliance	...	...	X	...
(g) Review inspection reports	...	...	X	...
(h) Verify nonconformance disposition	...	...	X	...
(i) Perform installation verification				
(1) Installation per P&ID	...	...	X	...
(2) Check for cold spring	...	...	X	...
(3) Hanger verification	...	X	...	...
(4) Component installation per manufacturer's recommendations	...	...	X	...
Vessel Inspection (additional to above)				
(a) Verify surface finish	...	...	X	...
(b) Verify drainability	...	...	X	...
(c) Cleanability (CIP/riboflavin/sprayball testing)	...	...	...	X
(d) Verify dimensions and orientation	...	...	...	X
(e) Compliance with ASME Code (U-1)	...	...	...	X
(f) Documentation review	...	...	X	...
Welding Procedure Qualification				
Verify welding procedures (WPS/PQR) compliance	...	...	...	X
Welder Performance Qualification				
Verify welder qualification compliance	...	...	X	...
Project Planning				
(a) Review contract requirements	...	...	...	X
(b) Prepare weld inspection criteria	...	...	...	X
(c) Review specifications	...	...	...	X
(d) Prepare purchase specifications	...	...	...	X
(e) Develop inspection plan	...	...	...	X
Training				
(a) Provide on-the-job training for Quality Inspectors	...	...	X	...
(b) Maintain records of training	...	...	X	...
Audit				
(a) Perform vendor audits	...	...	...	X
(b) Perform fabricator audits	...	...	...	X
(c) Prepare audit and surveillance plan	...	...	...	X



(c) *QID-2*. To be considered as a *QID-2*, personnel shall meet the following:

(1) be a *QID-1* for a minimum of 6 mo of documented relevant industry experience. Alternate methods for meeting the work experience requirement are at least one of the following:

- (a) prior or current certification as a *QID-2*
- (b) completion with a passing grade of at least 4 yr of engineering or science study in a university, college, or technical school
- (c) possess an AWS CWI certificate¹ or ACCP Level II VT certificate², or international equivalent
- (d) 2 yr of documented relevant experience in inspection, examination, or testing activities of high purity/hygienic systems

(2) receive a minimum of 16 additional hours of relevant documented training (minimum total = 40 hr), including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1

(3) pass a written test and practical performance examination, including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1 for this level

(d) *QID-3*. To be considered as a *QID-3*, personnel shall meet the following:

(1) be a *QID-2* for a minimum of 24 mo of documented relevant industry experience. Alternate methods for meeting the work experience requirement are at least one of the following:

- (a) prior or current certification as a *QID-3*
- (b) 3 yr of documented relevant experience in inspection, examination, or testing activities of high purity/hygienic systems

(2) receive a minimum of 40 additional hours of relevant documented training, including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1 (minimum total = 80 hr)

(3) pass a written test and practical performance examination, including as a minimum the requirements shown in Table GR-4.2-1 for this level

GR-4.2.3 Certification. The employer is responsible for training, testing, and certification of employees. The employer shall establish a written practice in accordance with the guidelines of ASNT SNT-TC-1A including

- (a) the requirements listed in Table GR-4.2-1
- (b) training programs
- (c) certification testing requirements
- (d) eye examinations that include both visual acuity and color acuity are required annually by an ophthalmologist, optometrist, medical doctor, registered nurse, certified physician assistant, or other ophthalmic medical personnel

(e) certification documentation

The owner/user is responsible for verifying the requirements of this section are met.

GR-4.2.4 Recertification. A *QID-1*, *QID-2*, or *QID-3* whose employment has been terminated may be recertified to their former level of qualification by a new or former employer based on examination, provided all of the following requirements are met:

- (a) The employee has proof of prior certification.
- (b) The employee was working in the capacity to which certified within 6 mo of termination.
- (c) The employee is being recertified within 6 mo of termination.

If the employee does not meet the listed requirements, additional training as deemed appropriate by the owner's Inspector shall be required.

GR-4.3 Responsibilities

The responsibilities of inspection personnel are defined in GR-4.3.1 and GR-4.3.2.

GR-4.3.1 Pressure Vessels. The responsibilities of the owner's Inspector shall be the same as the inspector in ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, UG-91.

GR-4.3.2 Piping, Tubing, and Non-Code Vessels. The responsibilities of the owner/user's inspector shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, para. 340.2.

GR-4.4 Access for Inspectors

Manufacturers of bioprocessing equipment and components shall allow free access of owner/user and authorized inspection personnel at all times while work on the equipment or components is being performed. The notification of an impending inspection should be mutually agreed to by the manufacturer and the inspector. Access may be limited to the area of the manufacturer's facility where assembly, fabrication, welding, and testing of the specific equipment or components is being performed. Inspectors shall have the right to audit any examination, to inspect components using any examination method specified in the Design Specification (including Purchase Order), and review all certifications and records necessary to satisfy the requirements of GR-5. The manufacturer shall provide the inspector with work progress updates.

GR-5 DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS

The following is a consolidation of the documentation requirements of the Standard listed by Part.

GR-5.1 Part SD

GR-5.1.1 Documentation. Documentation requirements shall be agreed to at the outset of a design project and shall be available upon request or submitted at the agreed-upon time to support the requirements of this Standard, as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer. For all Bioprocessing ASME Code stamped vessels, National Board registration is recommended to



maintain vessel data on file. Technical documentation to support the design of equipment and verify conformance with cleaning and SIP criteria may include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (a) material handling procedures
- (b) welding procedures
- (c) mechanical and electrochemical polishing procedures
- (d) standard operating and maintenance procedures and manuals
- (e) installation procedures
- (f) piping and instrumentation diagrams and technical references
- (g) original equipment manufacturer's data
- (h) surface finish certifications
- (i) detail mechanical drawings and layouts
- (j) Certificates of Compliance
- (k) technical specification sheets of components
- (l) manufacturer's data and test reports
- (m) NDE (nondestructive examination) reports
- (n) shop passivation procedure
- (o) material approvals and certifications from suppliers
- (p) any additional documentation required by the user

Manufacturing documentation shall be maintained throughout the design and manufacture for each component, assembly, part, or unit. All documentation shall be retained by the owner/user. As agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer, documentation from the manufacturer will be retained for the agreed-upon duration of time, but not less than 3 yr after manufacture.

GR-5.2 Part DT

GR-5.2.1 Metallic Materials. Verification of Material Test Reports (MTR) for all process components that come in contact with the product and ancillary equipment shall be examined.

The following documentation shall be presented to the owner/user or their designee, as a minimum:

- (a) Material Test Report verified to the applicable specification(s)
- (b) heat number/code traceable to a Material Test Report

GR-5.3 Part MJ

GR-5.3.1 Welding Documentation

(a) Pressure Vessels and Tanks. Records and retention of records for code vessels shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section VIII, UW-51 for radiographs, UG-120 for manufacturer's data reports, and UW-52 for spot examination of welds.

(b) Piping. Records and retention of records associated with piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, Chapter VI, Section 346.

(c) Tubing. Records and retention of records associated with hygienic tubing shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, Chapter VI, Section 346.

GR-5.3.2 Turn Over Package Documentation Required.

For cGMP-validated distribution systems (including the tubing systems on modules, super skids, and skids, and the shop or field fabrication of tubing, etc.) the following documentation shall be provided to the owner/user or their designee, as a minimum:

- (a) *Materials Documentation*
 - (1) Material Test Reports (MTRs)
 - (2) Certified Material Test Reports (CMTRs)
 - (3) Certificates of Compliance (C of Cs)
 - (4) Material Examination Logs
- (b) *Welding, Inspection, and Examination Qualification Documentation* (not required for standard fittings, valves, and components unless specifically required by the owner/user)
 - (1) Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs)
 - (2) Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs)
 - (3) Welder Performance Qualifications (WPQs)
 - (4) Welding Operator Performance Qualifications (WOPQs)
 - (5) Examiner Qualifications
 - (6) documentation of approval of the above by the owner's representative prior to welding
 - (7) Inspector Qualifications
 - (8) documentation of the approval of (b)(7) above by the Owner prior to welding
- (c) *Weld Documentation* (not required for standard fittings, valves, and components unless specifically required by the owner/user)
 - (1) Weld Maps
 - (2) Weld Logs
 - (3) Weld Examination and Inspection Logs
 - (4) Coupon Logs
- (d) *Testing and Examination Documentation* (as applicable)
 - (1) passivation reports
 - (2) sprayball testing
 - (3) pressure testing
 - (4) final slope check documentation
 - (5) calibration verification documentation
 - (6) purge gas certifications
 - (7) signature logs
 - (8) number of welds — both manual and automatic
 - (9) number of welds inspected expressed as a percentage (%)
 - (10) heat numbers of components must be identified, documented, and fully traceable to the installed system

GR-5.3.3 Material Test Reports. The combination of documents, including Certificates of Compliance (C of Cs), Material Test Reports (MTRs), and/or



Certified Material Test Reports (CMTRs) for all metallic equipment and component product contact surfaces defined in the scope of this Standard shall include the following information, as a minimum:

- (a) ASME BPE Standard, including year date
- (b) material type
- (c) heat number
- (d) chemical composition
- (e) AWS Classification of filler metal, if used
- (f) alloy designation and material specification of insert, if used
- (g) post weld heat treatment documentation, if applicable
- (h) mechanical properties are not required, but if included, must be accurate to the raw material specification

GR-5.3.4 Weld Log. The results of the welding, examination, and inspection shall be recorded on a Weld Log. The information required to be on the Weld Log may be in any format, written or tabular, to fit the needs of the manufacturer, installing contractor, inspection contractor, and owner/user as long as all required information is included or referenced. Form WL-1 (see Nonmandatory Appendix B) has been provided as a guide for the Weld Log. This form includes the required data plus some other information that is not required. The minimum requirements are as follows:

- (a) isometric drawing number (including revision number)
- (b) weld number
- (c) date welded
- (d) welder/welding operator identification
- (e) size
- (f) examination
 - (1) date
 - (2) type of examination
 - (3) acceptance/rejection
 - (4) initials
- (g) inspection
 - (1) date
 - (2) type of examination
 - (3) acceptance/rejection
 - (4) initials
- (h) identification of blind welds
- (i) identification of manual welds
- (j) basis of rejection

In addition, heat numbers and slope shall be recorded on the Weld Log, an isometric drawing, or other owner/user approved documentation.

GR-5.4 Part SF

GR-5.4.1 Electropolishing Documentation. The electropolish vendor, if requested by the customer, shall

provide a Certificate of Compliance with each type of component(s) that shall include but is not limited to

- (a) vendor's company
- (b) customer's name
- (c) description of component(s)
- (d) identification of the electropolish procedure used
- (e) final surface finish report (R_a if required by the customer)

GR-5.4.2 Passivation Documentation. The passivation provider shall supply a Certificate of Compliance for each system or set (type) of component(s) that shall include, but not be limited to

- (a) customer's name.
- (b) description of system or component(s).
- (c) vendor company name.
- (d) qualified passivation method used.
- (e) documentation of passivation process, as follows:
 - (1) written qualified procedure
 - (2) documentation of process control of essential variables
 - (3) instrument calibration records
 - (4) certificates of analysis for all chemicals used
 - (5) process testing and verification
- (f) post-passivation verification method(s) used.

(g) for material manufacturers or suppliers of components whose surfaces have been electropolished and/or passivated, a "Certificate of Compliance for Passivation" and/or "Electropolishing" stating that standard industry practices, such as ASTM A967 or ASTM B912, as applicable, have been used. If required by the owner/user, the manufacturer or supplier may be required to demonstrate the effectiveness of their procedure by a method mutually agreed upon.

GR-5.5 Part PM

GR-5.5.1 Polymers. For polymers the following documentation shall be presented to the owner/user or his/her designee, as a minimum:

(a) *Welding Documentation.* Welding Procedure Specifications/Parameters (WPS/P) used, their Procedure Qualification Records (PQR), and Welder Performance Qualifications/Certification (WPQ/C) or Welding Operator Performance Qualifications/Certifications (WOPQ/C).

(b) *Weld Maps.* When required by the owner/user, weld maps of bioprocessing components, weld inspection logs of bioprocessing components (including type and date of inspection), and welder identification of each weld shall be provided either on the weld map or on the inspection log. Welding history shall be turned over, in printed or electronic format, to owner/user upon completion of work and as part of the Installation Qualification (IQ) process.

(c) *Materials.* All molded fittings, molded valves, and extruded pipe shall be intrinsically identified to provide,



as a minimum, material of construction, lot number, and date of production to ensure traceability. Certificate of Compliance shall be provided for molded/extruded components not properly labeled.

(d) *Testing Records.* Other records (e.g., pressure test, surface finish) shall be provided as required by owner/user.

GR-5.5.2 Certificate of Compliance. The single-use component or assembly manufacturer shall issue a Certificate of Compliance that contains the following information:

- (a) manufacturer's name and contact information
- (b) part identifier
- (c) lot identifier
- (d) date of manufacturing and/or expiration date
- (e) compliance information
- (f) additional information, which can be included in the Certificate of Compliance upon agreement between manufacturer and end-user

GR-5.5.3 Compliance Requirements

GR-5.5.3.1 General Requirements. A Certificate of Compliance shall be issued by the hose assembly supplier to certify compliance to this Standard when required by the end-user.

GR-5.5.3.2 Certificate of Compliance. The Certificate of Compliance shall contain the following information:

- (a) manufacturer's name.
- (b) part number.
- (c) unique identifier of the hose assembly.
- (d) material of construction of process contact items.
- (e) compliance to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP Class VI <88> (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11).
- (f) packaging and storage recommendations (this may be in another document). Supplier's name and unique identifier shall be marked on either the hose assembly itself or the package containing the hose assembly. The unique identifier shall enable the supplier to identify the raw material and processing conditions used to fabricate the article. Suppliers shall mark the hose assembly itself to avoid potential loss of traceability and to aid in positive identification of hose assemblies.

GR-5.6 Part SG

GR-5.6.1 Seal Documentation. Seal manufacturers must provide, upon customer request, documentation (test report) of the in vivo USP Class VI <88> and the in vitro USP <87> testing on final manufactured seals.

GR-5.6.2 Compliance Requirements

GR-5.6.2.1 General Requirements. A Certificate of Compliance shall be issued by the seal manufacturer to certify compliance to this Standard when required by

the end-user. Additional agreements may be required; refer to SD-2.4.1.2(b). At a minimum, seals exposed to process contact fluids and/or that have a high probability of exposure will comply to the United States Pharmacopeia (USP) directive with regard to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP <88> Class VI (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11) on biological reactivity [see SG-3.3.1(a)]. Examples of seals coming in direct contact with a process stream include gaskets, O-rings, diaphragms, pinch tubes, and valve stem seals.

GR-5.6.2.2 Certificate of Compliance. The Certificate of Compliance shall contain the following information:

- (a) manufacturer's name
 - (b) part number
 - (c) lot number
 - (d) material of construction
 - (e) compound number or unique identifier
 - (f) cure date or date of manufacture
 - (g) intrusion category (hygienic seals only; see SG-4.2)
 - (h) compliance to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP <88> Class VI (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11)
 - (i) packaging and storage recommendation (this may be of another document and not a Certificate of Compliance)
- Marking on the seal package should include items (a) through (i) above.

GR-5.6.3 Certificate of Design for a Sealed Union.

The seal manufacturer shall provide, upon request of the end-user, a certificate of design conformance that the sealed union meets the intrusion requirements of SG-4.2.

GR-6 METRIC

Metric units in this Standard are conversions from U.S. Customary units, and are for reference purposes only unless specified otherwise.

GR-7 REFERENCES

For this Standard, the most recent approved version of the following referenced standards shall apply:

ANSI/AWS A3.0, Standard Welding Terms and Definitions
 ANSI/AWS QC-1, Standard for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors
 AWS D18.2, Guide to Weld Discoloration Levels on the Inside of Austenitic Stainless Steel Tube
 Publisher: American Welding Society (AWS), 550 NW Le Jeune Road, Miami, FL 33126 (www.aws.org)

ASME B31.1, Power Piping
 ASME B31.3, Process Piping



- ASME B46.1, Surface Texture (Surface Roughness, Waviness, and Lay)
- ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section V, Nondestructive Examination
- ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, Pressure Vessels
- ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications
- ASME PTC 19.3 TW, Thermowell Design Standard
- Publisher: The American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990; Order Department: 22 Law Drive, Box 2900, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2900 (www.asme.org)
- ASTM A20/A20M, Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Plates for Pressure Vessels
- ASTM A270, Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Sanitary Tubing
- ASTM A380, Practice for Cleaning, Descaling, and Passivation of Stainless Steel Parts, Equipment, and Systems
- ASTM A480/A480M, Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
- ASTM A484/A484M, Specification for General Requirements for Stainless and Steel Bars, Billets, and Forgings
- ASTM A967, Standard Specification for Chemical Passivation Treatments for Stainless Steel Parts
- ASTM B912, Standard Specification for Passivation of Stainless Steels Using Electropolishing
- ASTM D395, Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property — Compression Set
- ASTM D412, Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers — Tension
- ASTM D471, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property — Effect of Liquids
- ASTM D624, Standard Test Method for Tear Strength of Conventional Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers
- ASTM D2240, Standard Test Method for Rubber Property — Durometer Hardness
- ASTM E112, Test Methods for Determining Average Grain Size
- ASTM E220, Standard Test Method for Calibration of Thermocouples By Comparison Techniques
- ASTM E230/E230M, Standard Specification and Temperature-Electromotive Force (emf) Tables for Standardized Thermocouples
- ASTM E644, Standard Test Methods for Testing Industrial Resistance Thermometers
- ASTM E1137/E1137M, Standard Specification for Industrial Platinum Resistance Thermometers
- Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)
- European Hygienic Engineering & Design Group (EHEDG), Document No. 18 — Passivation of Stainless Steel
- Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000, Brussels, Belgium (www.cen.eu)
- FDA, 21 CFR, Parts 210 and 211, Current Good Manufacturing Practices
- GMP: current Good Manufacturing Practices, Title 21 of the Food and Drug Administration
- Publisher: U.S. Food and Drug Administration (U.S. FDA), 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857 (www.fda.gov)
- IEC 60751, Industrial Platinum Resistance Thermometers and Platinum Temperature Sensors
- Publisher: International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), 3, rue de Varembe, Case postale 131, CH-1211 Genève 20, Switzerland/Suisse (www.iec.ch)
- ISO 34-1, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of tear strength — Part 1: Trouser, angle and crescent test pieces
- ISO 34-2, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of tear strength — Part 2: Small (Delft) test pieces
- ISO 37, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of tensile stress-strain properties
- ISO 48, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of hardness (hardness between 10 IRHD and 100 IRHD)
- ISO 815-1, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of compression set — Part 1: At ambient or elevated temperatures
- ISO 815-2, Rubber, vulcanized or thermoplastic — Determination of compression set — Part 2: At low temperatures
- ISO 816, Superseded by ISO 34-2
- ISO 1817, Rubber, vulcanized — Determination of the effect of liquids
- ISO 11137, Sterilization of health care products — Radiation — Part 1: Requirements for development, validation, and routine control of a sterilization process for medical devices
- Publisher: International Organization for Standardization (ISO) Central Secretariat, 1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse, Case postale 56, CH-1211, Genève 20, Switzerland/Suisse (www.iso.org)
- ISPE Baseline® Pharmaceutical Engineering Guide for Water and Steam Systems — Volume 4
- Publisher: International Society for Pharmaceutical Engineering (ISPE), 3109 W. Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr. Blvd., Tampa, FL 33607 (www.ispe.org)
- NIH (BL-1/BL-4), Biohazard Containment Guidelines
- Publisher: National Institutes of Health (NIH), 9000 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20892 (nih.gov)



SNT-TC-1A, Recommended Practice for Nondestructive Testing Personnel Qualification and Certification

Publisher: American Society for Nondestructive Testing (ASNT), 1711 Arlingate Lane, P.O. Box 28518, Columbus, OH 43228-0518 (www.asnt.org)

3-A, Sanitary Standards

Publisher: 3-A Sanitary Standards, Inc., 6888 Elm Street, Suite 2D, McLean, VA 22101 (www.3-a.org)

GR-8 TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

annealing: a treatment process for steel for reducing hardness, improving machinability, facilitating cold working, or producing a desired mechanical, physical, or other property.

anomaly: a localized surface area that is out of specifications to the surrounding area, and is classified as abnormal.

arc gap: for orbital GTAW, the nominal distance, measured prior to welding, from the tip of the electrode to the surface of the weld joint or insert.

arc strike: a discontinuity consisting of any localized remelted metal, heat-affected metal, or change in the surface profile of any part of a weld or base metal resulting from an arc, generated by the passage of electrical current between the surface of the weld or base material and a current source, such as a welding electrode, magnetic particle prod, or electropolishing electrode.

aseptic: free of pathogenic (causing or capable of causing disease) microorganisms.

aseptic processing: operating in a manner that prevents contamination of the process.

audit: an on-site evaluation by an ASME-appointed team to review and report evidence of compliance of the applicant with regard to the requirements of the ASME BPE Standard, "after" issuance of a certificate.

autogenous weld: a weld made by fusion of the base material without the addition of filler. (See also *gas tungsten-arc welding*.)

automatic welding: welding with equipment that performs the welding operation without adjustment of the controls by a welding operator. The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the work. (See also *machine welding*.)

barrier fluid: a fluid used to separate environment from product such as water or condensate in a double mechanical seal.

bioburden: the number of viable contaminating organisms per product unit.

biofilm: a film of microorganisms or cell components adhering to surfaces submerged in or subjected to fluid environments.

biologics: therapeutic or diagnostic products generated and purified from natural sources.

biopharmaceuticals: ethical pharmaceutical drugs derived through bioprocessing.

bioprocessing: the creation of a product utilizing a living organism.

bioprocessing equipment: equipment, systems, or facilities used in the creation of products utilizing living organisms.

blind weld (or closure weld): a weld joint by design that cannot feasibly be visually inspected internally.

blister (polymeric): a localized imperfection on a polymer surface, containing a pocket of fluid.

blistering (metallic): a localized delamination within the metal that has an appearance of chipped or flaked-off areas. Per SEMI F019-0304, section 4.2.1.

borescope: a device for indirect visual inspection of difficult access locations such as equipment and pipes.

break: a discontinuity in the face of a fitting.

buffing: a process in which an abrasive compound on a flexible backing is applied to metal to produce a highly reflective surface.

burn-through: excessive melt-through or a hole through the root bead of a weld.

burr: excess material protruding from the edge typically resulting from operations such as cutting or facing.

butt joint: a joint between two members lying approximately in the same plane.

cartridge seal: a self-contained seal assembly.

cavitation: a condition of liquid flow where, after vaporization of the liquid, the subsequent collapse of vapor bubbles can produce surface damage.

certificate: a Certificate of Authorization issued by ASME.

Certificate of Authorization: a document issued by ASME that authorizes the use of an ASME BPE Symbol Stamp for a specified time and for a specified scope of activity.

certificate holder: an organization holding a Certificate of Authorization issued by the Society upon satisfactory completion of evaluation of ability to comply with the requirements of this Standard.

certification: documented testimony by qualified authorities that a system qualification, calibration, validation, or revalidation has been performed appropriately and that the results are acceptable.

cGMPs: current Good Manufacturing Practices. Current design and operating practices developed by the pharmaceutical industry to meet FDA requirements as published in the Code of Federal Regulations, Chapter 1, Title 21, Parts 210 and 211.



chromatography: the purification of substances based on the chemical, physical, and biological properties of the molecules involved.

clean: a condition achieved by removal of dirt, residues, detergents, or other surface contaminants.

cleaning: operations by which dirt, residues, detergents, or other surface contaminants are removed to achieve predetermined surface attributes.

clean-in-place (CIP): internally cleaning a piece of equipment without relocation or disassembly. The equipment is cleaned but not necessarily sterilized. The cleaning is normally done by acid, caustic, or a combination of both, with water-for-injection (WFI) rinse.

clean steam: steam free from boiler additives that may be purified, filtered, or separated. Usually used for incidental heating in pharmaceutical applications.

closed head: for orbital GTAW, a welding head that encapsulates the entire circumference of the tube/pipe during welding and that contains the shielding gas.

cloudiness: the appearance of a milky white hue across some portion of a surface resulting from the electropolish process.

cluster of pits: two or more pits, the closest distance between each being less than the diameter of any one pit.

cluster porosity: porosity that occurs in clumps or clusters.

compendial water: purported to comply with USP and/or any other acknowledged body of work related to the quality, manufacture, or distribution of high purity water.

compression set: permanent deformation of rubber after subscription in compression for a period of time, as typically determined by ASTM D395.

concavity: a condition in which the surface of a welded joint is depressed relative to the surface of the tube or pipe. Concavity is measured as a maximum distance from the outside or inside diameter surface of a welded joint along a line perpendicular to a line joining the weld toes.

consumable insert: a ring of metal placed between the two elements to be welded that provides filler for the weld, when performed with fusion welding equipment. A consumable insert can also be used for the root pass in a multiple pass weld with the addition of filler wire (also called insert ring).

convexity: a condition in which the surface of a welded joint is extended relative to the surface of the tube or pipe. Convexity is measured as a maximum distance from the outside or inside diameter surface of a welded joint along a line perpendicular to a line joining the weld toes.

corrosion: a chemical or electrochemical interaction between a metal and its environment, which results in

changes in the property of the metal. This may lead to impairment of the function of the metal, the environment, and/or the technical system involved.

cracks: fracture-type discontinuities characterized by a sharp tip and high ratio of length and width to opening displacement. A crack may not be detected with a stylus. A linear crack will produce a liquid penetrant indication during liquid penetration inspection, X-ray, or ultrasound.

crater: a depression at the termination of a weld bead.

crater cracks: cracks that form in the crater, or end, of the weld bead.

creep: a time-dependent permanent deformation that occurs under stress levels below the yield stress.

dead leg: an area of entrapment in a vessel or piping run that could lead to contamination of the product.

defects: discontinuities that by nature or accumulated effect (for example, total crack length) render a part or product unable to meet minimum applicable acceptable standards or specifications. This term designates rejectability. (See also *discontinuity*.)

deionized water: a grade of purified water produced by the exchange of cations for hydrogen ions and anions for hydroxyl ions.

delamination: separation into constituent layers.

demarkation: a localized area that is dissimilar to the surrounding areas with a defined boundary.

dent: a large, smooth-bottomed depression whose diameter or width is greater than its depth and that will not produce an indication.

descaling: the removal of heavy, tightly adherent oxide films resulting from hot-forming, heat-treatment, welding, and other high-temperature operations such as in steam systems.

dirty: a relative term indicating the condition of being contaminated.

discoloration: any change in surface color from that of the base metal. Usually associated with oxidation occurring on the weld and heat-affected zone on the outside diameter and inside diameter of the weld joint as a result of heating the metal during welding. Colors may range from pale bluish-gray to deep blue, and from pale straw color to a black crusty coating.

discontinuity: interruption of the typical structure of a weldment, such as a lack of homogeneity in the mechanical, metallurgical, or physical characteristics of the material or weldment. A discontinuity is not necessarily a defect.

distribution system: centralized system for the delivery of fluids from point of generation or supply to point of use.

downslope: that part of an automatic orbital weld sequence during which the welding current is gradually reduced prior to extinguishing of the welding arc. The downslope portion of a welded joint is seen as a tapering of the end of the weld bead with a reduction of penetration from the beginning to the end of the downslope so that the final weld bead is small with minimal penetration.

dross: a concentration of impurity formed in the weld puddle. It floats to the surface when the metal solidifies. (See also *slag*.)

duplex stainless steel: a group of stainless steels whose chemical composition is designed to produce a room-temperature microstructure that is a mixture of austenite and ferrite.

durometer: measurement of hardness related to the resistance to penetration of an indenter point in to a material as typically determined by ASTM D2240.

dynamic seal: seal with a component that is in motion relative to a second surface.

dynamic spray device: a moving device, designed to produce a nonstationary spray pattern.

elastomer: rubber or rubberlike material possessing elasticity. (See also *elastomeric material*.)

elastomeric material: a material that can be stretched or compressed repeatedly and, upon immediate release of stress, will return to its approximate original size.

electropolishing: a controlled electrochemical process utilizing acid electrolyte, DC current, anode, and cathode to smooth the surface by removal of metal.

end grain effect: a surface discontinuity of small diameter (or linear) cavities located perpendicular to the rolling direction of the material and appearing after electropolishing.

etching: the process of removing a layer of metal from its surface using a chemical and/or electrolytic process.

ethical pharmaceutical: a controlled substance for the diagnosis or treatment of disease.

excessive penetration: weld penetration that exceeds the acceptance limit for inside diameter convexity. (See also *convexity*.)

extractables (polymeric): chemicals that can be removed from polymeric articles using appropriate solvents.

fermentation: the biochemical synthesis of organic compounds by microorganisms or cultivated cells.

fermentor (fermenter): a vessel for carrying out fermentation.

fixture marks: an area on an electropolished component where the electrical connection was made for the processing of the component.

flash electropolish: an electrochemical process done for a very short duration of time with a low current density, which neither significantly alters the surface of the material nor meets the acceptance criteria as set forth in Table H-3.3-1 in Nonmandatory Appendix H of this Standard.

fluoropolymer: polymer material having a carbon chain either partially or completely bonded to fluorine atoms.

flushing (rinsing): the flowing of water over the product and/or solution contact surfaces of system components for the removal of particulates or water soluble contaminants.

full penetration: a weld joint is said to be fully penetrated when the depth of the weld extends from its face into the weld joint so that the joint is fully fused. For a tube-to-tube weld, no unfused portions of the weld joint shall be visible on the inside diameter of a fully penetrated weld.

fusion: the melting together of filler metal and base metal, or of base metal only, that results in coalescence.

fusion welding: welding in which the base material is fused together without the addition of filler material to the weld. (See also *gas tungsten-arc welding*.)

gas tungsten-arc welding (GTAW): an arc welding process that produces coalescence of metals by heating them with an arc between a tungsten (nonconsumable) electrode and the work. Shielding is obtained from a gas or gas mixture. (This process is sometimes called TIG welding, a nonpreferred term.) GTAW may be performed by adding filler material to the weld, or by a fusion process in which no filler is added.

gasket: static seal made from deformable material compressed between two mating surfaces.

GMP facility: a facility designed, constructed, and operated in accordance with cGMP guidelines established by the FDA.

grain boundary: an interface separating two grains, where the orientation of the lattice structure changes from that of one grain to that of the other. Per SEMI F019-0304, section 4.8.2

harvesting: the separation of cells from growth media. This can be accomplished by filtration, precipitation, or centrifugation.

haze: a localized diminished surface brightness, commonly produced by gassing or air pockets, during electropolishing.

heat number: an alphanumeric identification of a stated tonnage of metal obtained from a continuous melting in a furnace.

heat-affected zone: that portion of the base metal that has not been melted, but whose microstructure or mechanical properties have been altered by the heat of welding or cutting.



heat tint: coloration of a metal surface through oxidation by heating. (See also *discoloration*.)

higher alloy: a metal containing various alloying constituents formulated to provide enhanced corrosion resistance and possibly improved mechanical properties beyond those that are typically observed in UNS S31603 stainless steel.

hold-up volume: the volume of liquid remaining in a vessel or piping system after it has been allowed to drain.

hydrotest: a pressure test of piping, pressure vessels, or pressure-containing parts, usually performed by pressurizing the internal volume with water at a pressure determined by the applicable code.

hygienic: of or pertaining to equipment and piping systems that by design, materials of construction, and operation provide for the maintenance of cleanliness so that products produced by these systems will not adversely affect human or animal health.

hygienic clamp joint: a tube outside diameter union consisting of two neutered ferrules having flat faces with a concentric groove and mating gasket that is secured with a clamp, providing a nonprotruding, recessless product contact surface.

hygienic joint: a tube outside diameter union providing a nonprotruding, recessless product contact surface.

icicles: localized regions of excessive penetration, which usually appear as long, narrow portions of weld metal on the weld underbead. (See also *convexity* and *excessive penetration*.)

inclusions: particles of foreign material in a metallic or polymer matrix.

incomplete fusion (or lack of fusion): a weld discontinuity in which fusion did not occur between weld metal and faces or between adjoining weld beads. Also, in welding of tubing, when the weld fully penetrates the wall thickness but misses the joint, leaving some portion of the inner (inside diameter) weld joint with unfused edges.

incomplete penetration (or lack of penetration): a groove weld in which the weld metal does not extend completely through the joint thickness.

indication: a condition or an anomaly of a localized area that has not been classified as being accepted or rejected.

Inspector's Delegate: a person who is delegated by an owner's inspector to perform inspection functions as referenced in ASME B31.3, para. 340.4(c).

joint penetration: the depth that a weld extends from its face into a joint, exclusive of reinforcement.

lack of fusion after reflow: a discontinuity in welding of tubing where, after a reflow or second weld pass has been made, the original joint has still not been consumed, leaving the weld joint with unfused edges on the inner surface.

lamellar tears: terrace-like fractures in the base metal with a basic orientation parallel to the wrought surface; caused by the high stress in the thickness direction that results from welding.

laminations: elongated defects in a finished metal product, resulting from the rolling of a welded or other part containing a blowhole. Actually, the blowhole is stretched out in the direction of rolling.

leachables (polymeric): typically a subset of extractables, these chemicals migrate from polymeric articles into the product or process fluid.

linear porosity: porosity that occurs in a linear pattern. Linear porosity generally occurs in the root pass from inadequate joint penetration.

liquid penetrant indication: refer to ASME BPVC, Section V, Article 6, para. T-600, for testing an anomaly or an indication.

machine welding: welding with equipment that performs the welding operation under the constant observation and control of a welding operator. The equipment may or may not perform the loading and unloading of the works. (See also *automatic welding*.)

manual welding: welding in which the entire welding operation is performed and controlled by hand.

material type: a commercial designation for a given chemistry range.

maximum working pressure: the pressure at which the system is capable of operating for a sustained period of time.

maximum working temperature: the temperature at which the system must operate for a sustained period of time. The maximum working temperature should relate to the maximum working pressure and the fluids involved.

meandering: of or pertaining to a weld bead that deviates from side to side across the weld joint rather than tracking the joint precisely.

mechanical seal: a device used for sealing fluids with rotating shafts. A mechanical seal is a prefabricated or packaged assembly that forms a running seal between flat surfaces.

micron or micrometer (1 μ): one-millionth of a meter.

misalignment (mismatch): axial offset of the joint members.

miter: two or more straight sections of tube matched and joined in a plane bisecting the angle of junction so as to produce a change of direction.

mold flash: excess material that is greater than the designed geometry of a part that is formed in the molding process.

molded seal: a seal that is manufactured by forming in a mating cavity.



nick: a surface void anomaly caused by material removal or compression from the surface, whose bottom surface is usually irregular.

nominal outside diameter: a numerical identification of outside diameter to which tolerances apply.

nominal wall thickness: a numerical identification of wall thickness to which tolerances apply.

nonuniform mechanical polishing marks: a localized surface polishing pattern that is dissimilar to the surrounding area.

off angle: a measurement of face-to-face squareness.

off plane: a measurement of the offset between part centerlines or two planes.

open head: for orbital GTAW, a welding head that is open to the atmosphere external to the tube/pipe being welded and that does not enclose the shielding gas, which is still provided through the torch.

orange peel: an appearance of a pebbly surface.

orbital welding: automatic or machine welding of tubes or pipe in-place with the electrode rotating (or orbiting) around the work. Orbital welding can be done with the addition of filler material or as a fusion process without the addition of filler.

O-ring: ring seal of circular cross section.

outboard seal: a seal that is outside the product area in the outermost part of a mechanical seal assembly.

overlap: the protrusion of weld metal beyond the weld toes or weld root. Also, in an orbital weld, that amount by which the end of the weld bead overlaps the beginning of the weld bead (not including the downslope) on a single-pass weld.

owner/user: the body upon which final possession or use rests.

oxidation: a common form of electrochemical reaction that is the combining of oxygen with various elements and compounds.

oxide layer: an area usually located in the heat-affected zone of the weldment where an oxidation reaction has taken place.

packing: a type of shaft seal formed into coils, spirals, or rings that is compressed into the seal cavity.

passivation: removal of exogenous iron or iron from the surface of stainless steels and higher alloys by means of a chemical dissolution, most typically by a treatment with an acid solution that will remove the surface contamination and enhance the formation of the passive layer.

passive layer: a chromium-enriched oxide layer on a stainless steel surface, that improves the corrosion resistance of the base metal.

passivity: the state in which a stainless steel exhibits a very low corrosion rate. The loss (or minimizing) of chemical reactivity exhibited by certain metals and alloys under special environmental conditions.

PE: polyethylene, polymer material composed of carbon and hydrogen.

penetration: see *full penetration*, *incomplete penetration*, and *joint penetration*.

personal care products: products used for personal hygiene or cosmetic care.

PFA: perfluoroalkoxy, copolymer of perfluoroalkoxy and tetrafluoroethylene.

pharmaceutical: relating to the use and/or manufacture of medical drugs or compounds used to diagnose, treat, or prevent a medical condition.

pickling: a chemical process for cleaning and descaling stainless steel and other alloy parts, equipment, and systems.

pipe: pipe size is determined by diameter and either schedule, series, or SDR. For bioprocessing equipment, pipe does not include tube.

pit: a small surface void resulting from a localized loss of base material.

pitch: to cause to be set at a particular angle or slope. Degree of slope or elevation.

polymer: a molecule consisting of many smaller groups. They can be synthesized either through chain reactions or by templating. Some examples of polymers are plastics, proteins, DNA, and dendrimers.

polymeric materials: a natural or synthetic material whose molecules are linked in a chain.

polypropylene (PP): polymer material composed of carbon and hydrogen.

porosity: cavity-type discontinuities formed by gas entrapment during solidification.

pressure rating: pressure at which a system is designed to operate, allowing for applicable safety factors.

process component: a component that contacts the product or process fluid. Process components include, but are not limited to piping, fittings, gaskets, vessels, valves, pumps, filter housings, and instruments.

product contact surface: a surface that contacts raw materials, process materials, and/or product.

profilometer: an instrument for the measurement of the degree of surface roughness.

progressive polishing: a mechanical grinding procedure where a coarse grit material is used first and the successive operations use a finer and finer grit until the desired surface roughness is achieved.

PTFE: polytetrafluoroethylene, homopolymer material of tetrafluoroethylene.



pure steam: steam that is produced by a steam generator that, when condensed, meets requirements for water-for-injection (WFI).

purified water (PW): a classification of water according to compendial standards.

PVDF: polyvinylidene fluoride, homopolymer, and/or copolymer material composed of carbon, hydrogen, and fluorine.

pyrogen: a fever-producing substance.

R_a : log of the arithmetic mean of the surface profile.

R_a max.: the highest value of a series of R_a readings.

reflow: a second weld pass made to correct a lack of fusion or missed joint.

reinforcement: see *convexity*.

rouge: a general term used to describe a variety of discolorations in high purity stainless steel biopharmaceutical systems. It is composed of metallic (primarily iron) oxides and/or hydroxides. Three types of rouge have been categorized.

Class I rouge: a rouge that is predominantly particulate in nature. It tends to migrate downstream from its origination point. It is generally orange to red-orange in color. These particles can be wiped off a surface and are evident on a wipe. Surface composition of the stainless steel under the rouge remains unchanged.

Class II rouge: a localized form of active corrosion. It occurs in a spectrum of colors (orange, red, blue, purple, gray, black). It can be the result of chloride or other halide attack on the surface of the stainless steel.

Class III rouge: a surface oxidation condition occurring in high temperature environments such as pure steam systems. The system's color transitions to gold, to blue, to various shades of black, as the layer thickens. This surface oxidation initiates as a stable layer and is rarely particulate in nature. It is an extremely stable form of magnetite (iron sesquioxide, Fe_3O_4).

sanitary: see *hygienic*.

sanitary (hygienic) weld: generally considered to be a groove weld in a square butt joint made by the GTAW (or plasma) process as a fusion weld without the addition of filler material. A sanitary weld must be completely penetrated on the weld I.D., with little or no discoloration due to oxidation, and be otherwise without defects that would interfere with maintenance in a clean and sterile condition.

schedule: dimensional standard for pipe as defined by ASTM.

SDR: standard dimension ratio, a sizing system for polymer piping systems that relates wall thickness to pressure rating as defined by ISO.

seal chamber: see *stuffing box*.

seal face: surface point on which a seal is achieved.

seal point: location of process boundary created by components in contact (seal), having sufficient contact stress/load to create media or environmental isolation.

seal weld: a weld used to obtain fluid tightness as opposed to mechanical strength.

self-draining: the elimination of all fluid from the system due to the force of gravity alone.

SEM: scanning electron microscope.

semi-automatic arc welding: arc welding with equipment that controls only the filler metal feed. The advance of the welding is manually controlled.

service life: the life expectancy or number of cycles for which the unit will maintain its performance.

size classification: the size of surface deficits is classified in two groups: macro, referring to indications that can be seen in adequate lighting without magnification, and micro, referring to indications that can be seen only with the aid of magnification.

slag: a concentration of nonmetallic impurities (often oxides or nitrides) that forms in the weld pool and solidifies on the underbead or weld top surface. Sometimes referred to as "dross."

slope: an incline or deviation from the horizontal. A tube or pipe installed in the horizontal plane is said to slope if one end is positioned higher than the other.

sparger: a device used to agitate, oxygenate, or aerate a liquid by means of compressed air or gas.

splatter: the metal particles expelled during welding that do not form part of a weld.

spot electropolishing: a localized electrochemical process that is capable of producing the correct Cr to Fe ratios on the surface of a material and meeting the requirements of Table H-3.3-1.

spray device: device for the directed distribution (delivery) of liquids to defined process contact surfaces of equipment. (See also *static spray device* and *dynamic spray device*.)

square cut: a tube end cut perpendicular to the tangent plane.

squareness: face-to-face perpendicularity.

star burst: a type of indication created during the reaction of electrochemical etching process on the foreign or refractory material (dross) on the welds or base metal.

static seal: a stationary sealing device.

static spray device: a stationary device, designed to produce a fixed directional spray pattern.

steam-in-place (SIP): the use of steam to sanitize or sterilize a piece of equipment without the use of an autoclave.

stem seal: a seal element that is used on a shaft.

sterile: free from living organisms.



sterility: the absence of all life forms.

stringer indication: a linear void resulting from the removal of an elongated nonmetallic inclusion or secondary phase.

stuffing box: in shaft seals, the casing containing the sealing material. Seal chamber for shaft seals. (See also *packing*.)

super-austenitic stainless steel: a subgroup of austenitic stainless steels having elevated levels of nickel, chromium, and molybdenum compared with standard austenitic stainless steels (e.g., UNS S31603) and that may have other additions (e.g., nitrogen and/or copper) to increase strength and resistance to pitting corrosion and stress corrosion cracking in the presence of chlorides.

super duplex stainless steel: those duplex stainless steels whose chemical composition is designed to result in a pitting resistance equivalent number (PREN) of at least 40.

surface finish: all surfaces as defined by Part SF of the current ASME BPE Standard and/or the owner/user or manufacturer and referred in R_a inches or meters.

surface inclusion: particles of foreign material in a metallic matrix. The particles are usually compounds such as oxides, sulfides, or silicates, but may be a substance foreign to and essentially insoluble in the matrix.

surface residual: a foreign substance that adheres to a surface by chemical reaction, adhesion, adsorption, or ionic bonding (e.g., corrosion, rouging, and staining).

survey: an announced on-site evaluation by an ASME appointed team to review and report evidence of compliance of the applicant with regard to the requirements of the ASME BPE Standard "before" issuance or renewal of a certificate.

system volume: total volume of liquid in the system, including equipment, piping, valving, and instrumentation.

thermoplastic: long-chain polymers that are usually not connected by crosslinks. Once formed, these materials can be reshaped.

thermoset: long-chain polymers that are usually connected by crosslinks. Once formed, these materials cannot be reshaped.

transfer panel: a panel to which process and/or utilities are piped that mechanically precludes erroneous cross-connections.

tube: tube is sized by its nominal outside diameter. For bioprocessing equipment, tube does not include pipe.

tungsten inclusions: tungsten particles transferred into the weld deposit by occasional touching of the tungsten electrode used in the gas tungsten-arc process to the work or to the molten weld metal. These inclusions are often considered defects that must be removed and the weld repaired prior to final acceptance. Tungsten inclusions may be invisible to the unaided eye, but are readily identified in a radiograph.

unacceptable leakage: leakage level above which the system performance is considered unacceptable by the system user and applicable regulating body.

undercut: a groove melted into the base metal adjacent to the weld toe or weld root and left unfilled by weld metal.

underfill: a depression on the weld face or root surface extending below the adjacent surface of the base metal. (See also *concavity*.)

uniformly scattered porosity: porosity that is distributed in a weldment in a uniform pattern.

user: see *owner/user*.

validation: establishing documented evidence that the system does what it purports to do.

waviness: undulations or rippling of the surfaces.

weld joint design: the shape, dimensions, and configuration of the weld joint.

weld whitening: a difference in appearance of grain structure between weld metal and base metal after electropolishing.

welding operator: one who operates machine or automatic welding equipment.

WFI: water-for-injection, a classification of water according to compendial standards.

Part SD Systems Design

(12)

(12) SD-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of Part SD is to establish design guidelines applicable to bioprocessing equipment. Wherever “equipment” is stated in this Part, it shall mean all bioprocessing equipment, components, assemblies, and systems.

The purpose of this Part is to create a design framework, using proven practices, for supporting efficient cleanability and bioburden control in bioprocessing systems. Methods presented in this Part represent industry’s accepted design practices. These should be regarded only as a guideline. They are not intended to limit the choice of alternative designs. The parties (owner/user, designer, and manufacturer) are free to impose their own design criteria for achieving the necessary requirements. Figures in this Part show several levels of design and fabrication. The “Accepted” designation represents an industry accepted design. They are not intended to limit new and possibly better designs.

The BPE Standard is not intended to foresee all potential combinations of owner/user requirements and equipment designs. Equipment may be successfully installed and qualified that does not conform to the requirements identified in the Standard. The owner/user shall be responsible for justifying the acceptability of equipment. The scope of this Part covers bioprocessing systems and ancillary equipment designs. This Part also applies to design considerations required for effective clean-in-place (CIP) and steam-in-place (SIP) processes.

This Part does not address software/hardware as it relates to the automation of the cleaning or steaming processes.

(12) SD-2 GENERAL GUIDELINES

All equipment shall be designed for the bioprocessing application, requirements, and specifications of the owner/user. It shall be the responsibility of the owner/user to specify the cleaning and/or sanitization requirements of the equipment.

SD-2.1 Containment

The containment level of the system or individual pieces of equipment should be specified by the owner/user.

It will be the responsibility of the owner/user to determine the containment level for the particular type of equipment or system, in accordance with National Institutes of Health (NIH) guidelines and applicable local codes or environmental regulations.

SD-2.2 Bioburden Control

[Reserved for future content]

SD-2.3 Bioburden Reduction

[Reserved for future content]

SD-2.3.1 Thermal Sanitization. [Reserved for future content]

SD-2.3.1.1 Steam in Place. Equipment parts and components subjected to SIP should withstand continuous flow of saturated steam at a minimum temperature of 266°F (130°C) for duration of 100 hr minimum under continuous steady-state conditions. However, at the discretion of the owner/user, conditions that are more stringent may be imposed. The use of elastomers/fluoroelastomers (within a piece of equipment or certain process instrumentation) that may thermally degrade during SIP will need to be thoroughly evaluated by the owner/user or manufacturer. The overall life of the equipment may be shortened significantly if the correct elastomer or process instrument is not selected.

All product contact surfaces shall reach the required temperatures during the SIP cycle.

SD-2.3.1.2 Depyrogenation. [Reserved for future content]

SD-2.3.2 Chemical Sanitization. [Reserved for future content]

SD-2.4 Fabrication

Fabrication shall be performed in facilities where the product contact surfaces are protected from contamination. During field welding and assembly, surface contamination shall be prevented.

Systems, equipment, and components shall be cleaned with a suitable cleaning agent and covered for protection before shipment. The use of preservative fluids is not recommended.

Any product contact surfaces that require shipment with preservatives or coatings shall be

(a) mutually agreed to, in advance, by the owner/user and manufacturer



- (b) clearly identified to all parties
- (c) in compliance with FDA or other applicable regulations, as appropriate for the process

SD-2.4.1 Materials of Construction

SD-2.4.1.1 General. Generally, materials such as 316, 316L, stainless steels, duplex stainless steels, and higher alloys have proven to be acceptable. The owner/user shall be responsible for the selection of the appropriate materials of construction for the specific process. Metallic materials of construction are listed in Part MM.

When nonmetallic materials are used (e.g., polymeric materials or adhesives), the owner/user shall specify which one of these materials shall carry a Certificate of Compliance. The conformance of material shall be explicitly stated (e.g., conforming to FDA 21CFR 177 and USP Section <88> Class VI). Polymeric materials and other nonmetallic materials of construction are listed in Part PM.

SD-2.4.1.2 Process Compatibility

(a) Materials of construction shall be capable of withstanding the temperature, pressure, and chemical corrosiveness ensuring the purity and integrity of the product.

(b) Materials shall be compatible with the stated bioprocessing conditions, cleaning solutions, and SIP conditions, etc., as specified by the owner/user.

(c) Surfaces exposed to bioprocessing fluids, cleaning, and SIP conditions must be

- (1) homogeneous in nature
- (2) impervious
- (3) inert
- (4) nonabsorbent
- (5) nontoxic
- (6) insoluble by process or cleaning fluids
- (7) resistant to corrosion, scratching, scoring, and distortion

(d) Materials that are in contact with bioprocessing fluids shall be identified by an industry recognized standard (see para. MM-4).

SD-2.4.1.3 Surface Coatings. Clad or electroplated surface coatings, plating, and surface preparatory chemicals may be used provided approval from the owner/user has been obtained. All surface coatings shall remain intact and be tolerant to the process, SIP and CIP fluids, and temperatures, without peeling or cracking.

SD-2.4.1.4 Transparent Materials

(a) Transparent materials (e.g., glass, polymer) that are used in viewing ports shall be rated for the applicable pressure, temperature range, and thermal shock.

(b) Internally coated glass shall only be used if the coating complies with FDA regulations or another regulatory authority's regulations and approved by the owner/user.

SD-2.4.2 Cleanability

(a) All surfaces shall be cleanable. Surface imperfections (e.g., crevices, gouges, obvious pits) shall be eliminated whenever feasible.

(b) Internal horizontal product contact surfaces shall be minimized.

(c) The equipment shall be drainable and free of areas where liquids may be retained and where soil or contaminants could collect. The equipment shall be free of areas of low flow and low velocity or impact where soil or contaminants could collect.

(d) All product contact surfaces shall be accessible to the cleaning solutions and shall be accessible to establish and determine efficacy of the cleaning protocol.

(e) Fasteners or threads shall not be exposed to the process, steam, or cleaning fluids. The use of threads within the process requires owner/user agreement. Bolted attachments should be eliminated whenever possible.

(f) No engraving or embossing of materials (for identification or traceability reasons) should be made on the process contact side. When markings are required on process contact surfaces, other methods of identification shall be used.

(g) Design of corners and radii should meet the following requirements: All internal angles of 135 deg or less on product contact surfaces shall have the maximum radius possible for ease of cleanability. Where possible, these surfaces shall have radii of not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.2 mm) except where required for functional reasons, such as the bonnet/body connection. For special cases, the radii may be reduced to $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) when agreed to by the owner/user. When the $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) radii cannot be achieved for essential functional reasons such as flat sealing surfaces and flow control apertures, the product contact surfaces of these internal angles shall be readily accessible for cleaning and examination.

SD-2.4.3 Drainability

SD-2.4.3.1 General. For sterility and cleaning, gravity is an effective way to facilitate drainage. To achieve gravity drainage, lines should be pitched to designated points at a specific slope. Refer to Nonmandatory Appendix C for suggested method of slope measurement. For gravity-drained piping/tubing systems, the owner/user may define the system slope in accordance with one of the designations listed in Table SD-2.4.3.1-1. Gravity-drained piping/tubing systems shall have a continuous pitch that is equal to or greater than the slope designation. Line sections up to 10 in. (25 cm) in length (or longer with advance approval of owner/user) that are level or have a positive slope less than the slope designation are acceptable if the section is fitting-bound.

SD-2.4.3.2 Drainability Design Considerations.

The system's process requirements should be considered in the selection of slope designation.



Table SD-2.4.3.1-1 Slope Designations for Gravity-Drained Lines

Slope Designation	Minimum Slope, in/ft	Minimum Slope, mm/m	Minimum Slope, %	Minimum Slope, deg
GSD1	1/16	5	0.5	0.29
GSD2	1/8	10	1.0	0.57
GSD3	1/4	20	2.0	1.15
GSD0	Line slope not required			

(a) Product-contact lines should be sloped to minimize pooling of product in the system.

(b) Lines that are steam sterilized in-place should be sloped to facilitate gravity drainage of condensate.

(c) Lines that are cleaned in-place should be sloped to facilitate gravity drainage of cleaning fluids.

The physical characteristics of the system (e.g., line size, materials, fluid viscosity, fluid surface tension) will influence drainability at a given slope and should also be considered. The owner/user may apply additional criteria in the selection of slope designation to address issues such as product recovery or maintenance. Fluid retention due to capillary action should be considered when using tubing less than $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (20 mm). System leveling should be considered for mobile equipment that is gravity drained.

SD-2.4.3.3 Slope Considerations. The recommended minimum slope designation for gravity-drained product-contact process lines is GSD2.

SD-2.4.3.4 Drain Points

(a) Piping and equipment should be installed with designated drain points to maximize self-draining properties. The number of drain points should be minimized. The equipment manufacturer shall indicate the proper orientation to optimize drainability. The installer and owner/user shall ensure that proper orientation is achieved.

(b) Systems or equipment that cannot be gravity-drained shall utilize forced expulsion with pressurized gas where line drainability is required.

SD-2.4.4 Miscellaneous Design Details

SD-2.4.4.1 Lubricants

(a) Grease and other lubricating fluids that are used in gear boxes, drive assemblies, etc., shall be contained to prevent leakage of the lubricants or process, either directly or indirectly (e.g., through seepage, seal leaks, etc.).

(b) The equipment manufacturer shall specify the type of lubricants that are to be used for maintenance. If the specified lubricant is not accepted by the owner/user, the choice of an alternative shall be agreed to by the owner/user and the equipment manufacturer.

(c) The owner/user shall give his approval for the lubricants that could come in contact with the product. These lubricants shall be identified by name, manufacturer, and grade and shall conform to FDA or other applicable regulatory codes.

SD-2.4.4.2 Exterior Design. Equipment located in clean areas is periodically cleaned by wash-down or manually cleaned by wipe-down with harsh cleaning solutions. Such equipment shall conform to the following:

(a) Materials of construction should be corrosion resistant, easily maintained, cleaned, and sanitized without flaking or shedding.

(b) Finishes shall be compatible with the area/room classification as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

(c) Components shall be capable of being chemically cleaned, steam cleaned, or pressure washed.

(d) All burrs or weld marks shall be removed.

(e) Hinges should be easily removable and/or cleanable.

(f) Equipment mounted on cabinets that are exposed to the environment should be mounted flush.

(g) Skids should have no openings in the frame allowing water retention. Supporting skid frame structures and modules should be constructed from fully sealed tubes or pipes, which are easily cleaned. Frames should have rounded rather than sharp edges.

(h) Motors, gearboxes, and similar equipment should not retain fluids or cleaning solutions on their external surfaces.

(i) Nameplates for tagging equipment should be constructed from corrosion-resistant material such as stainless steel or polymeric material, and have minimum crevices. The nameplates should be attached and sealed or attached with a corrosion-resistant wire loop.

(j) There should be adequate clearance below or under the equipment for cleaning, and a clearance for discharge should be provided. Elevated equipment under open frames should have a minimum clearance of 6 in. (150 mm) for wash-down and cleaning. In other cases a minimum of 4 in. (100 mm) would be adequate.

(k) Joints and insulation materials shall be sealed and impervious to moisture and cleaning agents.

(l) Electrical enclosures and conduit should be cleanable and utilize materials of construction that are compatible with cleaning agents.

(m) Painted surfaces shall be identified by the fabricator and have the advance approval of the owner/user. All paint systems shall be FDA compliant.

SD-2.4.4.3 Surface Finishes. The finishes of product contact surfaces shall be specified by the owner/user in accordance with the definitions of Part SF in this Standard.



(12) SD-3 PROCESS COMPONENTS**SD-3.1 Connections, Fittings, and Piping****SD-3.1.1 General**

(a) Design of equipment should minimize the number of connections. Butt welded connections should be used wherever practical.

(b) Connections to equipment shall use acceptable hygienic design connections, mutually agreeable to the owner/user and manufacturer.

(c) All connections shall be capable of CIP and SIP. Fittings shall be so designed that there will not be any crevices or hard-to-clean areas around the gasketed joint. ANSI raised face or flat face flanged joints should be avoided where possible (see Fig. SD-3.1.1-1).

(d) Ferrules and ferrule connections should be as short as possible to minimize dead legs. The use of short welding ferrules should be incorporated into the design.

(e) All product contact fittings should be self-draining when properly installed.

(f) Threaded fittings, exposed to process fluid, are not recommended (see Fig. SG-2.2.2-5).

(g) The use of flat gaskets may be acceptable, when agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer, for applications where it is considered self-sanitizing (i.e., in pure steam distribution systems).

(h) The centerline radius of factory bent tubes shall be in accordance with Table DT-3-1, CLR(r).

SD-3.1.2 System Design**SD-3.1.2.1 General**

(a) Product hold-up volume in the system should be minimized.

(b) Bioprocessing piping and tubing design should have routing and location priority over process and mechanical support systems.

(c) Piping and connections to in-line valves should be of all-welded construction where feasible, practical, and agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer. To ensure the highest degree of hygienic design, the piping systems should utilize welded connections except where make-break connections are necessary.

SD-3.1.2.2 Dead Legs. Dead legs will be measured by the term L/D , where L is the leg extension from the I.D. wall normal to the flow pattern or direction, and D is the I.D. of the extension or leg of a tubing fitting or the nominal dimension of a valve or instrument. For valves, L shall be measured to the seal point of the valve. Tables SD-3.1.2.2-1 and SD-3.1.2.2-2 indicate L/D values based on the BPE definition for various tubing geometries and configurations.

There is evidence that an L/D of 2 or less may prevent the branch from being a dead leg; however, the size and shape of the branch are also important in determining if the branch could lead to contamination. With sufficient

flow through a primary pipeline, a branch may not constitute a dead leg.

The orientation of a branch is critical to the cleanability of the system. The branch shall be oriented to avoid a dead leg (e.g., a vertical branch with an L/D of 2 or less may still result in a dead leg with trapped gas or residual materials).

For high-purity water systems, an L/D of 2 or less is attainable with today's manufacturing and design technology. For other bioprocessing systems, such as purification, filtration, and fermentation having cluster block, and multiport valves, an L/D of 2 or less is achievable. However, it may not be achievable with certain equipment and process configurations as they are currently manufactured. An L/D of 2 or less is recommended but shall not be construed to be an absolute requirement. The system designer and manufacturer shall make every attempt to eliminate system branches with an L/D greater than 2. It will be the responsibility of the system manufacturer or designer to identify where exceptions exist or where the L/D of 2 or less cannot be met.

An L/D of 2 or less may not be achievable for weir-type valves clamped to tees and certain sizes of close welded point-of-use valves, as shown in Fig. SD-3.1.2.2-1, illustrations (a), (d), (e), (f), and (g). For the header and valve size combinations where the L/D of 2 cannot be met using these configurations, a specific isolation valve design, as shown in Fig. SD-3.1.2.2-1, illustrations (b) and (c), may be required to achieve the desired ratio.

SD-3.1.2.3 System Piping

(a) Routing of piping should be as direct and short as possible to ensure a minimal quantity of CIP solution to fill a circuit, and eliminate excessive piping and fittings.

(b) Cross contamination of product streams shall be physically prevented. Methods of separation used in industry are

(1) removable spool piece

(2) U-bend transfer panel

(3) double block-and-bleed valve system (see Fig. SD-3.1.2.3-1)

(4) mix-proof valving

(c) The use of fluid bypass piping (around traps, control valves, etc.) is not recommended.

(d) The use of redundant in-line equipment is not recommended due to the potential creation of dead legs.

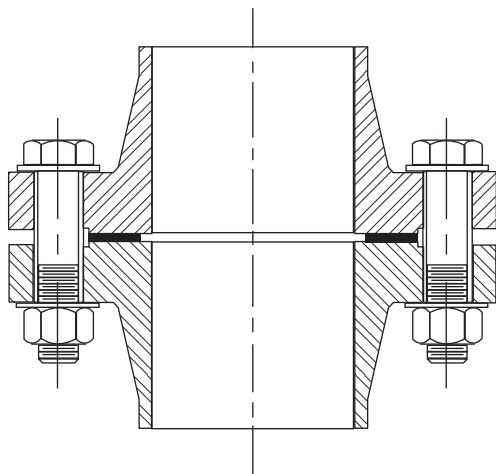
(e) Eccentric reducers shall be used in horizontal piping to eliminate pockets in the system.

(f) The system shall be designed to eliminate air pockets, and prevent or minimize air entrainment.

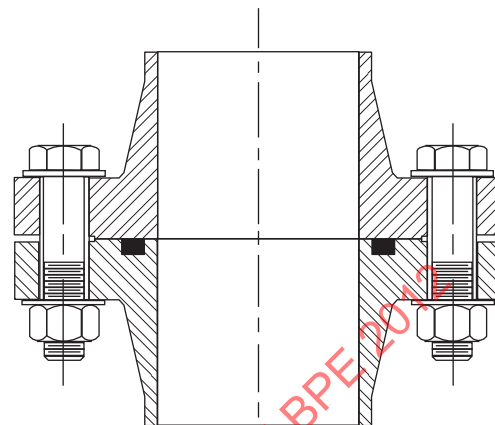
(g) The centerline radius of field bent tubes should be not less than 2.5 times the nominal tube diameter to prevent the deterioration of interior surfaces (wrinkling, striations, and potential cracking). Tighter bends may be used with the approval of the owner/user when



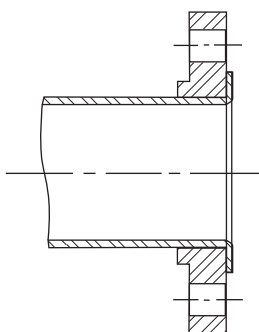
Fig. SD-3.1.1-1 Flat Gasket Applications



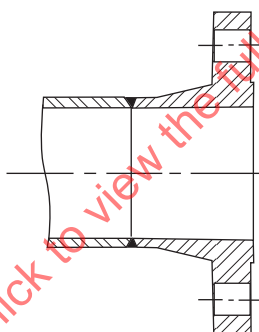
(a) Flange With Flat Gasket



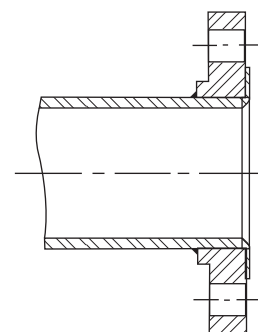
(b) Flange With O-Ring



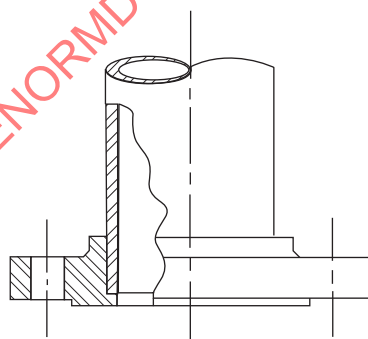
(c) Stub-End/Lap Joint



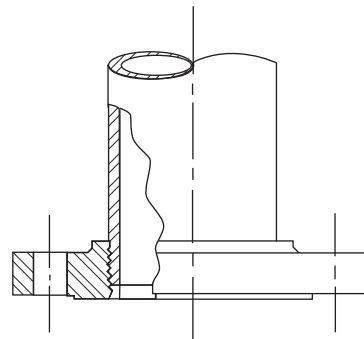
(d) Weld Neck



(e) Slip On

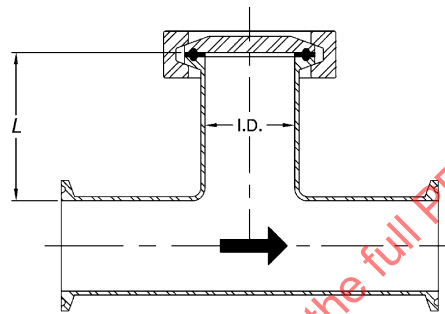


(f) Socket Weld



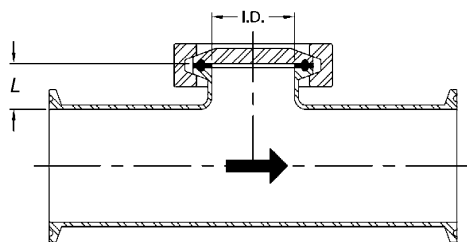
(g) Threaded

Table SD-3.1.2.2-1 L/D Dimensions for Flow-Through Tee: Full-Size Standard Straight Tee With Blind Cap



Nominal Size, in.	Wall Thickness	I.D. (D)	Branch, L	L/D (Branch)
$\frac{1}{4}$	0.035	0.180	2.16	12.00
$\frac{3}{8}$	0.035	0.305	2.10	6.88
$\frac{1}{2}$	0.065	0.370	2.07	5.58
$\frac{3}{4}$	0.065	0.620	2.07	3.33
1	0.065	0.870	2.19	2.52
$1\frac{1}{2}$	0.065	1.370	2.14	1.56
2	0.065	1.870	2.44	1.30
$2\frac{1}{2}$	0.065	2.370	2.44	1.03
3	0.065	2.870	2.44	0.85
4	0.083	3.834	2.83	0.74
6	0.109	5.782	4.24	0.73

**Table SD-3.1.2.2-2 L/D Dimensions for Flow-Through Tee:
Short Outlet Reducing Tee With Blind Cap**



Nominal Size Tee, in.	Nominal Branch Size, in.	Tee Wall Thickness	Branch Wall Thickness	Branch I.D., D	Branch, L	L/D (Branch)
3/8	1/4	0.035	0.035	0.180	0.85	4.71
1/2	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.82	4.53
1/2	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.82	2.67
3/4	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
3/4	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
3/4	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.86
1	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
1	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
1	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.86
1	3/4	0.065	0.065	0.620	0.69	1.11
1 1/2	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
1 1/2	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
1 1/2	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.88
1 1/2	3/4	0.065	0.065	0.620	0.69	1.11
1 1/2	1	0.065	0.065	0.870	0.69	0.79
2	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
2	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
2	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.86
2	3/4	0.065	0.065	0.620	0.69	1.11
2	1	0.065	0.065	0.870	0.69	0.79
2	1 1/2	0.065	0.065	1.370	0.69	0.50
2 1/2	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
2 1/2	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
2 1/2	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.86
2 1/2	3/4	0.065	0.065	0.620	0.69	1.11
2 1/2	1	0.065	0.065	0.870	0.69	0.79
2 1/2	1 1/2	0.065	0.065	1.370	0.69	0.50
2 1/2	2	0.065	0.065	1.870	0.69	0.37
3	1/4	0.065	0.035	0.180	0.69	3.83
3	3/8	0.065	0.035	0.305	0.69	2.26
3	1/2	0.065	0.065	0.370	0.69	1.86
3	3/4	0.065	0.065	0.620	0.69	1.11
3	1	0.065	0.065	0.870	0.69	0.79

**Table SD-3.1.2.2-2 L/D Dimensions for Flow-Through Tee:
Short Outlet Reducing Tee With Blind Cap (Cont'd)**

Nominal Size Tee, in.	Nominal Branch Size, in.	Tee Wall Thickness	Branch Wall Thickness	Branch I.D., D	Branch, L	L/D (Branch)
3	1½	0.065	0.065	1.370	0.69	0.50
3	2	0.065	0.065	1.870	0.69	0.37
3	2½	0.065	0.065	2.370	0.69	0.29
4	¼	0.083	0.035	0.180	0.71	3.93
4	⅜	0.083	0.035	0.305	0.71	2.32
4	½	0.083	0.065	0.370	0.71	1.91
4	¾	0.083	0.065	0.620	0.71	1.14
4	1	0.083	0.065	0.870	0.71	0.81
4	1½	0.083	0.065	1.370	0.71	0.52
4	2	0.083	0.065	1.870	0.71	0.38
4	2½	0.083	0.065	2.370	0.71	0.30
4	3	0.083	0.065	2.870	0.71	0.25
6	¼	0.109	0.035	0.180	0.86	4.77
6	⅜	0.109	0.035	0.305	0.86	2.82
6	½	0.109	0.065	0.370	0.86	2.32
6	¾	0.109	0.065	0.620	0.86	1.39
6	1	0.109	0.065	0.870	0.86	0.99
6	1½	0.109	0.065	1.370	0.86	0.63
6	2	0.109	0.065	1.870	0.86	0.46
6	2½	0.109	0.065	2.370	0.86	0.36
6	3	0.109	0.065	2.870	0.86	0.30
6	4	0.109	0.083	3.834	0.86	0.22



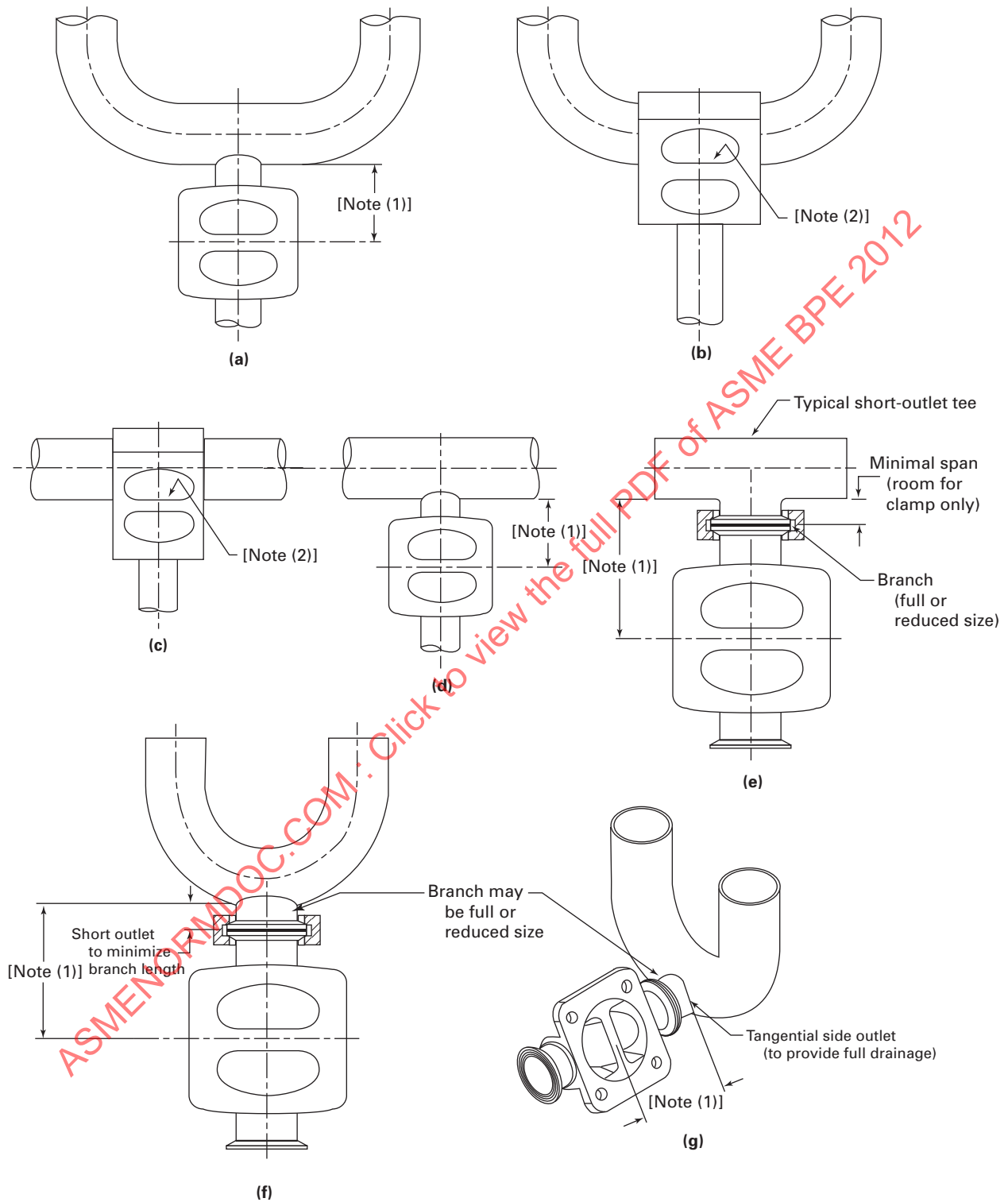
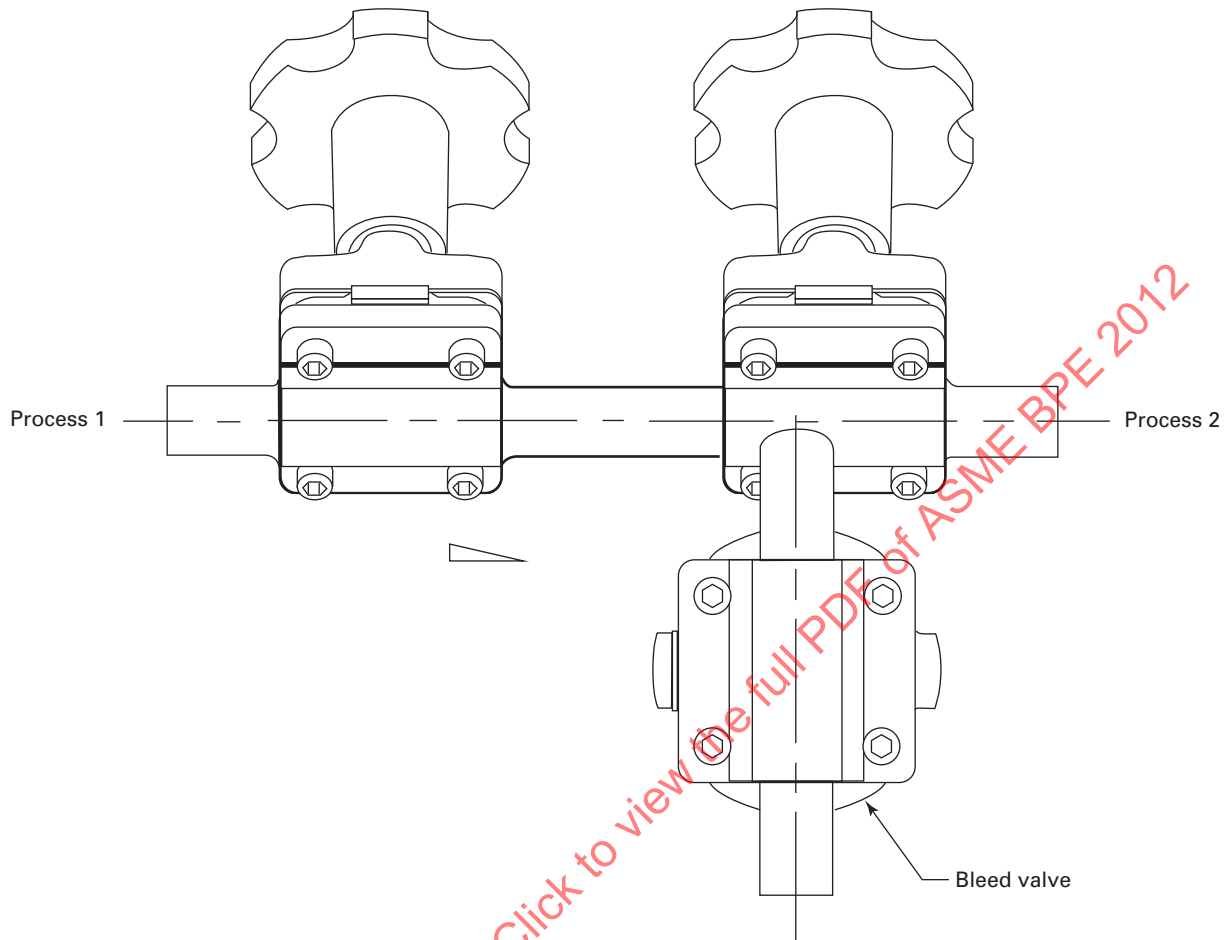
Fig. SD-3.1.2.2-1 Accepted Point-of-Use Designs

Fig. SD-3.1.2.3-1 Double Block-and-Bleed Valve Assembly

appropriate inspection techniques and procedures (visual, borescope, sectioning, etc.) are used.

(h) Ball valves are not recommended in fluid hygienic piping systems. See SD-4.2.3(b) for further comments.

(i) Product contact surfaces of austenitic stainless steel, except those covered by section SD-4.3.1, should be passivated before being placed in service. Specific passivation requirements shall be defined in the engineering design documents, and/or specifications and shall be in accordance with SF-2.6. Passivation of electropolished surfaces is not required unless the surface has been altered (e.g., welded or mechanically polished) or exposed to external contamination after electropolishing.

(j) The use of blind welds in piping systems should be avoided. Proper installation sequencing of the piping system can reduce the number of blind welds. See MJ-7.3.3(b) and GR-5.3.4 for further details.

SD-3.1.2.4 Hygienic Support Systems

(a) Hygienic supports should be used within classified spaces. Hygienic support design should incorporate drainable geometry to facilitate cleanability, have no exposed threads, and have minimal potential for collecting and trapping debris or liquids on the hanger. Materials of construction shall be corrosion resistant and compatible with the chemical, thermal, and physical performance requirements of the installed location. The materials shall have adequate strength and durability to withstand the application of continuous and/or cyclic thermal exposure that may be encountered in the designed service.

(b) The piping should maintain proper continuous slope for drainability. Hygienic support systems shall assist in maintaining the required slope and alignment under all operating conditions taking into account thermal cycling, distortion, settling, moment loads, fluid

specific gravity, etc. The support system should be designed to distribute loads and stresses from any potential movement. The supports shall be installed without adding stress to the tube or pipe in an attempt to achieve a desired slope.

(c) The support systems shall provide for, and control, the intended movement of the system. The designer should take into account system and equipment movement when planning the design. Anchoring systems should be designed to avoid piping motion in any of the three Cartesian axes. Guiding systems should be designed to allow piping axial motion due to thermal or mechanical loads. An anchor serves to secure the piping in place, and a guide will allow axial motion of the piping and is used to allow for thermal expansion.

(d) Supports/hangers should be installed close to each change in the direction of piping. The only exception is on short subassemblies using small diameter tube (<1.000 in. O.D.) that is installed in a drainable position and does not bear any additional weights or loads from other process equipment. Hangers shall be of adequate strength and durability to withstand the imposed loads per MSS-SP-58, Table 1. Per manufacturer's recommendations, supports/hangers should be installed as close to (and on both sides, if possible) concentrated loads including valves, instrumentation, and filter housings.

SD-3.1.2.4.1 Pipe Hangers and Supports for Metallic Piping. Metallic piping system hangers and supports shall be installed in compliance with MSS-SP-58, MSS-SP-69, MSS-SP-89, and ASME B31.3 Standards. The metallic pipe or tube to be installed shall meet the straightness criteria of ASTM A1016 to optimize drainability. The support spacing shall not exceed a distance that will permit the piping to deflect under operating conditions.

SD-3.1.2.4.2 Pipe Hangers and Supports for Nonmetallic Piping

(a) Nonmetallic piping system hangers and supports shall be engineered based upon the specific materials selected. When properly installed, stress concentration points will be minimized. Considerations shall be made to ensure drainability and overcome any deflection, such that pooling is minimized. Refer to manufacturer's recommendations for spacing, which are based upon calculations that take into consideration the piping material, density, modulus of elasticity, diameter and wall thickness of the pipe, specific gravity of the fluids being transported, operating temperature, and thermal expansion properties.

(b) The requirement of a continuous support shall be determined based upon the operating temperatures and the specific gravity of the process fluid being transported. Support channels may be available in a "V" or "U" section and shall be manufactured with no sharp edges that may embed or cause damage to the pipe

exterior. These are commonly available in stainless steel or FRP (fiberglass reinforced plastic) materials. These supports cannot restrict axial movement of the piping and shall be approved by owner/user.

SD-3.2 Hose Assemblies

SD-3.2.1 General

(a) Permanently installed hose assemblies shall be installed and supported so that the entire hose is self-draining [see Fig. SD-3.2.1-1, illustrations (a) and (b)]. In temporary runs, hose assemblies may be manually drained after disconnecting.

(b) Hose assemblies shall be installed so that strain on the end connections is minimized. Hose assemblies shall not be used as a substitute for rigid tube fittings or as tension or compression elements.

(c) Hose assembly length should be minimized and fitted for purpose.

(d) Hose assemblies shall be easy to remove for examination and/or cleaning.

(e) Hose assembly shall be clearly marked or tagged with the design allowable working pressure/vacuum and design temperature range.

(f) Hose assemblies shall be inspected and maintained on a scheduled basis.

SD-3.2.2 Flexible Element

(a) The flexible element of the hose assembly shall be constructed of materials that will permit the appropriate degree of movement or drainable offset at installation.

(b) The interior surface of the flexible element shall be smooth and nonconvoluted.

(c) The materials used shall comply with the applicable requirements in Part PM and/or Part SG with regard to biocompatibility. The materials used must also be compatible with cleaning and/or SIP conditions.

SD-3.2.3 End Connections

(a) End connections shall be of a material and design sufficiently rigid to withstand the combined forces of the burst pressure rating of the flexible element, the compression forces required to affect the secure assembly with the flexible element. [Refer to Fig. SD-3.2.1-1, illustrations (c) and (d).]

(b) End connections shall be of a material compatible with the process fluid, cleaning solutions, and steam where applicable. Materials shall meet the requirements of SD-2.4.1 or Part PM.

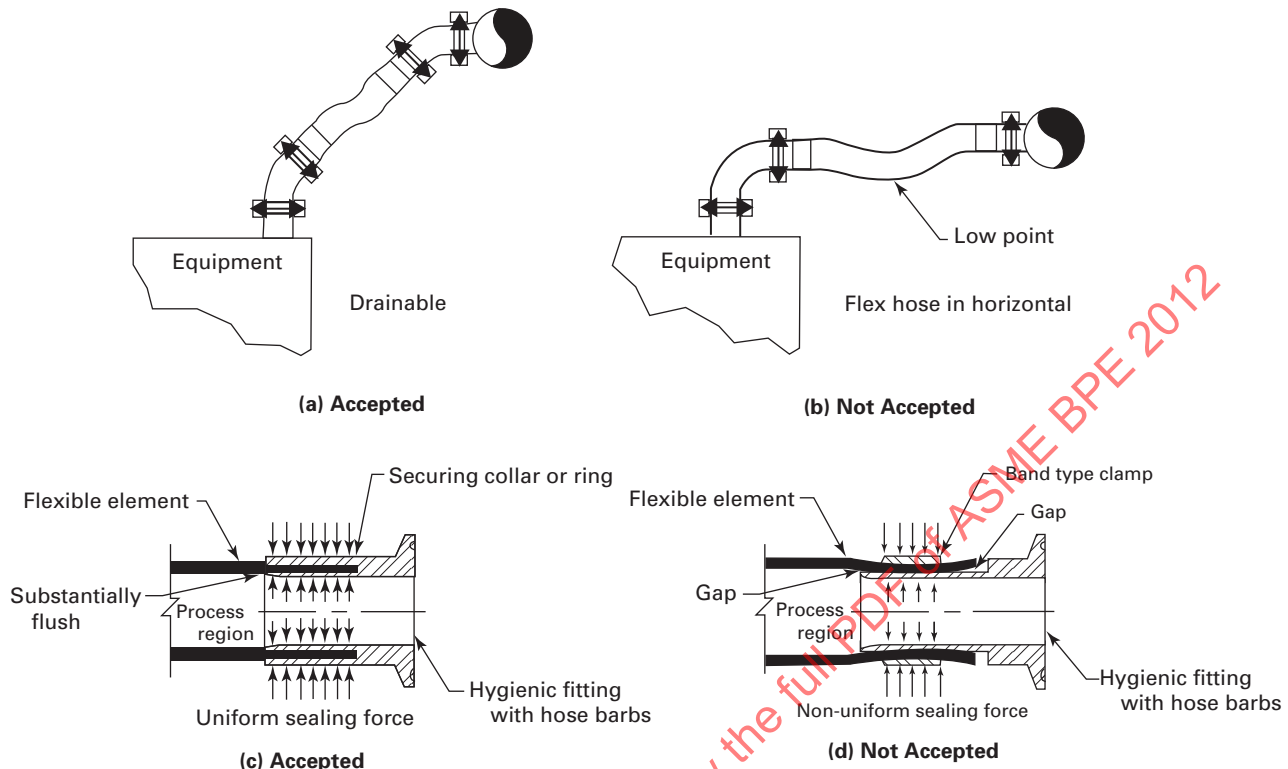
(c) End connections shall meet all surface finish requirements of Part SF or Part PM.

(d) End connections shall be a hygienic connection design per SG-3.3.2.

SD-3.3 Pumps

SD-3.3.1 Diaphragm Pumps. [Reserved for future content]



Fig. SD-3.2.1-1 Flexible Hygienic Hose Design

SD-3.3.2 Hygienic Pumps

SD-3.3.2.1 General

(a) Pumps shall be cleanable. Pumps shall be selected according to the operating conditions determined by the end-owner/user (e.g., process, CIP, SIP, passivation).

(b) All product contact connections to the pump shall be of a hygienic design (see Figs. SG-2.2.2-1, SG-2.2.2-2, SG-2.2.2-3 and SG-2.2.2-4).

SD-3.3.2.2 Centrifugal Pumps

(a) Hygienic centrifugal pumps shall be capable of CIP.

(b) All process contact surfaces shall be drainable without pump disassembly or removal.

(c) Shrouded/closed impellers should not be used. Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-1 illustrates open, semi-open, and closed impeller configurations.

(d) Impeller shall be attached to shaft in a way that all crevices and threads are not exposed to product. Threads, such as in an impeller nut/bolt, shall be sealed by an O-ring or hygienic gasket. Refer to Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-2. The use of O-rings or hygienic gaskets shall be consistent with Part SG.

(e) Suction, discharge, and casing drain connections shall be an integral part of the pump casing.

(f) Casing drains shall be at the lowest point of the casing, to ensure drainage (see Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-3).

(g) The use of an elbow type casing drain is not recommended without the use of an automatically controlled drain. The casing drain connection shall be designed to minimize the L/D as shown in Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-4.

(h) Pump discharge connection should be tilted to allow for full venting of the casing (see Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-3).

(i) All pump seals should be designed to minimize seal material degradation.

(j) Shaft seals shall conform to Part SG.

SD-3.3.2.3 Positive Displacement Pumps

(a) When possible, positive displacement pumps should be configured with vertically mounted inlets and outlets to promote drainability and venting.

(b) When using internal bypass pressure relief devices, they shall be of a hygienic design. It is preferred that an external, piping mounted relief device (hygienic rupture disc) rather than a pump mounted bypass be used.

SD-3.3.2.4 Rotary Lobe Pumps

(a) The owner/user shall specify the chemical, thermal, and hydraulic operating conditions of the pump (e.g., process, CIP, SIP) to ensure proper component selection. Hygienic rotary lobe pumps are temperature sensitive (e.g., rotor to casing contact due to thermal expansion).

Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-1 Pump Impeller Configurations

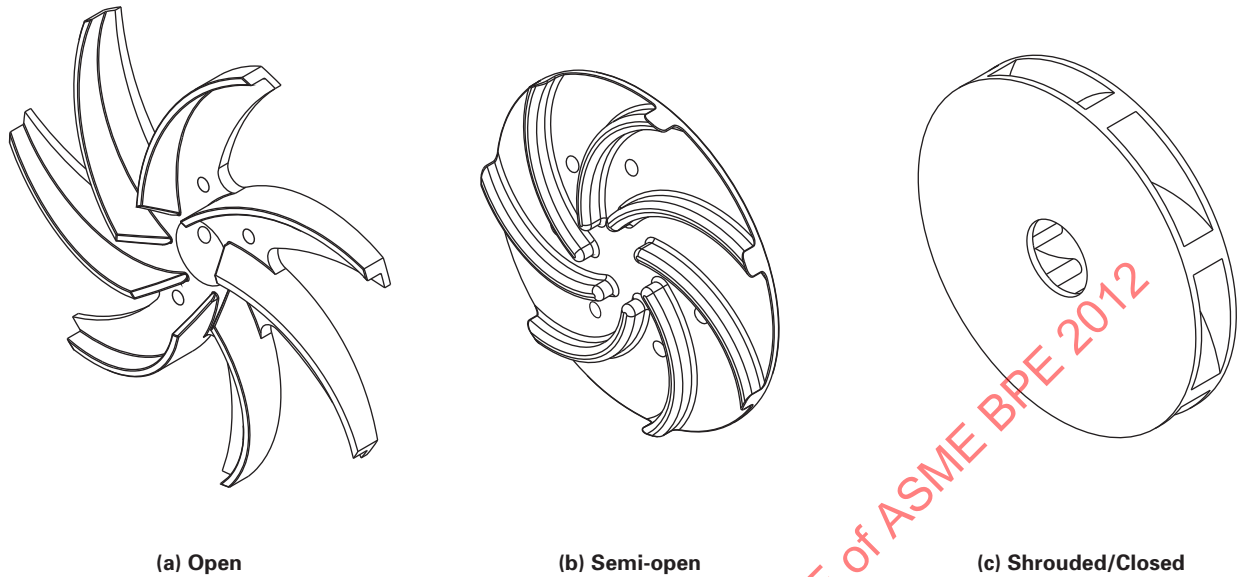


Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-2 Acceptable Impeller Attachments

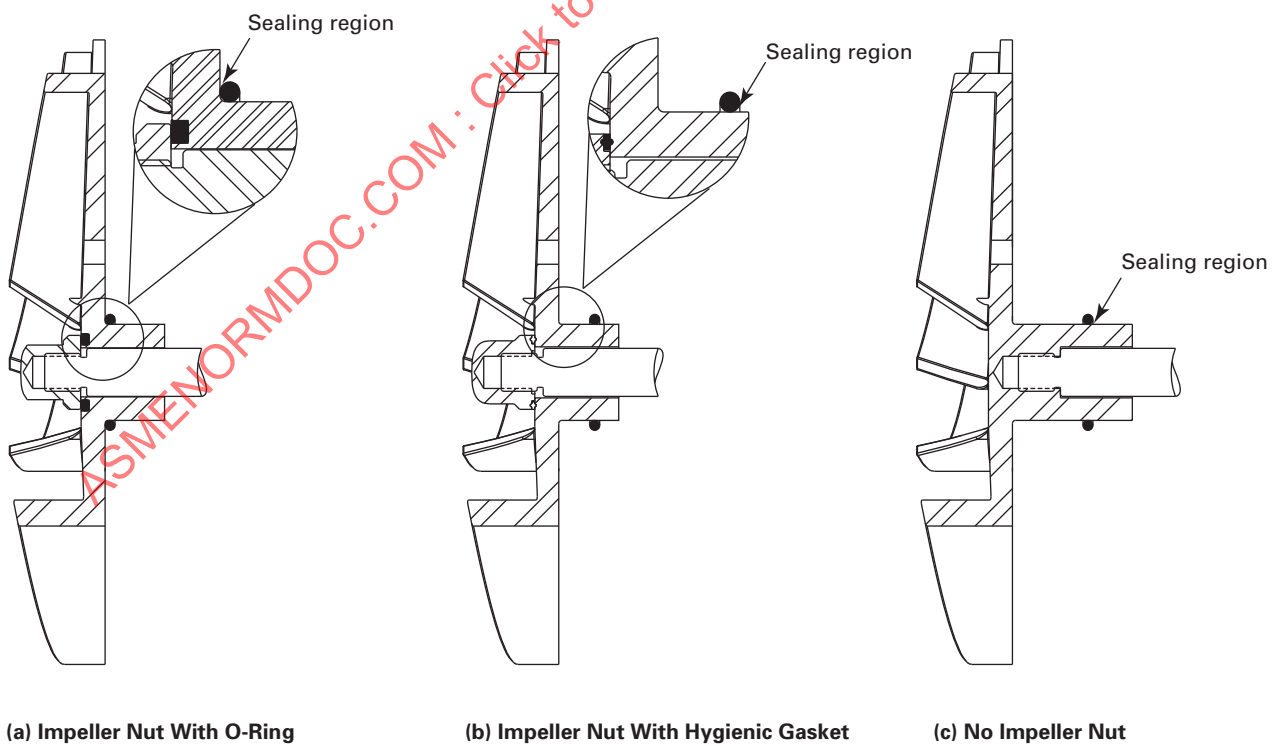


Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-3 Casing Drain Configurations

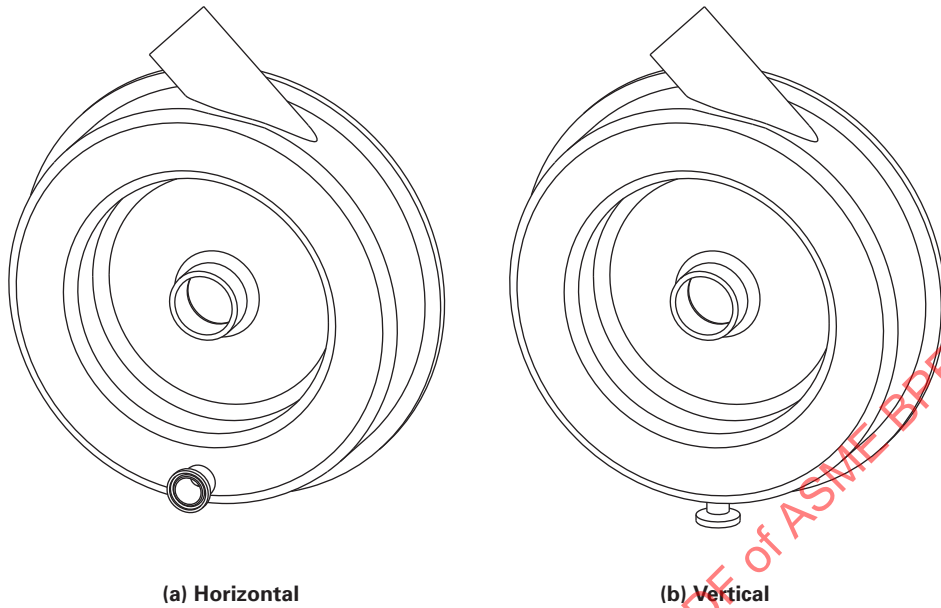


Fig. SD-3.3.2.2-4 Casing Drain L/D Ratios

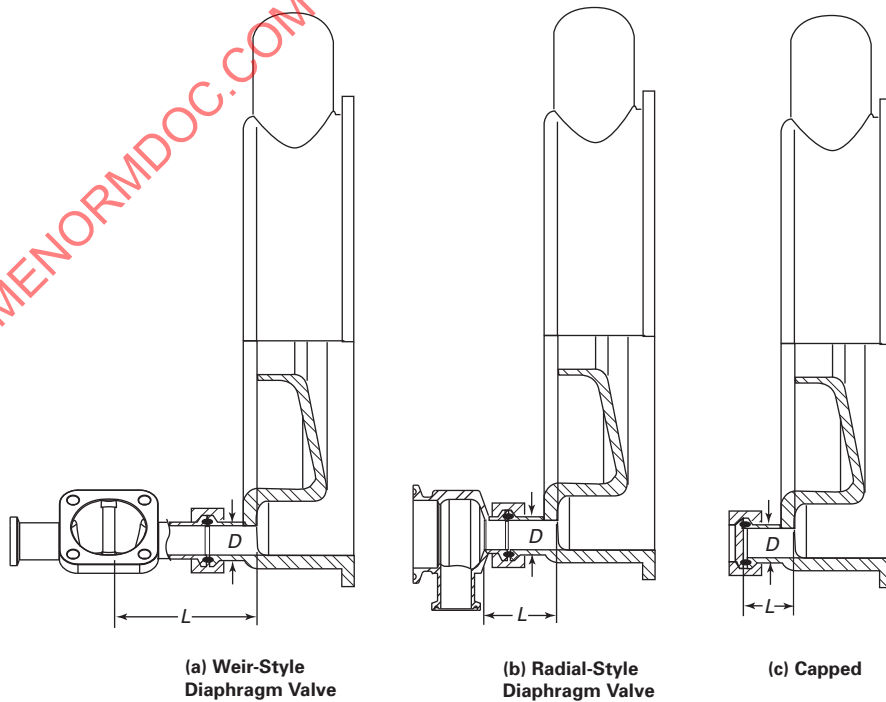
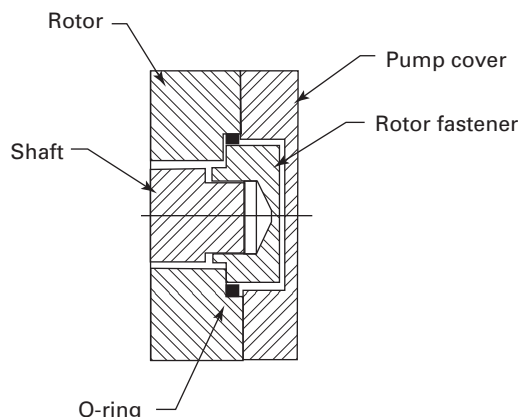


Fig. SD-3.3.2.4-1 Rotary Lobe Pump Rotor Attachment



(b) The pump should be designed and installed to minimize hold-up volume.

(c) Rotor fasteners shall be attached to the shaft in a way that crevices and threads are not exposed to product. Threads and crevices shall be isolated from the product by an appropriate hygienic seal, such as an O-ring or hygienic gasket (see Fig. SD-3.3.2.4-1).

(d) Pump cover shall seal against the pump body by means of an O-ring or hygienic gasket.

(e) All product contact O-rings, gaskets, and shaft seals shall comply with Part SG.

(f) If a pressure relief device is used, it shall be of hygienic design in conformance with SD-3.15.

SD-3.4 Vessels

SD-3.4.1 General

(a) SD-3.4.1 defines the requirements that are to be met in the design, fabrication, and supply of biopharmaceutical vessels, tanks, bioreactors, fermentors, and columns. This section will refer to all of the above as vessels whether they are pressurized or not.

(b) Design and fabrication of vessels and internal parts shall ensure that surfaces are free of ledges, crevices, pockets, and other surface irregularities. If more restrictive tolerances are required, they shall be included as part of the fabrication specifications for the project.

(c) All heat transfer surfaces should be drainable and ventable.

(d) Breastplates, reinforcing pads, doubler plates, poison pads, etc., which are required for welding dissimilar material to the vessel, should be of the same material as the vessel. No telltale holes are allowed on product contact surfaces and those, which are outside, should be cleanable.

(e) Vessels that are to handle above 176°F (80°C) [e.g., SIP, hot water-for-injection (WFI), hot U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP) waters, and hot CIP solutions] should be designed for full vacuum service.

(f) Top and bottom heads on vessels that are cleaned in place shall be self-draining. Dished heads such as ASME flanged and dished (F&D), elliptical, and hemispherical are the usual choice; however, flat and conical heads should slope at not less than 1/8 in./ft (10 mm/m) to a common drain.

(g) All internal surfaces should be sloped or pitched for drainability.

(h) Test protocols for drainability shall be agreed upon in advance, by all the parties (see SD-6.4). All vessels should be checked for drainability during fabrication.

SD-3.4.2 Vessel Openings

(a) Nozzles that are designed to be cleaned by a spray device should have the smallest L/D ratio possible. For non-flow through nozzles, the L/D of 2 or less is recommended (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-1).

(b) Bottom-mounted agitators, pads, etc., shall not interfere with the drainability of the vessel.

(c) All instrument probes and any sidewall penetrations (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-2) shall be sloped for drainage, unless the instruments used require horizontal mounting (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-3).

(d) Blank covers shall have the same finish as the vessel internals.

(e) Drain valves should optimize drainability and minimize branch L/D .

(f) The location and number of spray devices should be chosen to eliminate shadowing at internal parts such as mixer shafts, dip tubes, and baffles.

(g) Sparger and dip tubes shall be designed in accordance with SD-3.4.1(a), (b), (e), (g), and (h). Sparger and dip tubes shall incorporate low point drains (where applicable, i.e., horizontal lines) and be supported to ensure drainability.

(h) The number of shell side nozzles and connections should be minimized.

(i) Manways on the side shell of a vessel shall be installed only by agreement of the owner/user. If side-shell manways are required, they shall be sloped for drainage.

(j) Sample valves should be designed for CIP and SIP where applicable. Sample valves located on vessels shall be of a hygienic design.

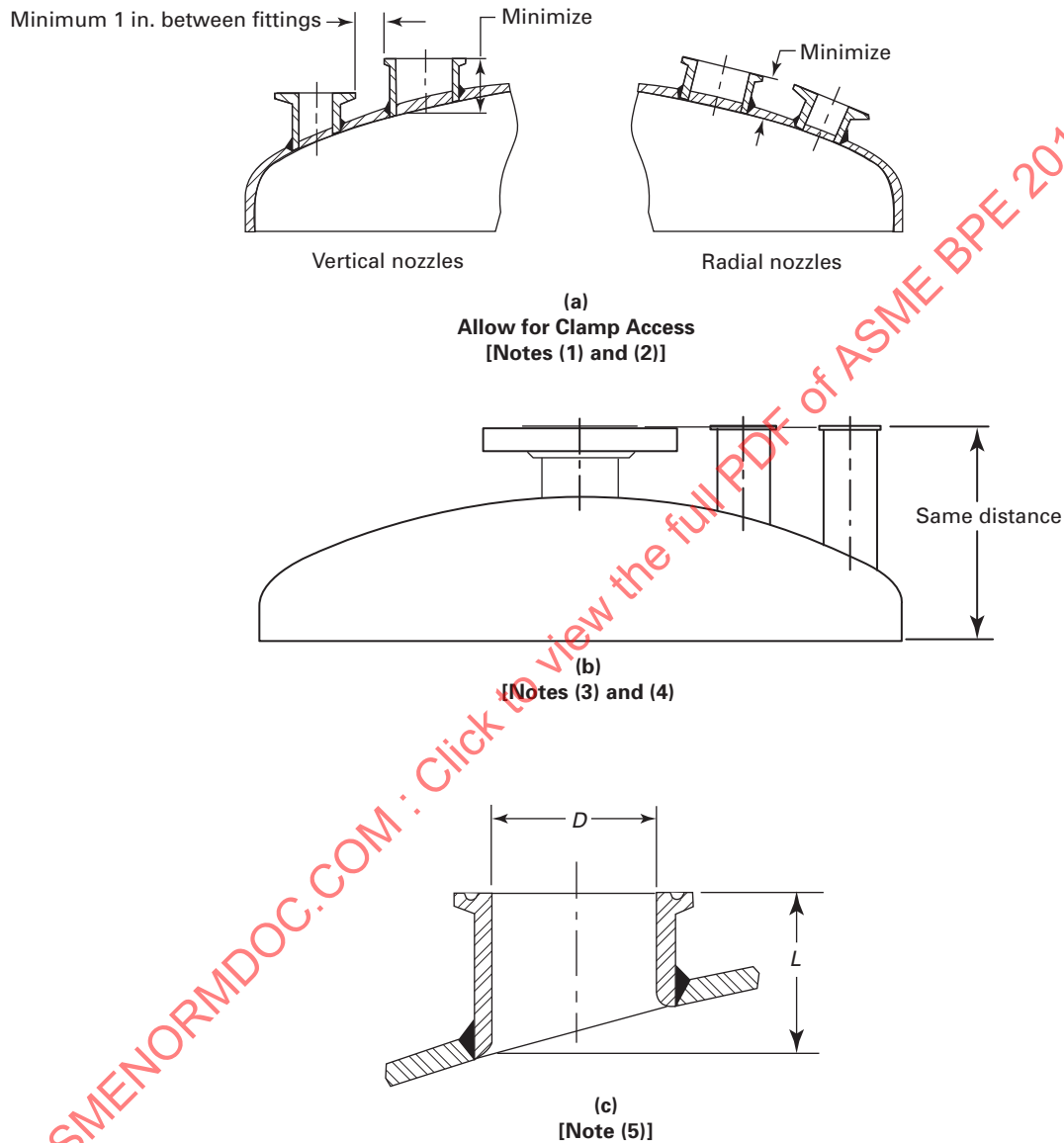
(k) Sample valves should not be located on bottom heads.

(l) Dip tubes and spargers mounted in the nozzle neck should have an annular space between the O.D. of the dip tube or sparger and the I.D. of the nozzle neck in accordance with Table SD-3.4.2-1. An L/A of 2 or less is recommended (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-4). If a larger L/A exists, a method for cleaning this space shall be specified. In all cases sufficient annular space to allow access for CIP coverage shall be provided.

(m) As required by the process, inlet nozzles tangential to the vessel surface may be used (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-5 and Fig. PI-9.1.3-1).

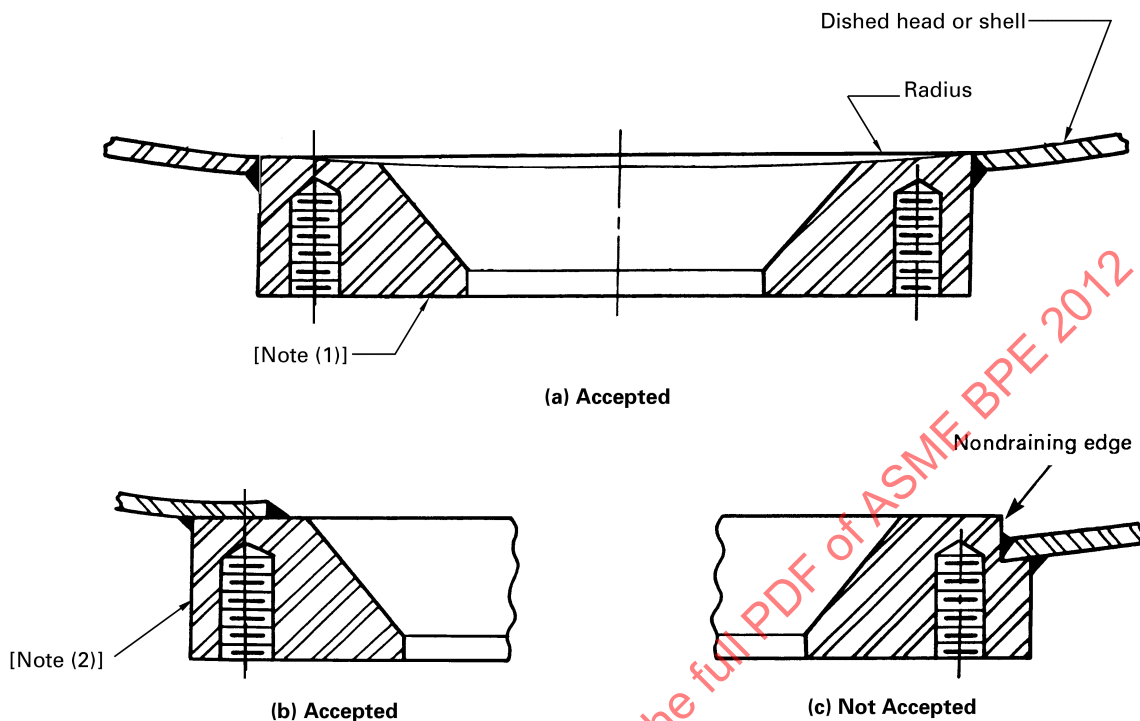


Fig. SD-3.4.2-1 Nozzle Design



NOTES:

- (1) Less dead space.
- (2) Better CIP/SIP capabilities.
- (3) Potential problems with CIP and SIP with capped connections.
- (4) Dead space: stagnant areas.
- (5) All L/D ratios to be calculated on long-side dimensions for vessel heads.

Fig. SD-3.4.2-2 Side and Bottom Connections**NOTES:**

- (1) If a flat gasket is used, mismatch of diameters can result in crevices.
- (2) Telltale hole required.

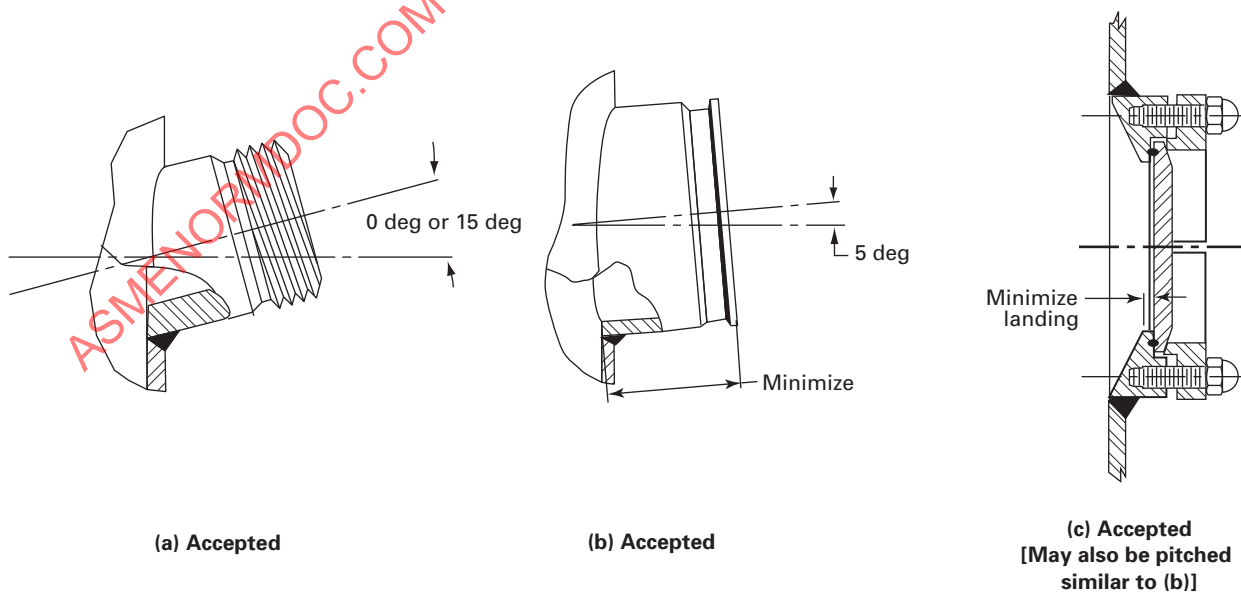
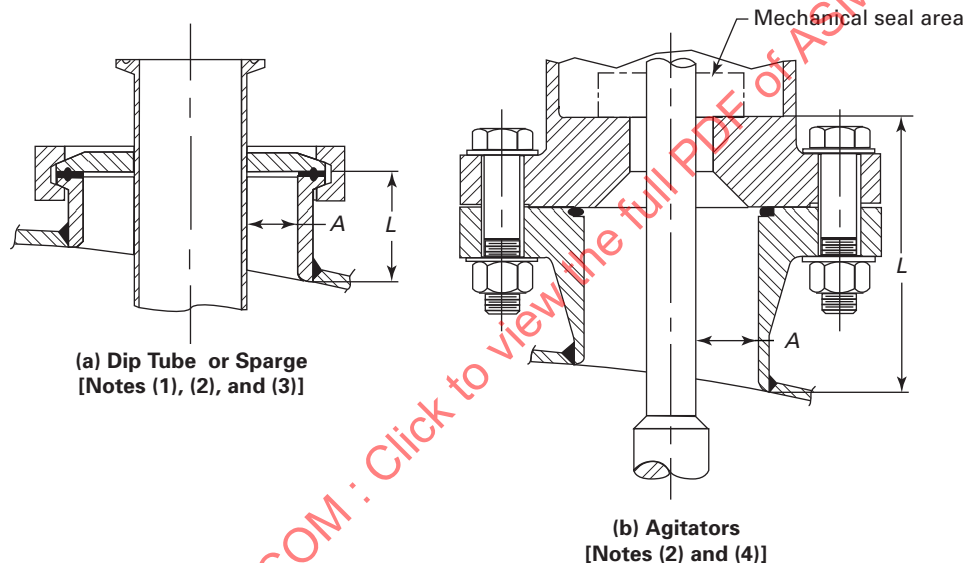
Fig. SD-3.4.2-3 Sidewall Instrument Ports

Table SD-3.4.2-1 Annular Spacing Recommendations for Hygienic Dip Tubes

Dip Tube Size Tube O.D.		Mount Nominal Size	
in.	mm	in.	mm
1/2	12.7	2	50
3/4	19.1	2	50
1	25.4	3	75
1 1/2	38.1	3	75
2	50.8	4	100
2 1/2	63.5	4	100
3	76.2	6	150
4	101.6	6	150

Fig. SD-3.4.2-4 Accepted Nozzle Penetrations



NOTES:

- (1) Nozzle and dip tube size per Table SD-4.
- (2) L/A less than 2:1.
- (3) Requirements also apply to nozzles with instrument penetrations.
- (4) "A" = 1 in. (25 mm) minimum.

(n) Nozzle connections less than 1 in. (25 mm) in diameter are not recommended unless agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

(o) Sight glasses on the vessels should be designed with reference to SD-3.4.2(a). Sight glasses on vessels should be designed with the smallest L/D possible, and incorporate cleanable O-ring designs when applicable (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-6).

(p) Manway covers should be dished rather than a flat design.

(q) Flanges that have metal-to-metal contact on the product side shall not be used. See Fig. SD-3.4.2-3 for possible designs that minimize the crevice on the internal sidewall of the vessel.

(r) All side-shell and vessel head nozzles should be flush with the interior of the vessel (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-7). Additional ports may require a minimum projection to ensure additives are directed into the vessel fluid.

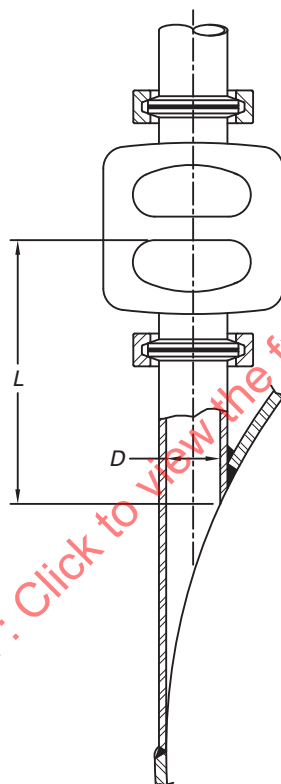
SD-3.4.3 Internal Components

(a) When expansion joints are used internally, the surface in contact with the process fluids shall have open convolutes without guides as the preferred design.

(b) Internal support members shall be solid, rather than hollow, which have a higher risk of fatigue and contamination problems (see Fig. SD-3.4.3-1).

(c) Mitered fittings for internal pipe work shall only be fitted with the prior agreement between the owner/

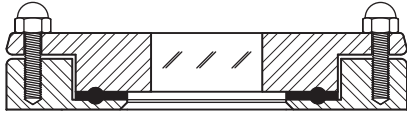
Fig. SD-3.4.2-5 Vessel Design Tangential Nozzles



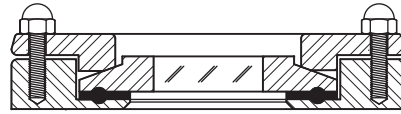
**Definition of L/D for Tangential Inlet:
Top Section View**

GENERAL NOTE: CIP through nozzle is recommended.

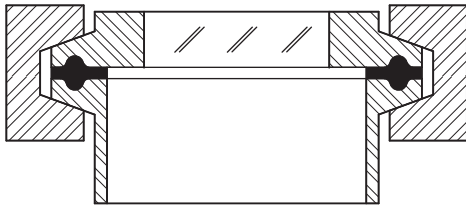
**Fig. SD-3.4.2-6 Sight Glass Design
(Accepted)**



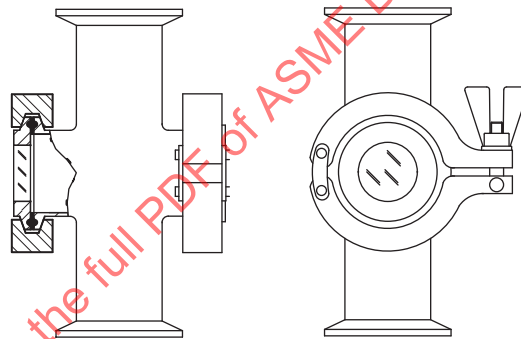
**(a) Full Flange Sight Glass
on Hygienic Pad Connection**



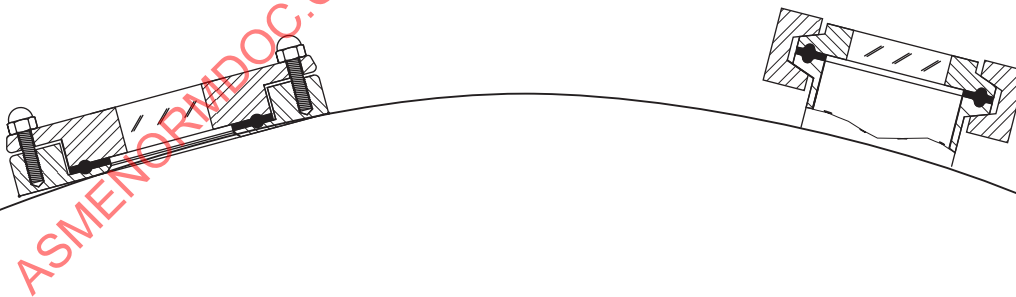
(b) Hygienic Clamp on Hygienic Pad Connection



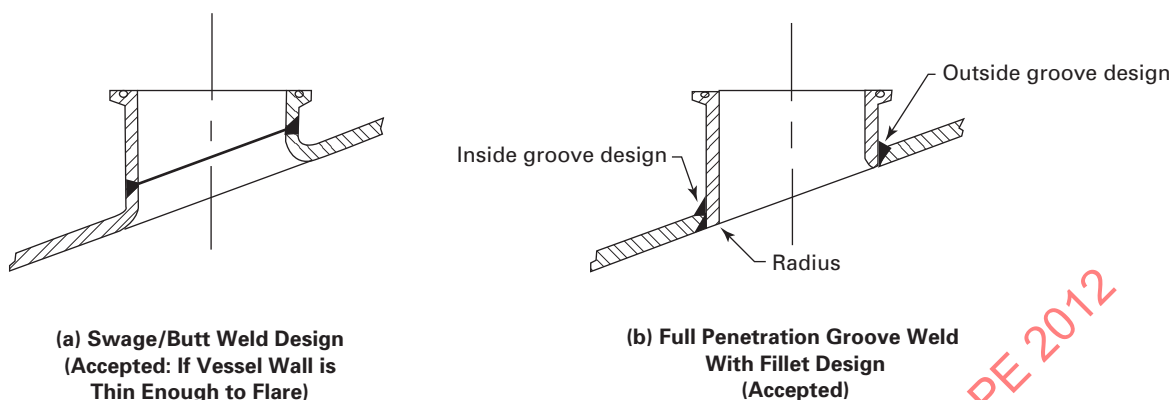
(c) Hygienic Clamp Sight Glass



(d) Hygienic Cross Sight Flow Indicator



(e) Typical Vessel Sight Glass Mounting Tangent to Tank Head

Fig. SD-3.4.2-7 Typical Nozzle Detail

user and manufacturer. When mitered joints are used, they shall be designed and fabricated in accordance with the appropriate codes.

(d) Vessels shall drain to a common point and shall not have multiple draining points, unless agreed to between the owner/user and manufacturer.

(e) The number of components inside the vessel should be minimized to ensure the proper drainability and cleanability of the vessel, and when used, if possible, should be supported by a solid support structure.

SD-3.4.4 Fabrication

(a) Butt welds should be used, if possible, minimizing lap joint welds and eliminating stitch welding.

(b) Flanges are not recommended, and their use shall be minimized. The bore of weld neck flanges shall be the same as the I.D. of the connected pipe or tubing to prevent ledges and nondrainable areas.

(c) Where it is inevitable and Class 150 slip-on flanges are used, the bore side bevel weld shall be designed in a way to eliminate potential CIP difficulties.

(d) During handling and transportation, vessels and their parts and piping assemblies shall be suitably protected to prevent damage to polished surfaces.

SD-3.4.5 Finishes

(a) Surface finishes shall be specified and measured as required by Part SF. Surface finish coupons shall be submitted when agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

(b) Product contact surface finish specifications shall pertain to all the wetted or potentially wetted surfaces (e.g., vapor space, nozzle necks, agitators, thermowells, dip tubes, baffles, etc.).

(c) The polishing of a connection face, body flange, etc., shall extend up to the first seal point.

SD-3.4.6 Sight Glasses

(a) When glass is used as the sight glass material, the preferred method is glass fused-to-metal hermetic

compression seal. The fused glass shall be circular in shape within the metal frame.

(b) Bubbles in the fused sight glass are acceptable, but the size and quantity should be kept to a minimum. Any bubbles at the glass surface are not acceptable.

(c) The seal point of the glass fused-to-metal sight glass is at the surface. The surface of the sight glass shall be integral, continuous, and free of cracks, crevices, and pits.

(d) Cracked glass shall not be used and is cause for rejection and removal.

(e) Surface finish for the metal frame shall meet the requirements of Part SF in this Standard.

(f) Sight glasses shall be marked with the glass type, maximum pressure, and temperature rating per DT-11.1 and DT-11.1.1.

(g) Part SG requirements shall be met when mounting a sight glass.

(h) Preferred sight glass mountings are shown in Fig. SD-3.4.2-6.

SD-3.4.7 Portable Tanks. [Reserved for future content]

SD-3.4.8 Media Bulk Containers. [Reserved for future content]

SD-3.4.9 Cryogenic Containers. [Reserved for future content]

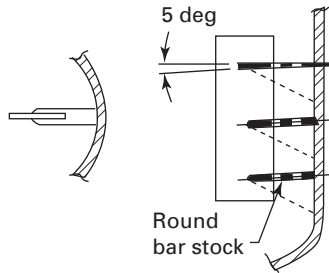
SD-3.5 Agitators and Mixers

SD-3.5.1 General

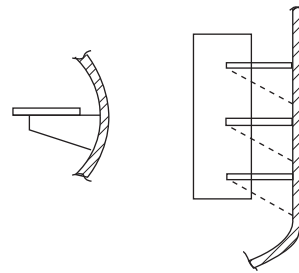
(a) All product contact surfaces of agitators and mixers with their associated components shall be accessible to the cleaning fluids as specified by the end-user for clean in-place service (CIP; e.g., via spray, directed flow, immersion, etc.).

(b) Product contact surfaces should be self-draining and shall not inhibit drainage of the vessel.

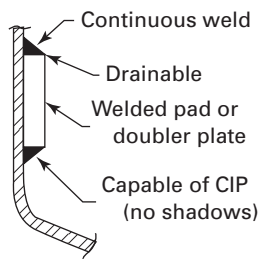
Fig. SD-3.4.3-1 Internal Support Members



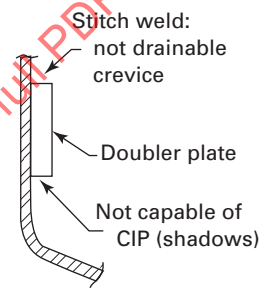
(a) Hygienic Design
(Accepted: Sloped, Minimum Shadow, and Curved Surface)



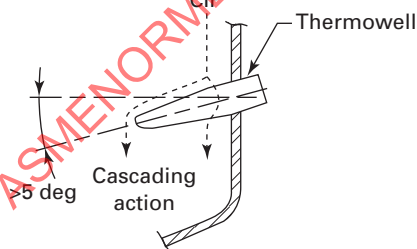
(b) Nonhygienic Design
(Not Accepted: Flat Surfaces, Ledges, and CIP Shadows)



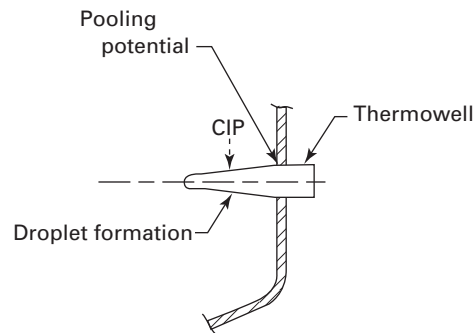
(c) Good Design
(Accepted)



(d) Poor Design
(Not Accepted)



(e) Positive Slope in All Directions
(Accepted)



(f) Positive Slope in Only One Direction
(Accepted)

(c) Machined transitions (shaft steps, coupling surfaces, wrench flats, etc.) should be smooth, with 15 deg to 45 deg sloped surfaces.

(d) The annular space between the agitator shaft and the agitator nozzle shall, for cleaning purposes, have an L/A of 2 or less, or a minimum of 1 in. (25 mm) gap, whichever is larger, to facilitate CIP spray coverage [see Fig. SD-3.4.2-4, illustration (b)].

(e) Cleaning and sterilization parameters shall be provided by the owner/user prior to design of the agitator. The manufacturers of agitators and mixers shall verify the cleanability of their equipment as specified and agreed to with the end-user.

(f) Top-entering mixers with shaft seals are typically mounted to a vessel using a flanged or hygienic clamp connection [see Fig. SD-3.5.1-1, illustrations (a), (b), and (c)]. The designer shall ensure that

(1) the use of O-rings or hygienic gaskets to seal between mating surfaces shall be consistent with the current guidance provided in Part SG (see Fig. SG-3.3.2-1).

(2) the selected mounting arrangement will support the agitator mounting design loads while achieving an appropriate seal.

(3) the flange and nozzle construction is consistent with requirements of other applicable codes and standards [e.g., ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1; ASME B31.3, etc.]

(g) Socket head cap screws shall not be used in contact with the product.

(h) The design of agitator product contact parts should minimize the occurrence of void spaces. All voids should be closed by either fabrication (welding) or approved sealing techniques (O-ring seals, etc.).

(i) The use of in-tank non-welded connections (shaft couplings, impeller hub-to-shaft, impeller blade-to-hub, etc.) should be avoided to minimize potential cleanability issues.

SD-3.5.2 In-Tank Shaft Couplings

(a) Welded in-tank shaft connections are preferred.

(b) The use of in-tank shaft couplings shall be agreed to by the owner/user.

(c) In-tank couplings shall be of an accepted hygienic design. See examples in Fig. SD-3.5.2-1.

(d) In-tank coupling location should be driven by process and mechanical considerations.

(e) Threaded shaft connections are accepted for in-tank couplings [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-1, illustration (a)].

(1) Shaft rotation is limited to a single direction for threaded shaft connections to ensure that shaft sections do not separate.

(2) The designer will ensure that the use of a threaded shaft connection is appropriate for the selected shaft diameter and design loads.

(3) Hygienic bolted coupling construction may be used where appropriate for the particular application [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-1, illustration (b)].

(f) Threads shall not be exposed in any type of shaft or coupling hardware connection.

(g) The preferred location for fastener hardware is on the underside of couplings. Accepted fastener types include

(1) hex-head cap screws

(2) acorn-head cap screws

(3) threaded studs with acorn nuts

(h) Fastener heads shall be free of raised or engraved markings that might inhibit cleanability.

(i) O-rings rather than flat gaskets are preferred to seal coupling mating surfaces. Figure SD-3.5.2-2 presents the following acceptable approaches for seal applications:

(1) O-ring located in a single groove inboard of the coupling outside diameter [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-2, illustration (a)]; O-ring compression, internal space to accommodate compression, and outboard clearance space all designed to minimize the intrusion of process fluid between the coupling faces and to facilitate flow of CIP fluid.

(2) Alternate construction for O-ring located in a groove just inboard of the coupling outside diameter [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-2, illustration (b)]; O-ring restrained by lip at coupling circumference with clearance space provided as above to insure cleanability of the coupling area.

(3) Alternate construction for O-ring located in grooves in both coupling halves inboard of the coupling outside diameter [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-2, illustration (c)]; outboard clearance space provided as above to ensure cleanability of the coupling area.

(4) O-ring with attached inboard flat segment located between coupling faces [see Fig. SD-3.5.2-2, illustration (d)]; outboard clearance space provided as above to ensure cleanability of the coupling area.

(j) Bolted flanges shall be sealed. Examples of accepted fastener seals are shown in Fig. SD-3.5.2-3 as follows:

(1) O-ring seal [illustration (a)]

(2) O-ring seal alternate [illustration (b)]

(3) seal washer with metal core [illustration (c)]

SD-3.5.3 Shafts and Keyways

(a) One-piece shaft construction, without mechanical couplings, is preferred.

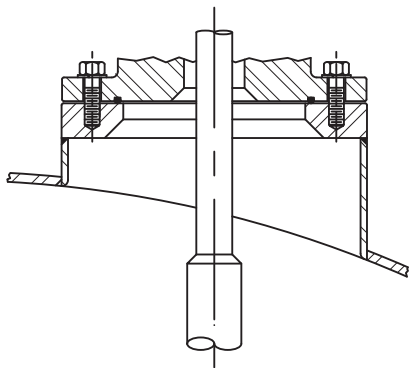
(b) Solid shafts are preferred over hollow shafts.

(c) Hollow shafts, if used, shall be of sealed (welded) construction, inspected for integrity, and accepted per criteria given in Part MJ prior to installation.

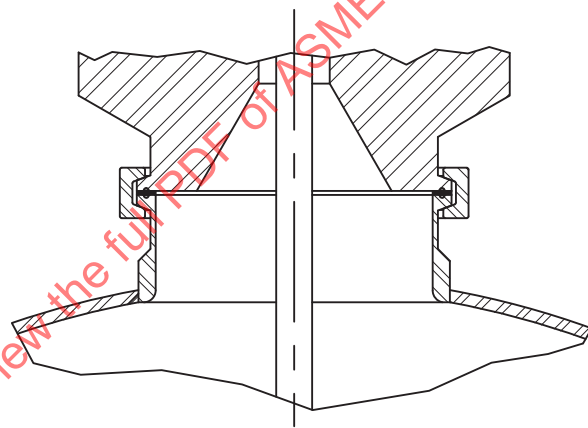
(d) Keyways exposed to product are not recommended.



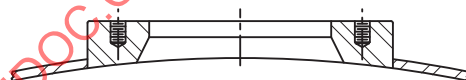
Fig. SD-3.5.1-1 Agitator Mounting Flanges



(a) Bolted Flange With O-Ring



(b) Hygienic Union with Gasket



(c) Pad Flange

Fig. SD-3.5.2-1 Shaft Coupling Construction

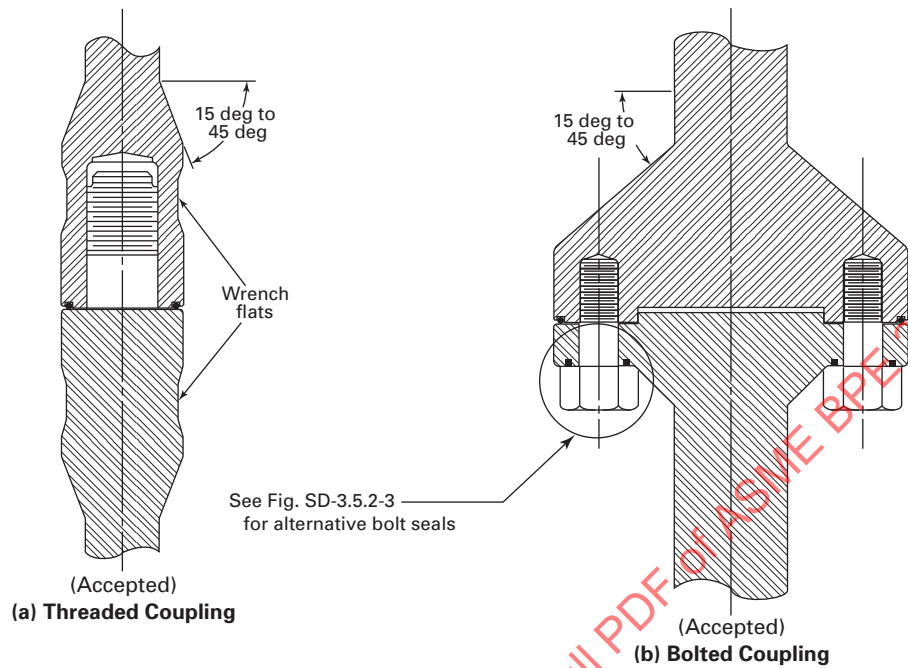


Fig. SD-3.5.2-2 Shaft Coupling Seal Arrangements

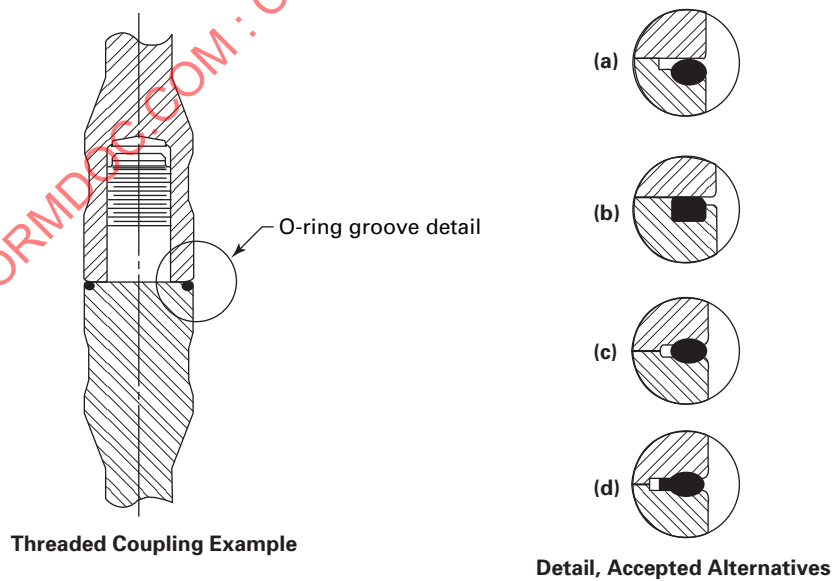
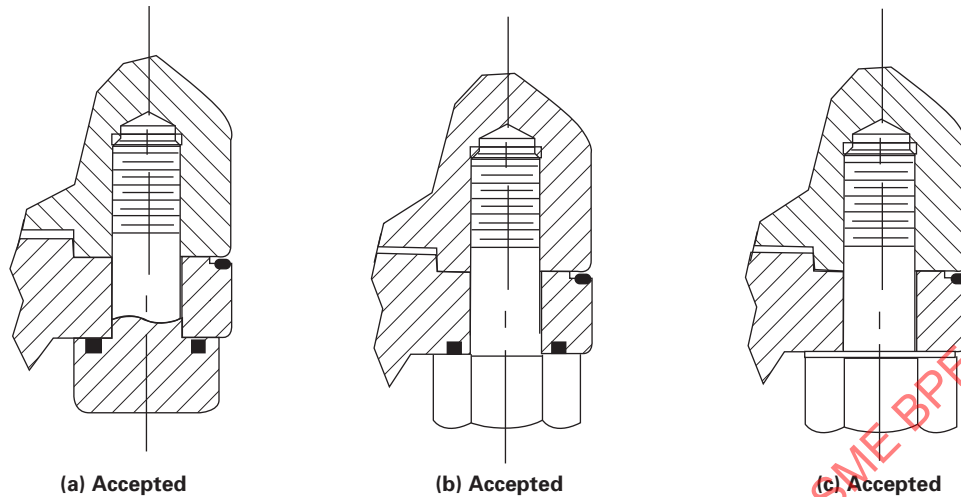


Fig. SD-3.5.2-3 Fastener Seal Arrangements**Alternate Bolting Designs**

(e) Keyways, where employed due to mechanical design considerations, shall have edge radii as specified by SD-2.4.2(g).

(f) Keyways may require additional design and/or cleaning practice to ensure drainage and cleanability [e.g., spray ball and/or wand additions, increased CIP flow, and adjusted spray coverage].

(g) Permanent shaft hardware that may be required for routine maintenance (e.g., support collars for mechanical seal installation and removal, lifting eyes for shaft and/or impeller installation and removal, etc.) shall be fully drainable and cleanable as noted for other features in contact with the product.

SD-3.5.4 Hubs and Impellers

(a) All-welded impeller assemblies (e.g., hubs, blades) are preferred.

(b) Impeller hubs welded to the shaft are preferred over removable hubs.

(c) Removable, hygienic impellers may be used where impeller adjustment or substitution is required for process reasons or where impeller removal is required due to mechanical design and/or installation considerations.

(1) Removable impellers may be one-piece or split hygienic construction.

(2) Hub-to-shaft clearance for removable impellers shall be sufficient to preclude shaft surface finish damage during installation and removal.

(3) Removable hardware (e.g., impeller hub and shaft, impeller set-screws and hub, etc.) should be sealed in a manner consistent with the guidance provided for in-tank couplings (see SD-3.5.2).

(d) Removable impellers and impellers with flat, horizontal surfaces (e.g., flat-blade disc turbines, concave-blade disc turbines, etc.) may require additional design

and/or cleaning practice to ensure drainage and cleanability, e.g., drain holes, spray ball and/or wand additions, increased CIP flow, adjusted spray coverage, impeller rotation.

SD-3.5.5 Impeller and Shaft Support Bearings

(a) Normal operation of a shaft-steady bearing or a magnetically driven mixer with in-tank impeller or shaft support bearings (see Figs. SD-3.5.5-1 and SD-3.5.5-2) generate particulate debris. It is the responsibility of the end-user to establish compliance with applicable standards (e.g., USP limits for particulate material in injectables) as appropriate.

(b) Tank plates that support bottom-mounted magnetically driven mixers shall not interfere with drainage of the vessel.

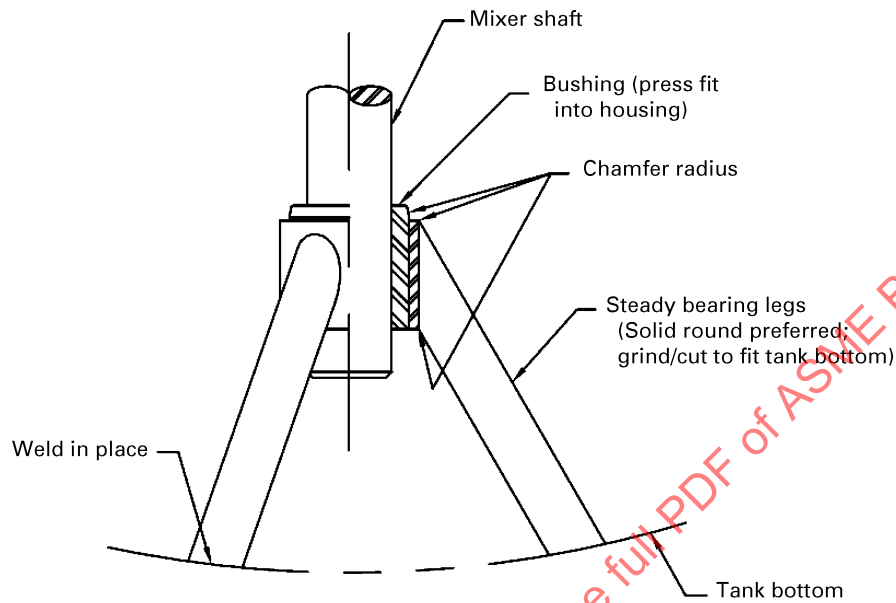
(c) When an application mandates the use of shaft steady/foot bearings, design features and/or procedures are required to ensure cleanability (e.g., drain holes, spray ball and/or wand additions, increased CIP flow, operating the steady bearing immersed in CIP fluid).

(d) Shaft-steady bearings, where used, shall not interfere with the drainage of the vessel.

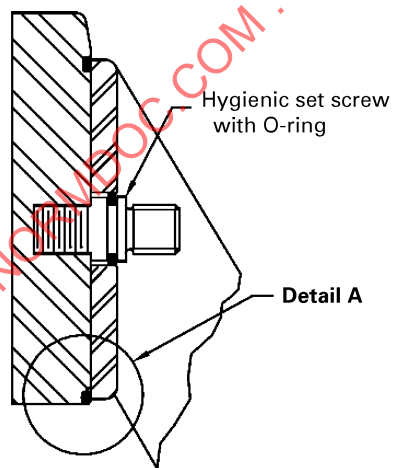
(e) Shaft-steady bearing pedestal support members may be of solid or hollow construction. Hollow pedestal supports, if used, shall be of sealed (welded) construction, inspected for integrity, and accepted per criteria given in Part MJ after installation.

(f) Magnetically driven mixers require design features and/or procedures to ensure cleanability (e.g., drain holes, spray ball and/or wand additions, increased CIP flow, operating the agitator with the magnetically driven impeller immersed in CIP fluid).

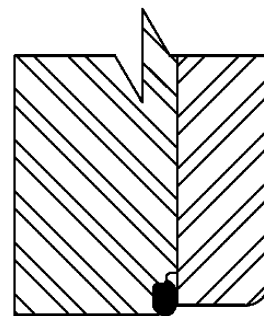
Fig. SD-3.5.5-1 Shaft Steady Bearing



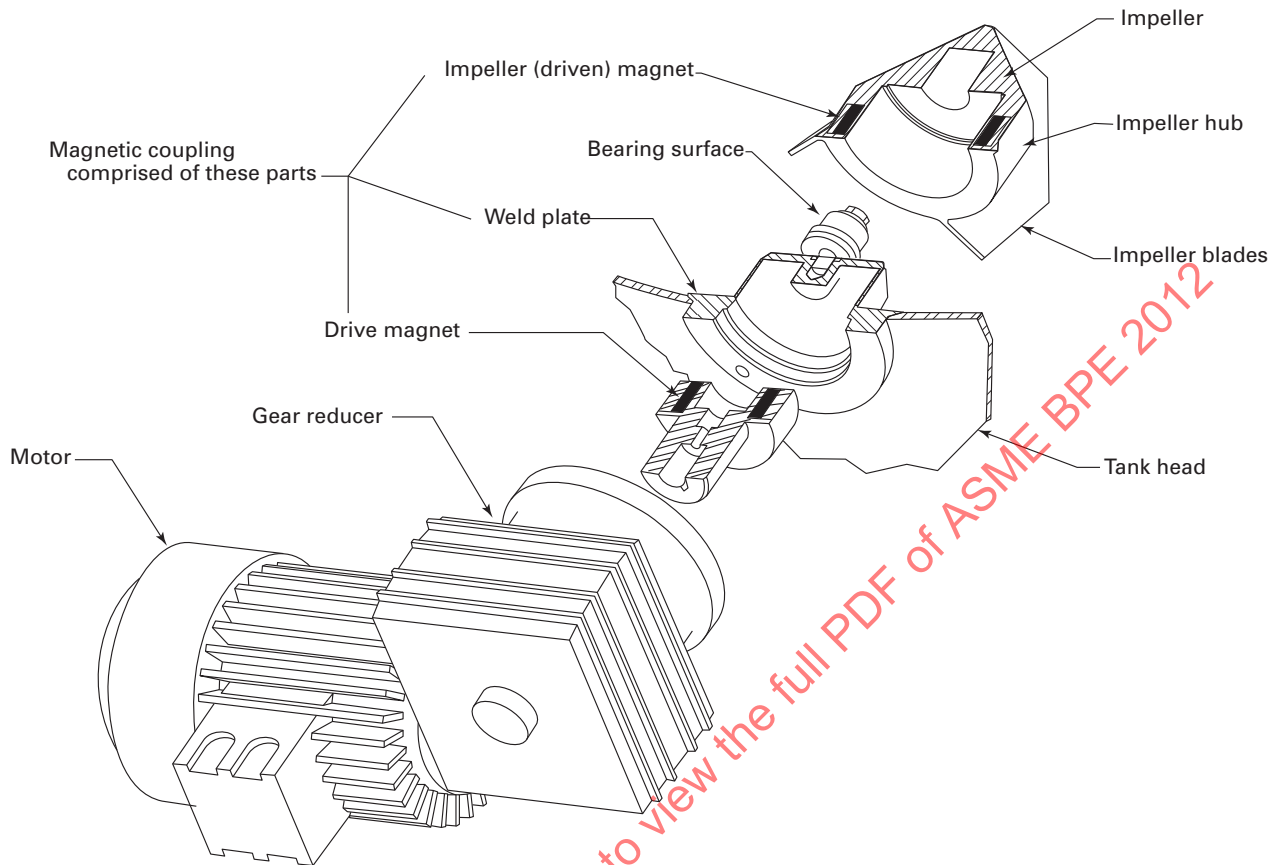
**(a) Hygienic Tripod Steady Bearing
(Alternative Design — Flat Bar Legs With Rounded Edges)**



(b) Alternative Bushing Securing Method



**Detail A
O-Ring With Groove Exposed for Flushing**

Fig. SD-3.5.5-2 Magnetically Coupled Mixer (Typical Bottom-Mount)

(g) The arrangement of wear surfaces (bushing, shaft, or shaft sleeve) shall facilitate drainage.

SD-3.5.6 Mechanical Seals

(a) Mechanical shaft seals shall incorporate design features for drainability, surface finish, material of construction, etc., as outlined in Part SD, and shall be suitable for the application (e.g., Process, CIP, SIP, Passivation).

(b) Normal operation of a mechanical seal generates particulate debris. It is the responsibility of the end-user to establish compliance with applicable standards (e.g., USP limits for particulate material in injectables) as appropriate.

(c) Seal debris wells or traps (see Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-2) may be used to prevent ingress of seal face wear particles that could contaminate the process fluid.

(d) Refer to Part SG of this Standard for specific seal design details.

SD-3.6 Heat Exchange Equipment

Plate and frame type heat exchangers should be used only by agreement between owner/user and designer due to the difficulty of CIP and SIP.

SD-3.6.1 General

(a) Straight tube heat exchangers are easier to clean and inspect. The tubes can be seamless or full-finish welded, as specified by the owner/user or manufacturer.

(b) The heat exchanger product and non-product contact surface inspection shall be possible by conventional means.

(c) The technique used to form U-bend tubes shall ensure the bending process does not create structural imperfections (e.g., cracks, voids, delaminations). The technique should minimize surface imperfections (e.g., orange peel, rippling). If requested by the end-user, the manufacturer shall supply a sectioned sample of the bend area.

(1) The sectioned sample should be from the same tube batch or heat that was used to fabricate the heat exchanger.

(2) The sectioned sample shall be the smallest bend radius in the exchanger.

(3) The sample shall be sectioned so that bend's centerline is visible.

(d) The internal surface of the U-bends shall be free of relevant liquid penetrant indications, as defined by ASME BPVC, Section VIII.

(e) The I.D. of the U-bends shall be large enough for a borescopic inspection.

(f) Minimum recommended bend radii for heat exchangers should be as follows:

Nominal Tube O.D.		Minimum Bend Radius	
in.	mm	in.	mm
0.375	9.5	0.625	15.2
0.500	12.7	0.750	19.1
0.625	15.8	0.938	23.8
0.750	19.1	1.125	28.6
1.000	25.4	1.500	38.1

(g) Welded shell and tube heat exchangers shall be of a double tubesheet design to prevent product contamination in the case of a tube joint failure (see Fig. SD-3.6.1-1).

(1) During fabrication, when the tubes are to be expanded into the inner and outer tubesheets, the product contact surface must not be scored.

(2) Tubes shall be seal welded to the outer tubesheet.

(3) The distance between inner and outer tubesheets shall be sufficient to allow leak detection and examination.

(4) Tubesheets and channels shall be drainable.

(h) The owner/user shall specify the orientation of the exchanger (i.e., horizontal or vertical), and the manufacturer shall ensure the complete product drainability, other than the natural cohesive properties of the product, at the specified orientation. If this hold-up is unacceptable, then the system needs to be designed with some type of assist to aid draining, such as an air blow down.

(1) In the specified orientation, the shell side shall also be drainable (e.g., WFI condensers).

(2) Transverse baffles with notches should be provided, when necessary, to drain the shell.

(3) The heat exchanger bonnet shall be match marked for proper orientation to ensure drainability or cleanability.

(i) Heat exchanger thermal and mechanical calculations shall be performed for both operating and SIP cycles.

(j) In shell and tube heat exchangers, the design pressure for the product side shall be no less than the design pressure of the utility side.

(k) The type of connections to the utility side (shell side) shall be agreed to between the owner/user and manufacturer.

SD-3.6.2 Cleaning and Steaming

(a) The product contact surfaces shall be constructed to withstand CIP and SIP or other cleaning/bioburden control methods specified by the owner/user.

(b) The cleaning and steaming conditions shall be provided by the owner/user prior to the design of the heat exchanger.

SD-3.6.3 Gaskets and Seals

(a) Gaskets that are in contact with product shall be removable and self-positioning, and shall have readily cleanable grooves.

(b) Channel/bonnet gaskets shall be of a cleanable design.

SD-3.7 Transfer Panels

SD-3.7.1 General

(a) The transfer panel shall be constructed so that the product contact surfaces can be cleaned by a CIP fluid or other method specified by the owner/user. The product contact surfaces shall be free of crevices, pockets, and other surface irregularities.

(b) The transfer panel nozzle elevation shall be properly designed with respect to the connecting equipment such as tank, pump, etc., to ensure drainability, cleanability, and bioburden control during process transfer, CIP, and SIP.

(c) Design and fabrication of the transfer panel and associated components must ensure that the piping system can be fully drained when properly installed. This is not to imply that panel nozzles and/or subheaders should be sloped (see Fig. SD-3.7.1-1).

(d) Tagging/labeling of the transfer panel and its components shall be per SD-2.4.4.2(i). Tagging nozzles on the backside of panels will help reduce the number of incorrect piping connections during field installation.

SD-3.7.2 Nozzles or Ports

(a) Nozzle construction shall accommodate a design feature that will assist in the elimination of internal surface anomalies caused in part by joining the nozzle to the panel structure.

(b) The method of joining a nozzle into a panel structure shall be of hygienic design. Acceptance criteria for these welds shall meet the requirements of Table MJ-8.5-1.

(c) Each front nozzle connection shall be of a hygienic design and the horizontal projection minimized to optimize drainability.

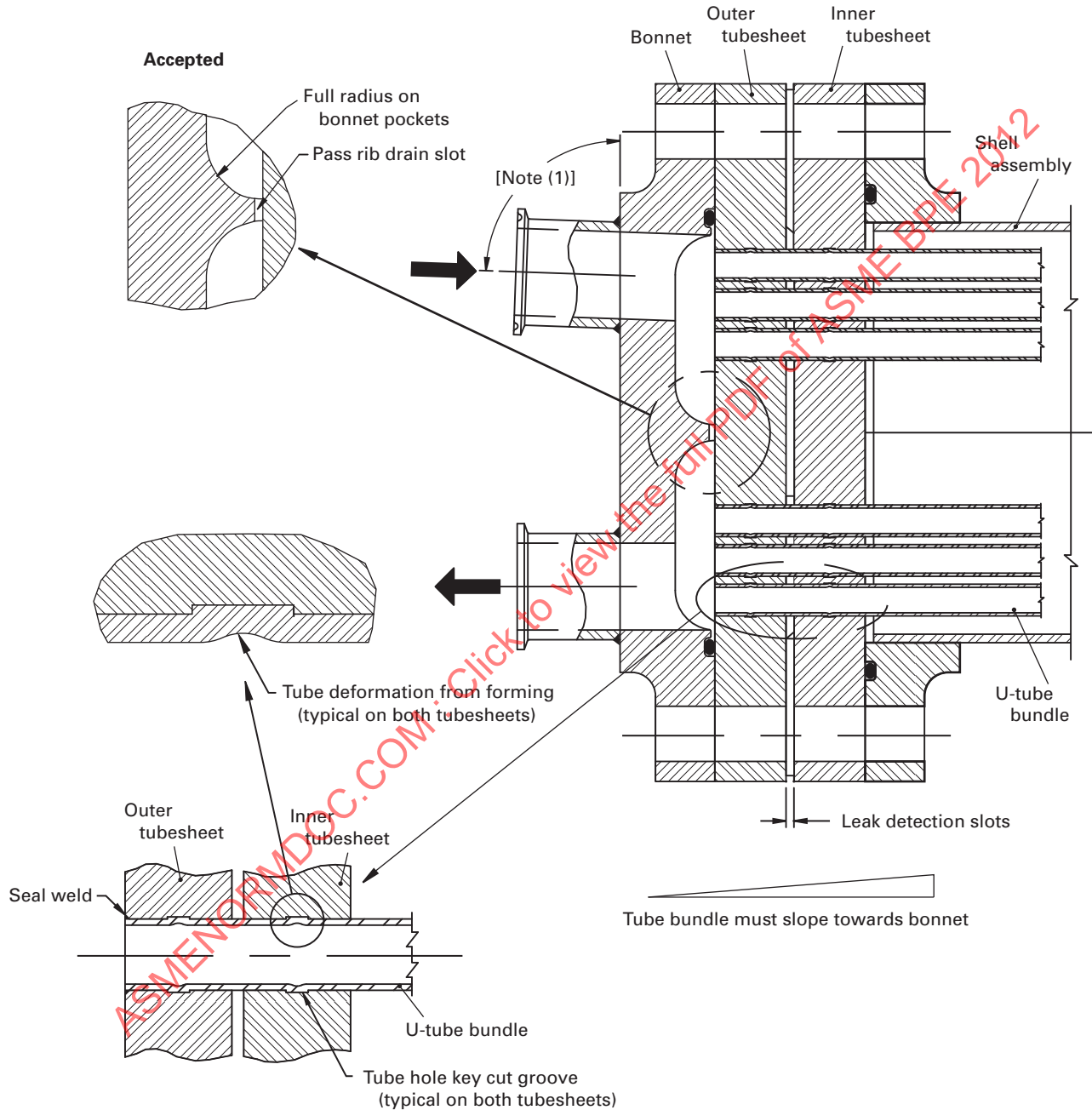
(d) To ensure proper panel functionality and joint connection integrity, panel nozzles shall not be sloped (see Fig. SD-3.7.2-1).

(e) Nozzle-to-nozzle clearance shall be such that jumper drain valve interference, if applicable, will not occur when jumpers are connected in all possible operating and cleaning configurations.

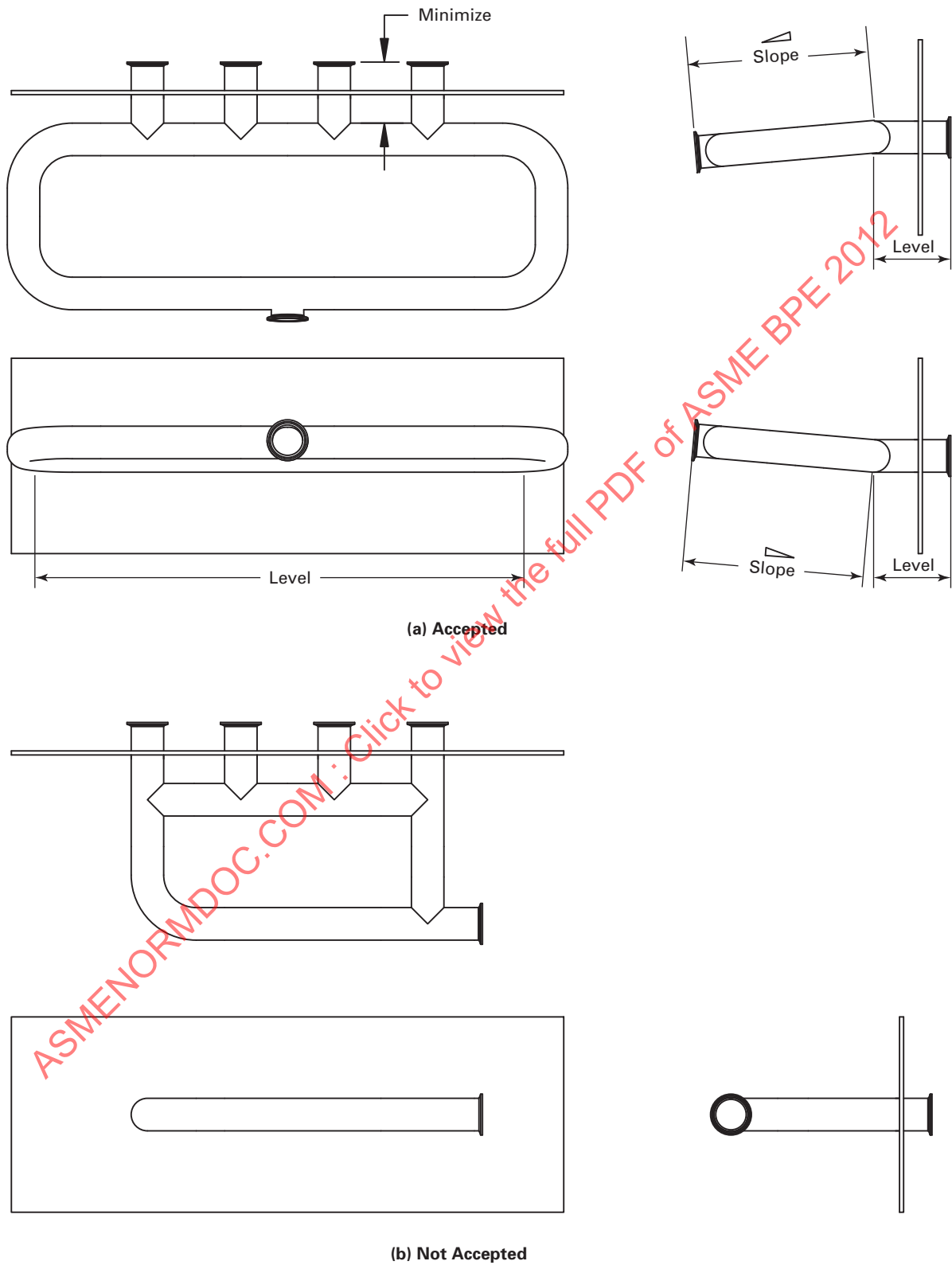
(f) Nozzles shall be capable of being capped. Caps may include bleed valves or pressure indicators for safety or operating purposes.

(g) Nozzle center-to-center and flatness tolerances are extremely critical to proper panel functionality and shall be agreed upon by the manufacturer and end-user. Recommended tolerances are per Table DT-7-2 and Fig. SD-3.7.2-1.

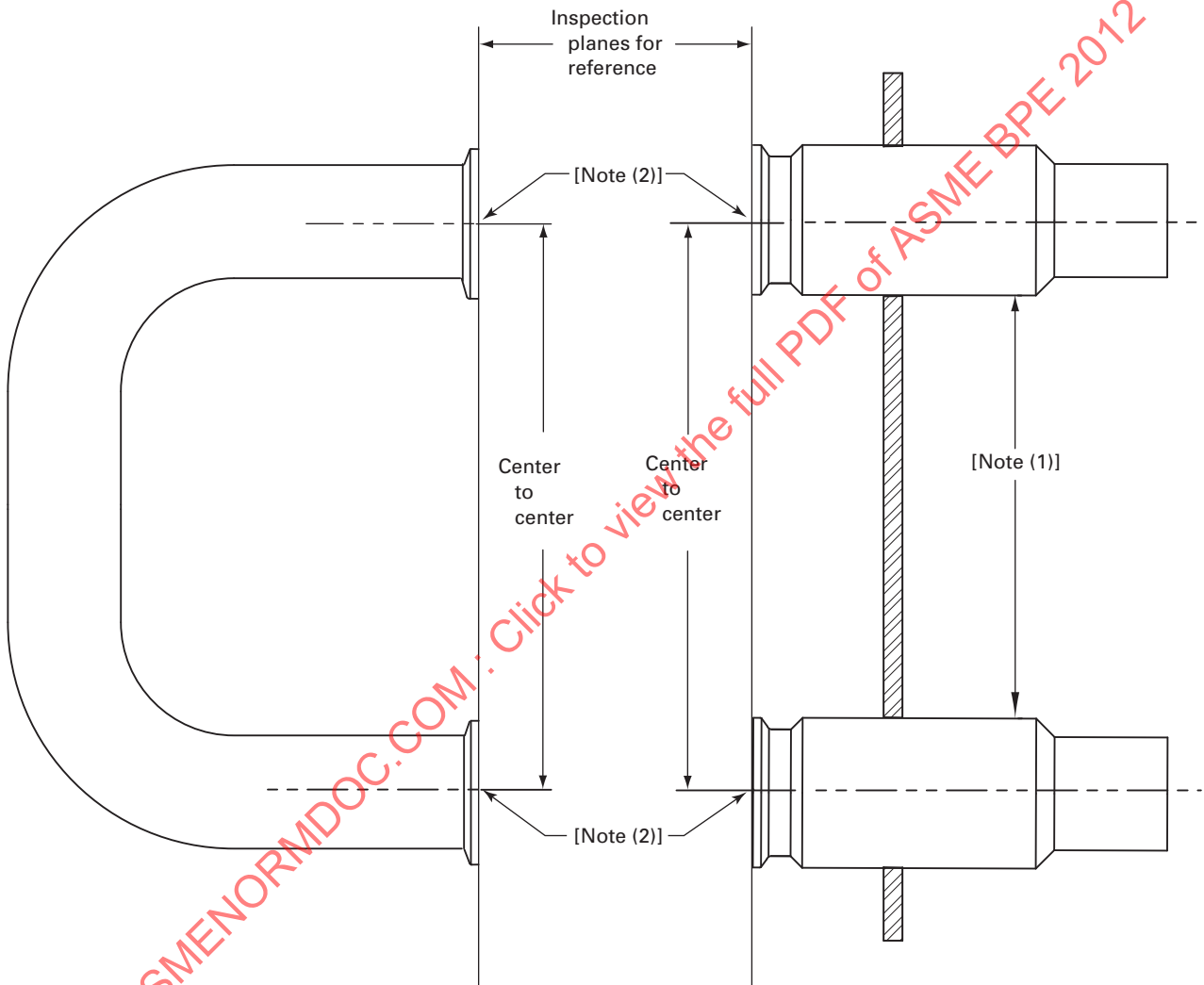


Fig. SD-3.6.1-1 Double Tubesheet Heat Exchanger Bonnet Design**NOTE:**

(1) Owner to specify inlet tubing slope. Heat exchanger manufacturer to slope inlet on bonnet to match inlet tubing slope.

Fig. SD-3.7.1-1 Transfer Panel Looped Headers

**Fig. SD-3.7.2-1 Transfer Panel Tolerances
(Reference Table DT-7-2)**



NOTES:

- (1) Tolerances applied to related nozzles (defined by jumper paths).
- (2) Flatness tolerance defines the maximum gap allowed across the entire sealing surface relative to the inspection planes shown above.

SD-3.7.3 Headers or Pre-piped Manifolds

(a) When a looped header design is employed, the branch length at capped or unused nozzles should be minimized. The dimension of the subheader leg to the nozzle face should not exceed an L/D of 2 (see Fig. SD-3.7.1-1). A dead-ended and/or unlooped subheader is not recommended.

(b) To optimize the drainability at all nozzles, regardless of use, subheaders and pre-piped manifolds shall not be sloped. All-encompassing lines including long runs with the exception of subheaders, manifolds, and nozzles may be sloped as defined in SD-2.4.3.

SD-3.7.4 Jumpers or U-Bends

(a) Jumpers shall be constructed with hygienic connections on both ends designed to mate with the panel nozzles.

(b) Jumpers may have a low point drain to provide both complete drainage and vacuum break after the liquid transfer has been completed (see Fig. SD-3.7.4-1). The branch L/D of a low-point drain connection should be minimized. Zero static diaphragm valves are recommended for low-point drains if available from the manufacturer [see Fig. SD-3.7.4-1, illustrations (a) and (d)]. Low-point drain designs that incorporate a spool piece allow for full rotation of the drain valve [see Fig. SD-3.7.4-1, illustrations (a), (b), and (c)]. This design ensures that the drain valve is always at the true low point of the assembled jumper connection in any specified orientation.

(c) Jumper center-to-center and flatness tolerances are extremely critical to proper panel functionality. Recommended tolerances are per Table DT-7-2 and Fig. SD-3.7.2-1.

(d) The use of reducing jumpers is not recommended due to drainability concerns based on jumper orientation. Any reduction in line size should be made behind the primary nozzle connection (behind panel structure), thus allowing all connections to be the same size on the front of the panel.

(e) The overall panel design shall be such that the quantity of unique jumper centerline dimensions is minimized.

(f) The same jumper should be used for process transfer, CIP, and SIP.

(g) If a pressure indicator is installed on a jumper, it must be a hygienic design and mounted in a manner that maintains drainability in all jumper positions. The L/D should be 2 or less.

SD-3.7.5 Drain or Drip Pans

(a) Drain pans, if utilized, shall be built as an integral part of the transfer panel. The intended function is to collect spilled fluids that can occur during jumper or cap removal.

(b) Drain pans shall slope [preferred minimum of $\frac{1}{4}$ in./ft (21 mm/m)] to a low point and be piped to the

process drain. The depth of the drain pan is determined by calculating the largest spill volume and accommodating it with a sufficient pan holding volume. Consideration should be given to increasing the drain port connection size in lieu of increasing pan depth. The preferred drain port location is central bottom draining or central back draining.

(c) The elevation of the pan should take into account the clearance required for the jumper drain valve position when a connection is made to the bottom row of nozzles. The pan should extend horizontally to accommodate the furthest connection and/or drain point from the face of the panel.

SD-3.7.6 Proximity Switches

(a) Proximity switches are used to detect the presence or absence of a jumper with a stem positioned between selected nozzles.

(b) The use of magnetic proximity switches, which are mounted behind the panel structure avoiding the need to penetrate the panel face, are preferred. This elimination of structural penetration will remove any unnecessary cracks, crevices, or threads at the point of attachment, thus removing the risk of product entrapment and/or contamination concerns.

(c) Jumpers will contain a magnetic stem to activate the corresponding proximity switch. The use of a ferrous magnetic material is required; however, it must be fully encapsulated to ensure that the ferrous material does not contaminate the classified manufacturing area. The acceptance criteria for welds joining the sensor stem to the jumper shall meet the requirements of Table MJ-8.5-1.

(d) The magnet should be of sufficient gauss rating to properly activate the corresponding proximity switch. In addition, the temperature rating of the magnet should withstand the specified temperature ranges for process and SIP without compromising the magnet performance.

(e) The proximity switch mounting shall be of hygienic design and structurally sound to maintain the specified design location.

SD-3.8 Filters

[Reserved for future content]

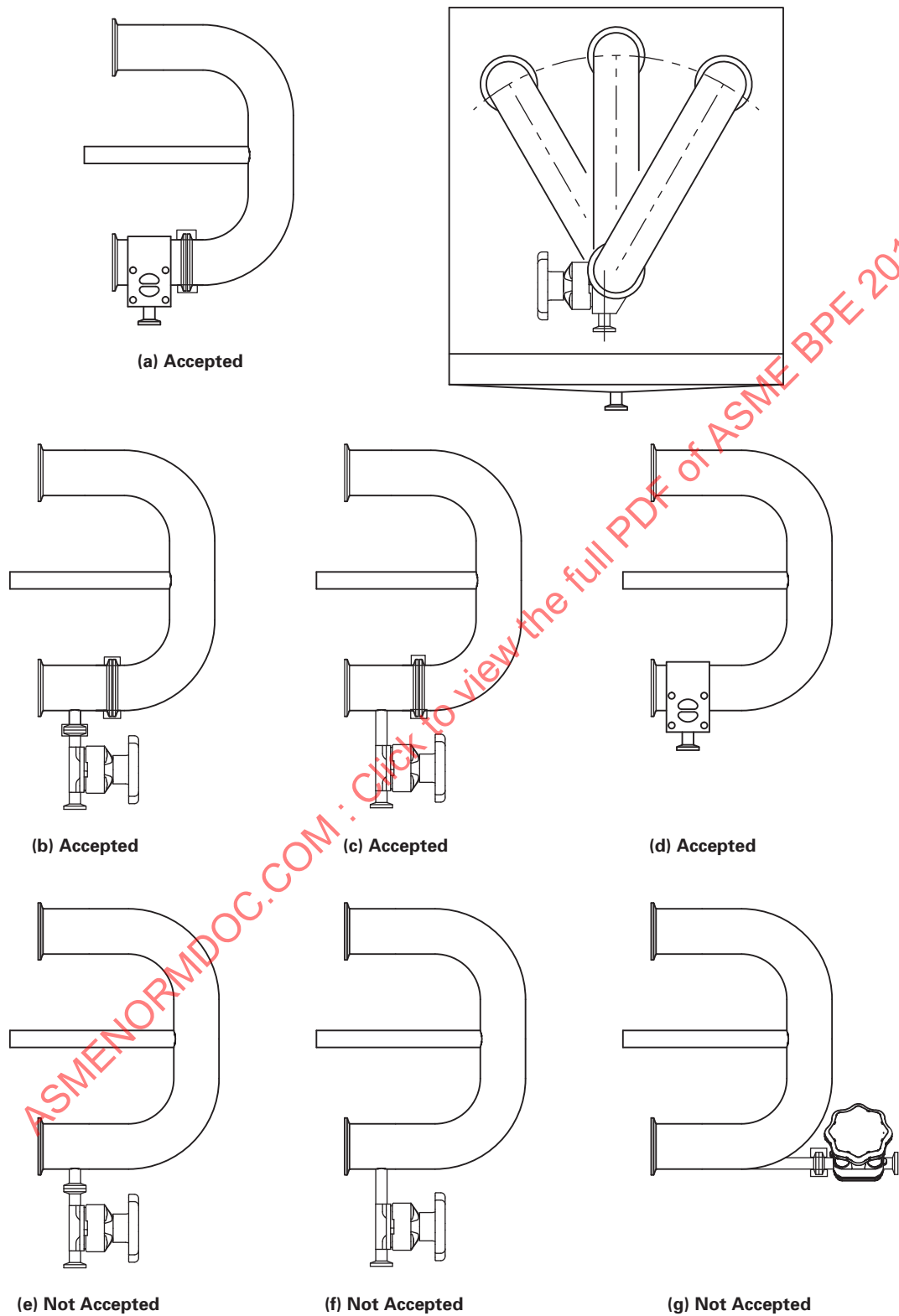
SD-3.9 Spray Devices

SD-3.9.1 General. SD-3.9 covers spray devices intended for use in bioprocessing equipment, intended to remain in place or be removed during production. Recommendations in this section are valid for water based cleaning solutions. The flow rate recommendations in this section are for metallic vessels.

(a) Spray devices distribute rinse and cleaning solutions to interior surfaces of bioprocessing equipment by direct spray and utilize sheeting action for remaining



Fig. SD-3.7.4-1 Transfer Panel Jumpers



targeted areas. Spray devices are also used in other applications (e.g., water systems to maintain coverage of the storage tank head space and in COP cabinet washers).

(b) The differential pressure across the spray device generates liquid velocity exiting through the spray device orifices, nozzles, or slots. Differential pressure and its resulting flow are key parameters of spray devices. Flow is the recommended control parameter because it is independent of temperature and location of the measurement device.

(c) The spray pattern, as it exits the device, is determined by the spray device design. Spray patterns are typically streams/jets or fans.

(d) The impact pattern is determined by the interaction over time of the spray pattern and the geometry of the equipment.

(e) During design, consideration should be given to the following in the selection of spray device(s):

- (1) residue characteristics
 - (2) equipment geometry and appurtenances
 - (3) physical location and orientation of spray device(s)
 - (4) process requirements including air-purge and steaming, if applicable
 - (5) cleaning system capacity
 - (6) installation of screen/strainer to protect the functionality of the spray device
 - (7) cleaning cycle time
 - (8) cleaning chemistry compatibility with materials of construction
 - (9) potential orifice erosion (e.g., from CIP and SIP)
- (f) Spray devices are either static or dynamic.

(1) Static spray devices continuously produce a defined impact pattern by stationary direct spray. Static spray devices have no moving parts. Examples of static spray devices include static spray balls, stationary nozzles, and spray wands.

(2) Dynamic spray devices are either single axis or multi-axis. Both produce a defined impact pattern by moving multidirectional spray(s). Dynamic spray device rotation is rinse water/cleaning solution driven or motor driven. Dynamic spray devices have moving parts, which may include bearings, gears, and turbines

(a) Single axis dynamic spray devices (see Fig. SD-3.9.1-1). When the orifices/nozzles/slots are manufactured at an angle, the resulting force spins the spray head. Rotation can also be turbine or motor driven.

(b) Multi-axis dynamic spray devices rotate in more than a single plane (see Fig. SD-3.9.1-2). When rinse water/cleaning solution driven, the flow through the spray device turns a turbine wheel, which typically turns the body around one axis as well as the nozzle(s) around a second axis creating a repeatable indexed pattern. When motor driven, the body and nozzles are turned mechanically by the motor.

Fig. SD-3.9.1-1 Dynamic Spray Device: Single Axis (Spray Pattern for Illustration Purposes)

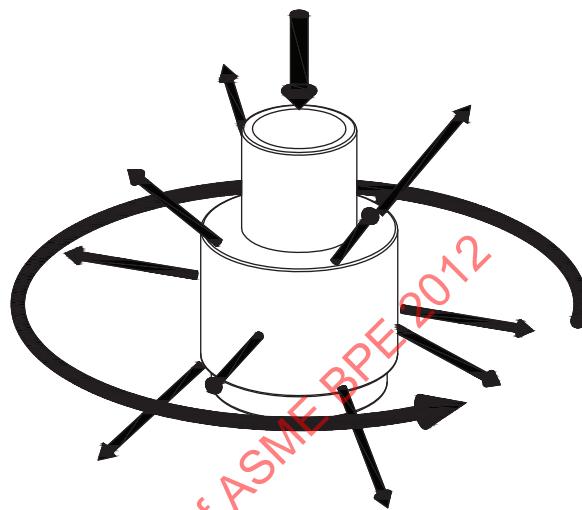
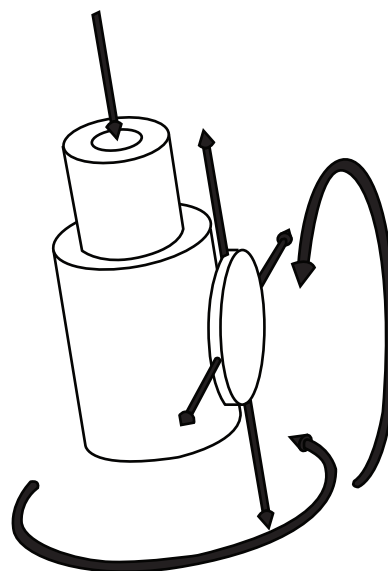


Fig. SD-3.9.1-2 Two Axes Dynamic Spray Device (Number of Jets Are for Illustration Purposes)



(g) Spray devices can be designed as removable, retractable, or to remain in place.

(h) Spray device(s) are specific to the application and equipment. Spray devices are generally not interchangeable without considering the specific flow, pressure, equipment design, spray pattern, and drainability of the spray device(s).

SD-3.9.2 Spray Device Requirements

(a) Materials of construction shall comply with SD-2.4.1.2 or as otherwise agreed upon with owner/user.

(b) When installed, spray devices shall be drainable and cleanable inside and outside or otherwise as agreed upon with owner/user.

(c) Spray device(s) shall be installed per manufacturer's instructions.

(d) When operated within specification, the spray device(s) shall produce repeatable effective coverage over a defined area of the equipment.

(e) Effective coverage shall not be affected by flow rate variations of 10% or otherwise agreed upon by owner/user.

(f) Spray devices shall be accessible for functionality verification, inspection, and maintenance.

(g) Removable spray device(s) shall be capable of being re-installed in a repeatable manner by unique identifiers to ensure proper installation location.

(h) Spray device selection, orientation, and location shall be designed to ensure the equipment and the targeted surfaces of its appurtenances (e.g., manways, dip-tubes, baffles, nozzles, agitator shaft, and impellers) are exposed to rinse water/cleaning solution.

(i) Spray device(s) shall be provided with a level of documentation that is consistent with the equipment for which it is to be installed and in accordance with GR-5 documentation requirements.

(j) Product contact surface finishes of spray devices should be consistent with the equipment for which it is installed or otherwise specified by the owner/user and in accordance with the definitions of Part SF.

(k) Spray devices shall not utilize lubricants that may or that will come in contact with the product. Dynamic devices are typically lubricated by the rinse/cleaning solution(s).

SD-3.9.2.1 Static Spray Device Requirements

(a) Static spray devices shall have a positioning device (preferred) or mark to allow for proper orientation during re-installation, as static devices are orientation sensitive (see Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-1)

(b) Weld-on or self-cleaning slip-joint/clip-on connections are acceptable. Provision shall be made to ensure proper orientation and location if a slip-joint/clip-on style static spray device(s) is used.

(c) A portion of the flow is directed toward the specific appurtenances.

(d) The flow rate guideline for vertical cylindrical vessels with dished heads is 2.5 gpm/ft to 3 gpm/ft (31 lpm/m to 37 lpm/m) of inner vessel circumference. Reference Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-2. The majority of the flow is directed toward the upper head to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(e) The flow rate guideline for horizontal cylindrical vessels with dished heads is 2 gpm/ft to 3 gpm/ft (25 lpm/m to 37 lpm/m) of perimeter ($2L + 2D$). Reference Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-3. The majority of the flow is directed toward the upper one-third of the vessel to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(f) Flow requirements for the specific application should be confirmed with the spray device and/or equipment manufacturer or other subject matter experts.

SD-3.9.2.2 Single Axis Dynamic Spray Device Requirements

(a) Rotation and/or frequency verification shall be agreed upon with the owner/user.

(b) Weld-on or self-cleaning slip-joint/clip-on connections are acceptable. Other hygienic alternatives shall be agreed upon with the owner/user.

(c) The flow rate guideline for vertical cylindrical vessels with dished heads is 1.9 gpm/ft to 2.3 gpm/ft (23.6 lpm/m to 28.6 lpm/m) of inner vessel circumference. The majority of the flow is directed toward the upper head to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(d) The flow rate guideline for horizontal cylindrical vessels with dished-heads is 1.4 gpm/ft to 2.1 gpm/ft (17.4 lpm/m to 26.1 lpm/m) of perimeter ($2L + 2D$). The majority of the flow is directed toward the upper one-third of the vessel to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(e) Flow requirements for the specific application should be confirmed with the spray device and/or equipment manufacturer or other subject matter experts.

(f) High-velocity gas flow from air-blows or steam passing through liquid-driven spray devices can result in wear to bearing surfaces. Consideration should be taken to restrict gas flow through the spray device according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

SD-3.9.2.3 Multi-Axis Dynamic Spray Device Requirements

(a) Rotation and/or frequency verification shall be agreed upon with the owner/end-user.

(b) The time to complete a full impact pattern (see Fig. SD-3.9.2.3-1) at a specified pressure or flow rate shall be provided by the manufacturer.

(c) Weld-on or self-cleaning slip-joint/clip-on connections are acceptable. Other hygienic alternatives shall be agreed upon with the owner/user.

(d) The flow rate guideline for vertical cylindrical vessels with dished heads is 1.3 gpm/ft to 1.5 gpm/ft (16.1 lpm/m to 18.6 lpm/m) of inner vessel circumference to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(e) The flow rate guideline for horizontal cylindrical vessels with dished-heads is 0.8 gpm/ft to 1.2 gpm/ft (9.9 lpm/m to 14.9 lpm/m) of perimeter ($2L + 2D$) to ensure coverage of appurtenances and provide the sheeting action.

(f) Flow requirements for the specific application should be confirmed with the spray device and/or equipment manufacturer or other subject matter experts.

(g) High velocity gas flow from air-blows or steam passing through liquid-driven spray devices can result



Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-1 Static Spray Device

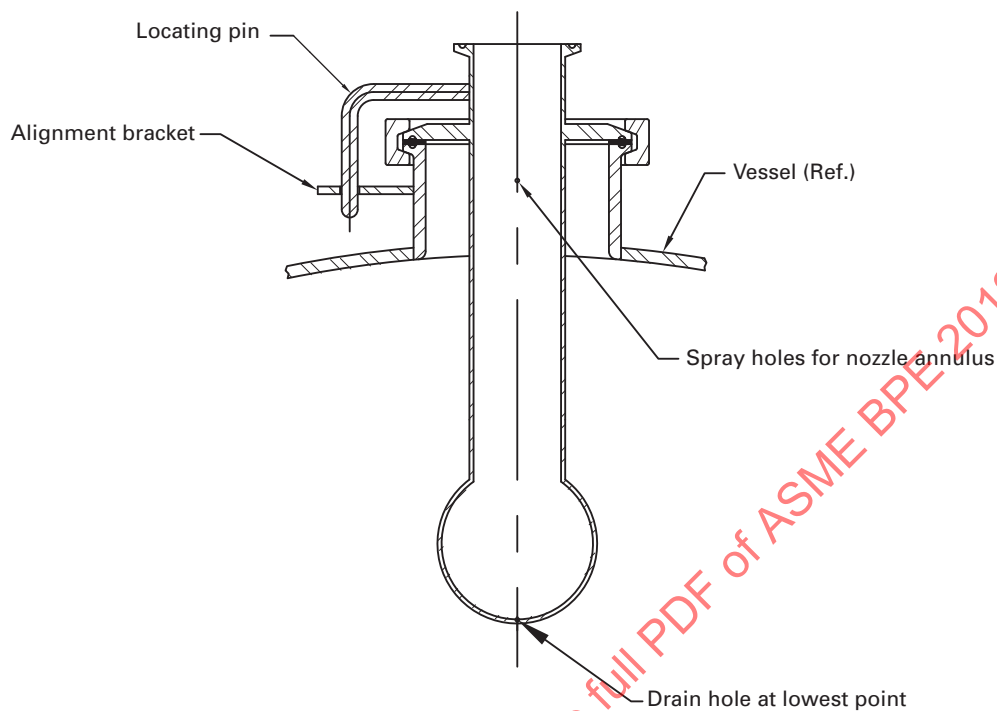


Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-2 Flow Rate Guideline for Vertical Cylindrical Vessels

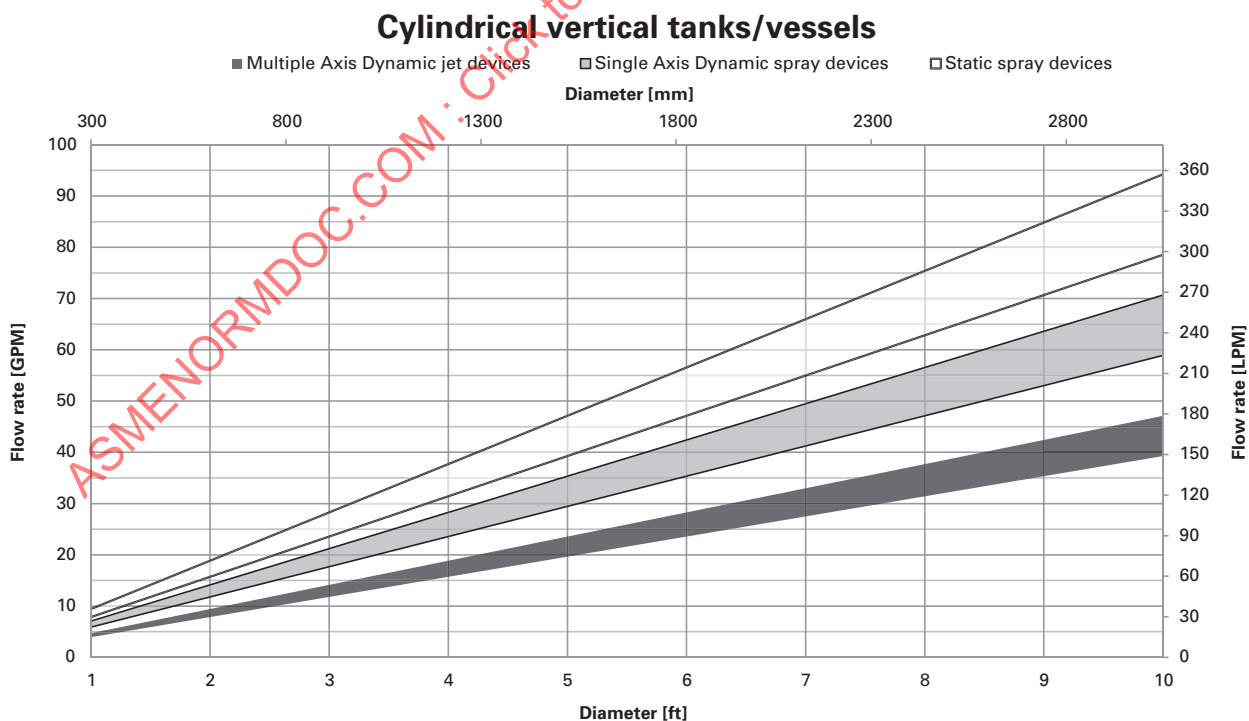


Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-3 Flow Rate Guideline for Horizontal Cylindrical Vessels

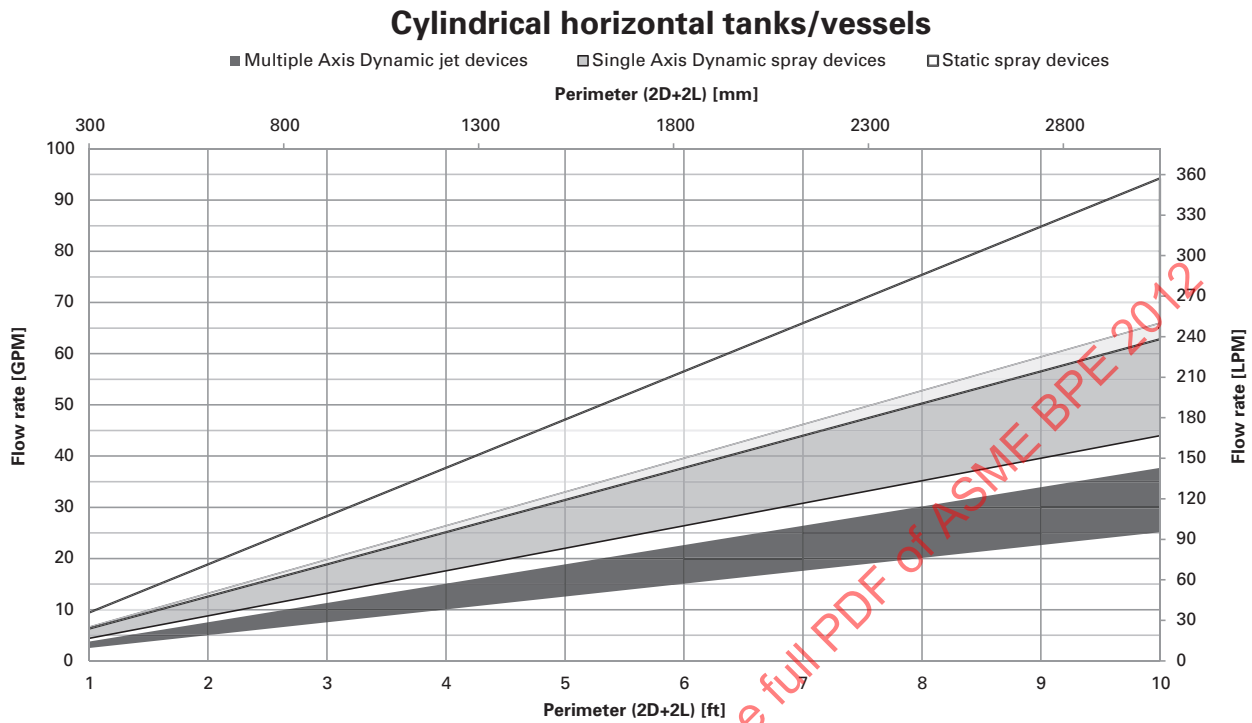
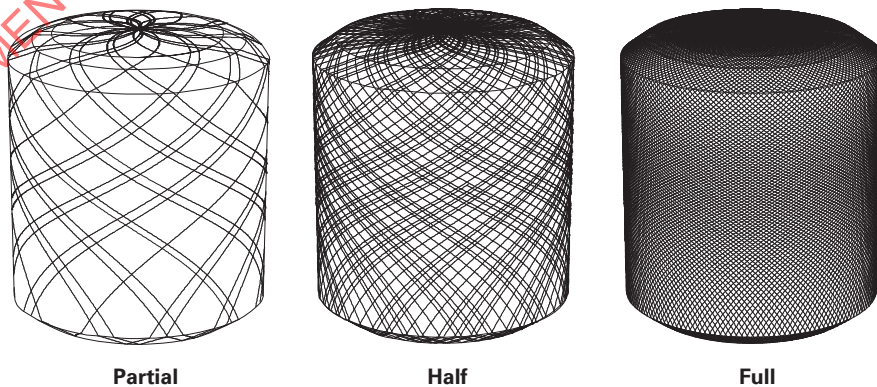


Fig. SD-3.9.2.3-1 Impact Pattern Build-Up



in wear to bearing surfaces. Consideration should be taken to restrict gas flow through the spray device according to the manufacturer's recommendation.

SD-3.10 Disposables That Require Pre-Sterilization or Post-Sterilization

[Reserved for future content]

SD-3.11 Sampling Systems

SD-3.11.1 General

(a) Sampling equipment in the biopharmaceutical industry is used for the collection of samples that then undergo chemical or microbiological evaluation. Sampling may be either aseptic or non-aseptic.

(b) Sampling systems shall not adulterate the product, nor affect the sample characteristics being tested.

(c) Aseptic sampling systems shall be steamable or pre-sterilized single-use.

(d) Hygienic sampling systems shall either be cleanable or single-use.

(e) Aseptic sampling systems shall be closed to isolate the process, protect the sample, sample container, and sample transfer process from the environment and to obtain representative samples.

SD-3.11.2 Aseptic Sampling Systems

SD-3.11.2.1 Basic Requirements

(a) Steamable sample systems shall meet the relevant requirements of SD-2.3.1.1.

(b) Sampling systems intended for multiple-use shall be cleanable.

(c) Sample valves shall meet the requirement of SG-3.3.2.3.

(d) In septum sample devices, the needles shall be sterilized prior to insertion into the vessel or process line.

(e) Collecting devices shall be designed, connected, and disconnected in ways that maintain the integrity of the sample.

SD-3.11.2.2 Installation. The sampling device shall be installed to maintain the aseptic barrier between the product and the environment. Consideration should be given to ease of assembly and subsequent handling of sample.

SD-3.11.2.3 Sample Collecting

(a) When using single-use collecting devices, consideration shall be given to maximum pressure ratings of valves, adaptors, and bags.

(b) Consideration should be given to the impact of absorption and off-gassing that could lead to nonrepresentative samples. Polymeric material requirements for leachables and extractables are listed in Part PM.

SD-3.11.3 Non-Aseptic Sampling. [Reserved for future content]

SD-3.12 Steam Traps

(a) Steam traps are not considered hygienic. Steam trap bodies shall have an internal surface finish (excluding the bellows assembly) as agreed to by all parties. Surface finish specification shall match the clean steam condensate tube finish specification unless the condensate downstream of the trap is used in the process or sampled for quality assurance.

(b) Where used in process systems, the traps shall be capable of effectively venting air.

(c) Where installed on process systems, traps shall be maintainable to allow easy examination and cleaning. Welded traps are acceptable if agreed to by the owner/user.

(d) The trap design and mode of operation shall be such that the risk of soil attachment to the wetted surfaces is minimized, especially around the bellows and seat (see Fig. SD-3.12-1).

(e) The trap shall be sized and installed to operate such that there is no backup of condensate into the process equipment and clean steam system under operating conditions. Operating conditions include heat-up, hold, and cool down.

(f) The trap shall be designed such that the normal mode of mechanical failure will be in the open position.

(g) Thermostatic steam traps, installed in vertical trap legs, are preferred for use in clean steam systems (see Fig. SD-3.12-1).

(h) Trap operation/reactivity should be improved by the installation of an uninsulated section of tubing upstream of the trap [suggested 12 in. (30 cm) as recommended by supplier] (see Fig. SD-4.2.2-2).

SD-3.13 Check Valves

The use of check valves for hygienic process piping systems requires caution and is not recommended.

SD-3.14 Orifice Plates

Orifice plates, when required and used in hygienic piping systems, shall be installed in a drainable position.

SD-3.15 Relief Devices

(a) Rupture discs (or other hygienic pressure relief devices approved by the owner/user) on pressure vessels should be installed as close as possible to the system's highest point.

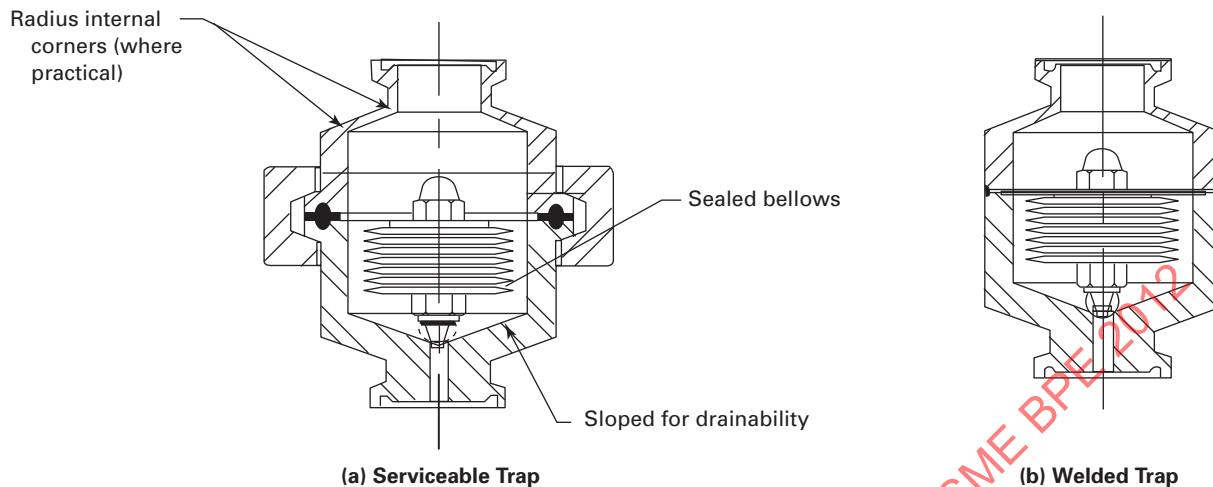
(b) The cleaning system design shall ensure that the rupture disc (or other hygienic pressure relief devices approved by the owner/user) will not be damaged by cleaning media impact.

(c) Rupture disc (or other hygienic pressure relief devices approved by the owner/user) installation shall comply with the L/D ratios mentioned in SD-3.1.2.2.

(d) Discharge piping shall comply with the appropriate code.

(e) If a reclosing hygienic pressure relief valve is used, the owner/user shall evaluate and, if necessary, mitigate the risk of product contamination associated with a leak across the valve seat.



Fig. SD-3.12-1 Steam Traps for Clean Steam Systems**SD-3.16 Liquid Pressure Regulators**

(a) Regulators should be installed to be fully drainable through the outlet and/or inlet ports.

(b) There shall be no voids or crevices within the area wetted by the fluid. Regulator designs, where a portion of the valve stem penetrates the sensing diaphragm, shall be avoided unless provisions are made to avoid entrapment of foreign matter and any leakage through the interface between stem and diaphragm, especially after SIP.

(c) Due to the inherent design characteristics of self-contained regulators, manual means of override may be required to allow full cleanability and drainability.

(c) Units should be completely drainable and should not contain any areas where agents used to clean, de-scale, and/or passivate the units are trapped or not easily flushed during rinsing operations.

SD-4.1.2 Compensial Water Distribution Systems

SD-4.1.2.1 Point-of-Use Piping Design for Compensial Water Systems. Point-of-use (POU) can be defined as a location in a compensial water loop where water is accessed for processing and/or sampling. Typically, the point-of-use assemblies are composed of the following elements:

(a) piping associated with a compensial water loop at the physical POU

(b) POU valves, equipment, and instruments

Additional process components and equipment may be added to satisfy application and/or system requirements and will be discussed further in this Part (see Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1).

SD-4.1.2.2 Critical Design Criteria for Point-of-Use Assemblies

(a) All point-of-use (POU) assemblies will be designed to optimize drainability through the POU valve.

(b) Assemblies will be designed to promote the ability to CIP, SIP, and/or purge with clean gasses.

(c) Valves used in point-of-use applications should be welded into the water distribution loop where possible. Current industry designs are available to achieve an L/D of 2 or less (see SD-3.1.2.2).

(d) Sample valves should be integral to the design of the primary valve to eliminate dead legs in the system.

(e) Sample valves should be installed only as needed on the main loop.

(f) Sample valves should be installed where water is utilized for the process to demonstrate water quality compliance to compensial monographs.

(12) SD-4 PROCESS UTILITIES**SD-4.1 Compensial Water Systems**

(a) Compensial water systems, such as USP Grade Water-for-Injection (WFI), USP Grade Purified Water (PW), and Highly Purified Water (HPW), shall be designed as looped circulatory systems, rather than non-circulating, dead-ended, branched systems.

(b) Loops shall be designed to provide fully developed turbulent flow in the circulating sections, and prevent stagnation in any branches.

SD-4.1.1 Compensial Water Generation

(a) All surfaces that shall come into direct contact with the product, feed water, or condensate/blowdown produced by the units shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel with all welded parts of 316L stainless steel or other material as specified by the owner/user.

(b) Connections to the product, feed water, or condensate/blowdown produced by the units shall be made by the use of hygienic design fittings. All gasketed fittings should be constructed in such a manner as to avoid dead legs and crevices.

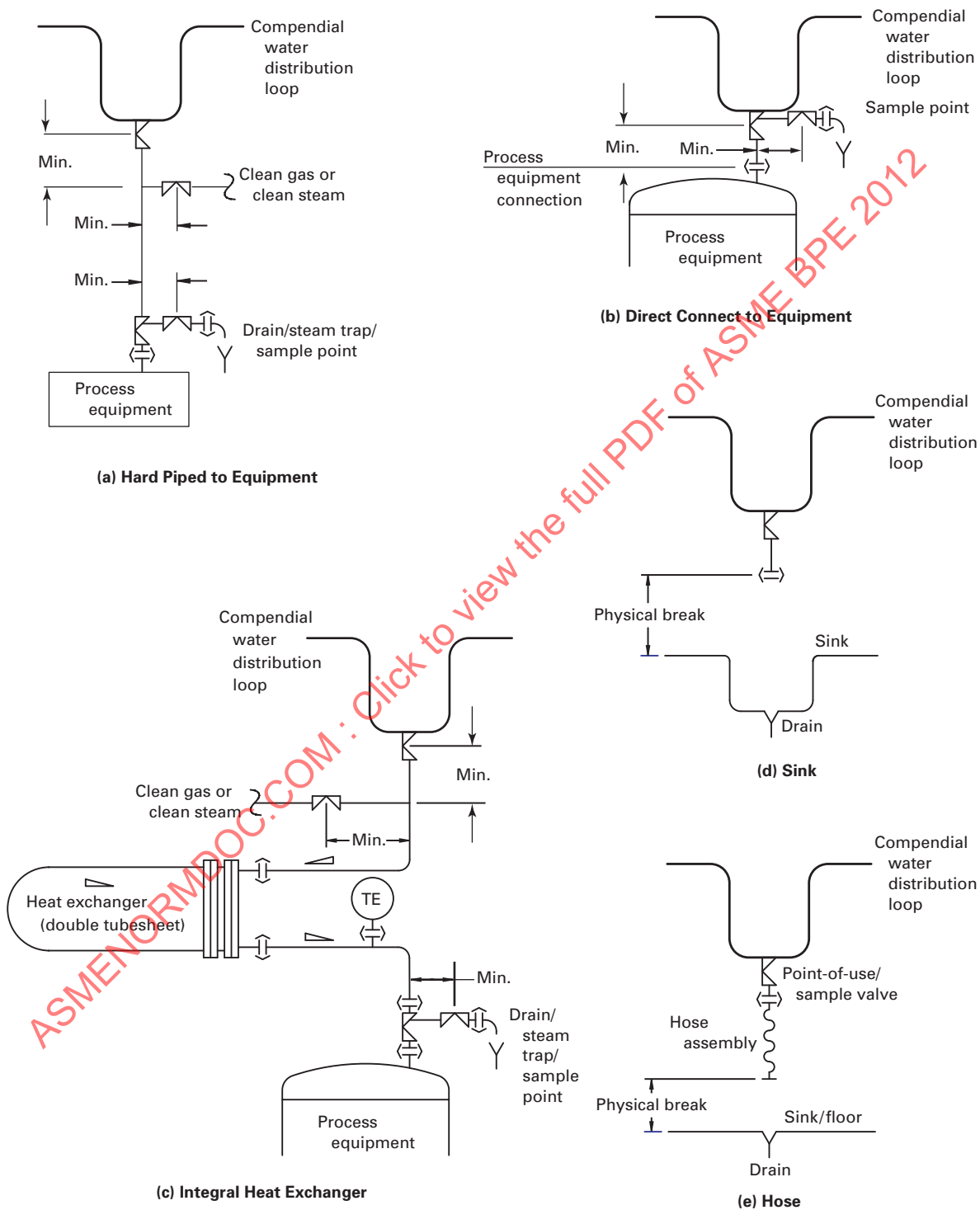
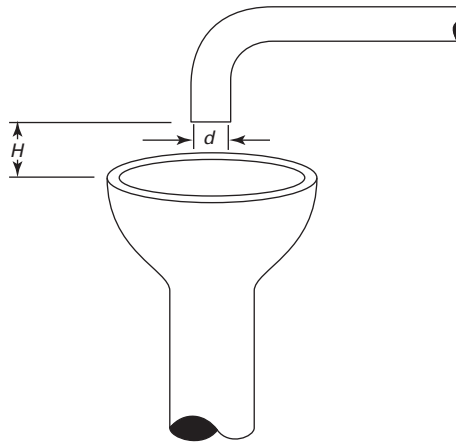
Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1 Point-of-Use Piping

Fig. SD-4.1.2.2-1 Physical Break in Point-of-Use Piping

GENERAL NOTE: $H = 2 \times d$ or $H = 1$ in. (25 mm) if $d < \frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm).

(g) Any valve used to provide clean utility services to the POU assembly (e.g., steam or clean gas) should be fabricated in such a manner as to achieve an L/D of 2 or less downstream from the primary POU valve [see Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1, illustrations (a) and (c)].

(h) The length of tubing from POU valves to process equipment should be minimized [see Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1, illustrations (a) and (b)].

(i) If evacuating the system is not possible, appropriate porting of the primary POU valve should be accomplished to facilitate sanitization.

(j) When heat exchangers are used as point-of-use coolers [see Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1, illustration (c)], the design shall comply with SD-3.6, Heat Exchange Equipment.

(k) Physical breaks shall be employed between hoses, drain valves, or any other component leading to drains or sinks to avoid backsiphoning into the POU assembly [see Fig. SD-4.1.2.1-1, illustrations (d) and (e)]. The distance H of the physical break should be at least twice the inner diameter of the hoses, drain valves, or any other component leading to drains or sinks to avoid backsiphoning into the POU assembly. The break shall be at least 1 in. (25 mm) for hoses, drain valves, or other components with internal diameters less than or equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) (see Fig. SD-4.1.2.2-1).

(l) Tubing and other piping materials should be a minimum of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) in diameter to facilitate free drainage of water after use.

(m) POU assemblies shall be drainable as indicated in SD-2.4.3.

(n) A POU may include a venturi or orifice plate, if the restriction of water flow is required. Where used, the additions of these components will require a blow-down to ensure drainability.

(o) When compendial water systems are constructed of 316L stainless steel or other alloy steels, the surface

finish should be less than or equal to 25 μ in. R_a or 0.6 μ m (see Part SF) and may be internally electropolished. All internal surfaces shall be passivated.

(p) When compendial water systems are constructed of polymer materials, the surface finish should be less than or equal to 25 μ in. R_a or 0.6 μ m.

SD-4.2 Clean/Pure Steam Systems

SD-4.2 is applicable to both clean and pure steam systems.

SD-4.2.1 Clean/Pure Steam Generation

(a) All surfaces that come into direct contact with the product, feed water, or condensate/blowdown produced by the units shall be constructed of 316 stainless steel with all welded parts of 316L stainless steel or other material as specified by the owner/user.

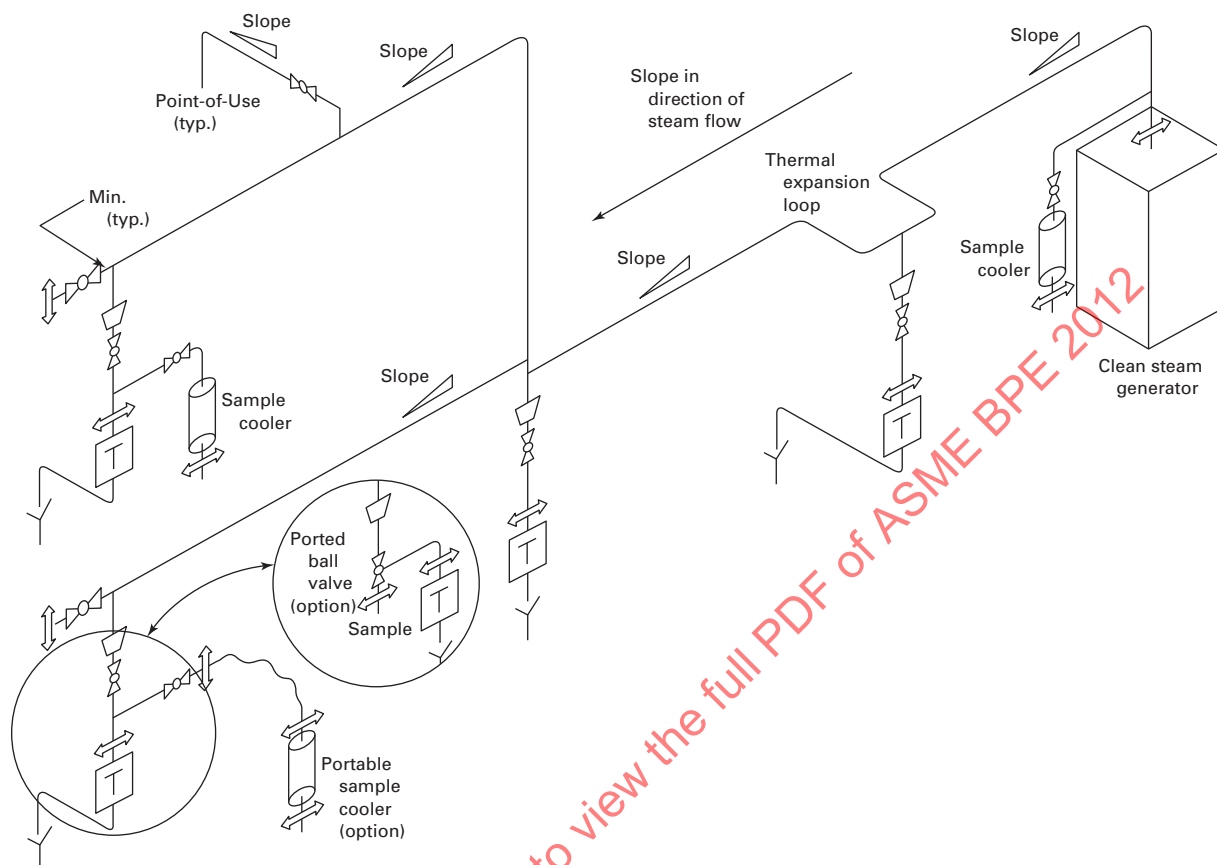
(b) Connections to the product, feed water, or condensate/blowdown produced by the units shall be made by the use of hygienic design fittings. All gasketed fittings should be constructed in such a manner as to avoid dead legs and crevices.

(c) Units should be completely drainable and should not contain any areas where agents used to clean, descale, and/or passivate the units are trapped or not easily flushed during rinsing operations.

SD-4.2.2 Clean/Pure Steam Distribution System

(a) The distribution system shall have adequate provision to remove air during start-up and normal operations. The use of air vents installed at locations where air is likely to be trapped, such as at the ends of steam headers, can assist in this requirement.

(b) The horizontal distribution lines should be sloped in the direction of flow as indicated in SD-2.4.3. Where necessary, increases in height should be achieved by vertical risers (see Fig. SD-4.2.2-1).

Fig. SD-4.2.2-1 Typical Clean Steam System Isometric

GENERAL NOTE: Provide steam traps

- (a) where line transitions from horizontal to vertical (at the bottom of the vertical riser)
- (b) at least every 100 ft (30 m)
- (c) at end of each header or branch
- (d) at thermal expansion loops or transitions
- (e) where steam is sampled

(c) Adequate provision should be made to allow for line expansion and to prevent sagging of the distribution lines, so that line drainage is not reduced.

(d) Distribution systems shall not be directly connected to any nonhygienic steam systems (e.g., plant steam systems).

(e) Trap legs for the collection of condensate from the steam distribution system should be of equal size to the distribution line for sizes up to 4 in. (100 mm), and one or two line sizes smaller for lines of 6 in. (150 mm) or larger. These shall be trapped at the bottom. The line size reduction can be made after the branch to the trap leg (see Fig. SD-4.2.2-2).

(f) Trap legs should be installed at least every 100 ft (approximately 30 m), upstream of control and isolation valves, at the bottom of vertical risers, and at any other low points.

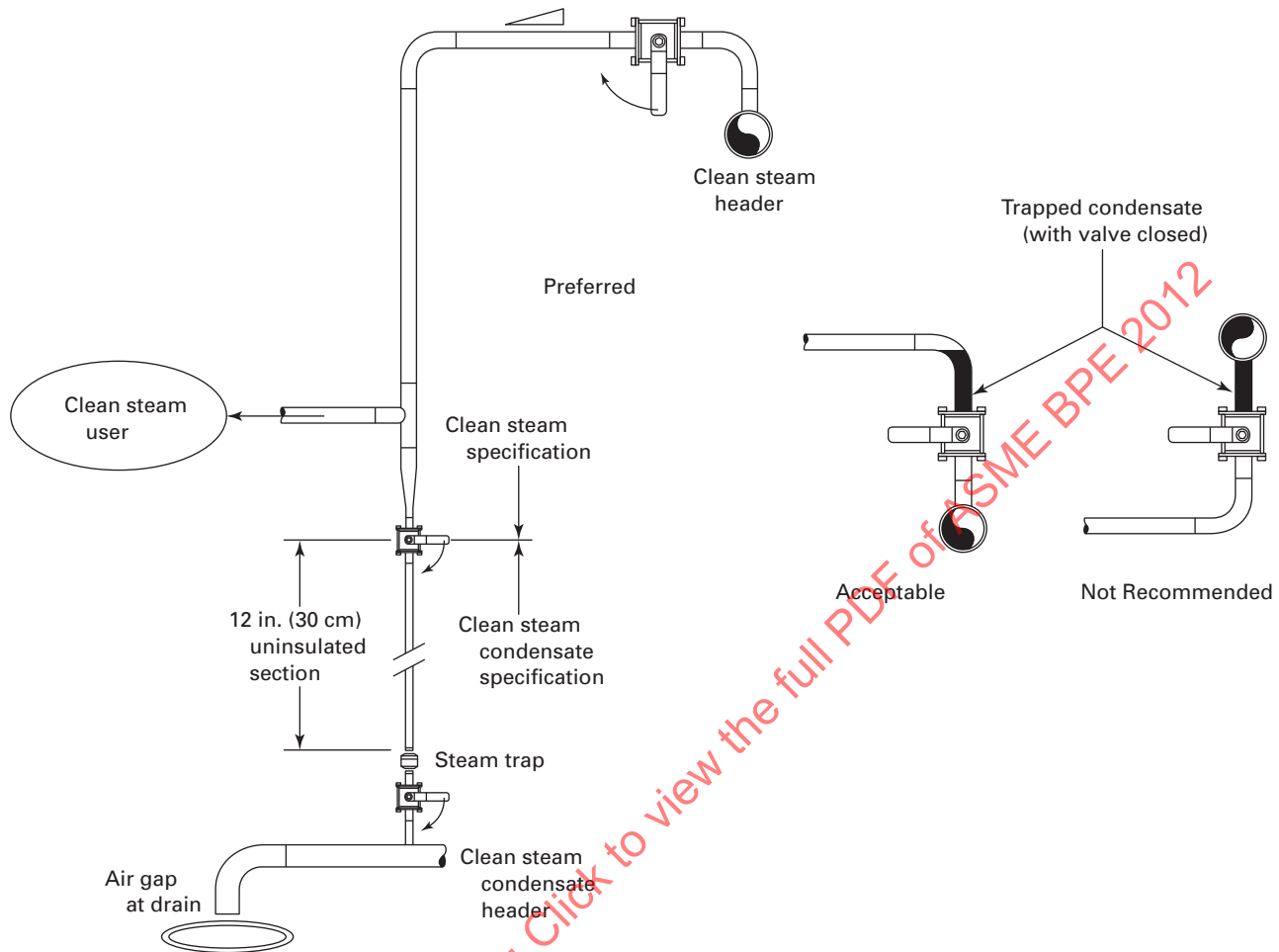
(g) Condensate shall be allowed to drain to and from steam traps. The use of overhead, direct-coupled, pressurized condensate return systems should be avoided (see Fig. SD-4.2.2-2).

(h) Where possible, all components within the distribution system should be self-draining.

(i) Dead legs should be avoided by design of runs and the use of steam traps to remove condensate (see Figs. SD-4.2.2-1 and SD-4.2.2-2).

(j) Branches and points-of-use should be routed from the top of the steam header to avoid excessive condensate loads at the branch (see Fig. SD-4.2.2-2).

(k) Sampling points for clean/pure steam should be located to collect representative sample(s) of the system (e.g., generator outlet, distribution header ends, critical points-of-use, autoclaves, or SIP stations).

Fig. SD-4.2.2-2 Clean Steam Point-of-Use Design

SD-4.2.3 Clean/Pure Steam Valves. SD-4.2.3 covers isolation, regulation, and control valves that are part of the steam system and are subject to continuous steam service.

(a) Valves for steam service shall be designed for drainability and should have minimal fluid hold-up volumes.

(b) Ball valves are an acceptable industry standard for isolation purposes on continuous steam service. Three-piece-body ball valves should be used instead of single-body designs for both cleanability and maintainability. The bore of the ball valve assembly shall match the inside diameter of the tube (see Fig. SG-2.3.1-6).

(c) All components shall be suitable for continuous steam service at the temperatures and pressures specified by the owner/user.

(d) Requirements for operation under CIP and SIP conditions [see SG-3.3.2.3(a)(11) and (a)(13)] can be relaxed when agreed to by the owner/user.

(e) Secondary stem seals with telltale connections are not required for steam service.

(f) Valves shall be accessible for maintenance.

SD-4.3 Process Gases

SD-4.3.1 Process Gas Distribution Systems. For this section, a process gas distribution system is one that extends from the bulk supply source (including cylinders) to the points of use (POU) as defined by the owner/user. Owners/users and their Quality Assurance personnel shall demonstrate that their systems comply with 21 CFR 211, Subpart D.

(a) The installation of process gas delivery and distribution systems for use within the scope of this Standard requires appropriate selection of piping materials. All components shall be supplied or rendered both hydrocarbon free (e.g., oil free) and particulate free prior to installation and/or use.

(b) For materials of construction, the owner/user shall specify all materials. When copper is used, it should be hard drawn and installed in accordance with the current edition of NFPA 99, Chapter 5. When copper is specified in a clean room or area, the owner/user shall confirm that all planned cleaning and sanitizing agents

are compatible with copper and all materials of construction. When stainless steel tubing is specified, the materials of choice are alloys 316L or 304L. Orbital welding is the recommended joining method. Inside clean rooms, the piping materials of choice are 316L or 304L stainless steel tubing and fittings. The owner/user and manufacturer shall agree on all joining methods, levels of inspection, and acceptance criteria for all joints prior to installation.

(c) Compression fittings may be used for valves, regulators, mass flow controllers, and other instrumentation systems at the source and/or within system boundaries.

(d) Gas systems are not designed or configured with the intent or provisions to be cleaned, passivated, or chemically treated after installation. Features such as slope, high point vents, and low point drains need not be incorporated into these systems.

(e) There shall be no nonvolatile residue. The system design shall ensure that gas will remain pure throughout its delivery.

(f) It is important to select appropriate pre-filters and final system filters. The final point-of-use gas purity shall comply with the process requirements.

(g) Gas systems testing and sampling shall comply with 21 CFR 211 and ICH Q7 (International Conference on Harmonization, Good Manufacturing Practice Guidance for Active Pharmaceutical Ingredients).

SD-4.4 Process Waste Systems

SD-4.4.1 Bio-Kill Systems. [Reserved for future content]

(12) SD-5 PROCESS SYSTEMS

SD-5.1 Upstream Systems

SD-5.1.1 Bioreactors and Fermentors

SD-5.1.1.1 General

(a) *Scope.* For this section, the terms “fermentors” and “bioreactors” are interchangeable. A bioreactor or fermentor shall be defined as a vessel based system used in the growth of microorganisms, plant, mammalian, or insect cells.

(b) The area within the bioreactor sterile envelope or boundary shall be designed for cleanability and bioburden control. As a minimum, the bioreactor sterile envelope or boundary shall include the following (see Figs. SD-5.1.1.1-1 and SD-5.1.1.1-2):

(1) vessel internals.

(2) inlet gas piping from the filter element(s) to the vessel and any installed isolation valving. If redundant sterilizing grade filters are used in series, the inlet filter element farthest from the reactor vessel shall define the sterile boundary.

(3) exhaust gas piping from the vessel side of the exhaust filter(s) to the vessel and any installed isolation

valving. If redundant sterilizing grade filters are used in series, the exhaust filter farthest from the reactor vessel shall define the sterile boundary.

(4) agitation assembly including all internal surfaces of the impellers, and shaft up to the mechanical shaft seal in contact with the product.

(5) feed systems from the vessel to the seat of the isolation valve nearest to the bioreactor vessel or if the feed stream is being filter sterilized, the sterilizing grade filter element.

(6) sampling system.

(7) product harvesting system from the vessel to the seat of the isolation valve nearest to the bioreactor vessel.

(c) A bioreactor is made up of a number of subassemblies, with those subassemblies potentially in contact with product, requiring special design consideration for cleaning and bioburden control.

(d) The bioreactor design for cleanability and sterility shall take into consideration the biosafety level requirement for the system. A bioreactor shall be designed in accordance with a biosafety level requirement as defined by the National Institutes of Health or equivalent organization (e.g., BSL-1, BSL-2, BSL-3, or BSL-4). The biosafety level requirement should be determined based on the organism, the process, the product being produced, and/or the owner/user's preferences. To meet a specific biosafety level requirement, special operational considerations (e.g., steam blocks) may have to be addressed within the bioreactors' subassembly designs. If the bioreactor has been used to grow an organism that requires biohazard containment, provision shall be made to decontaminate all surfaces that may have come in contact with product prior to CIP, or to contain and decontaminate the fluids used for CIP.

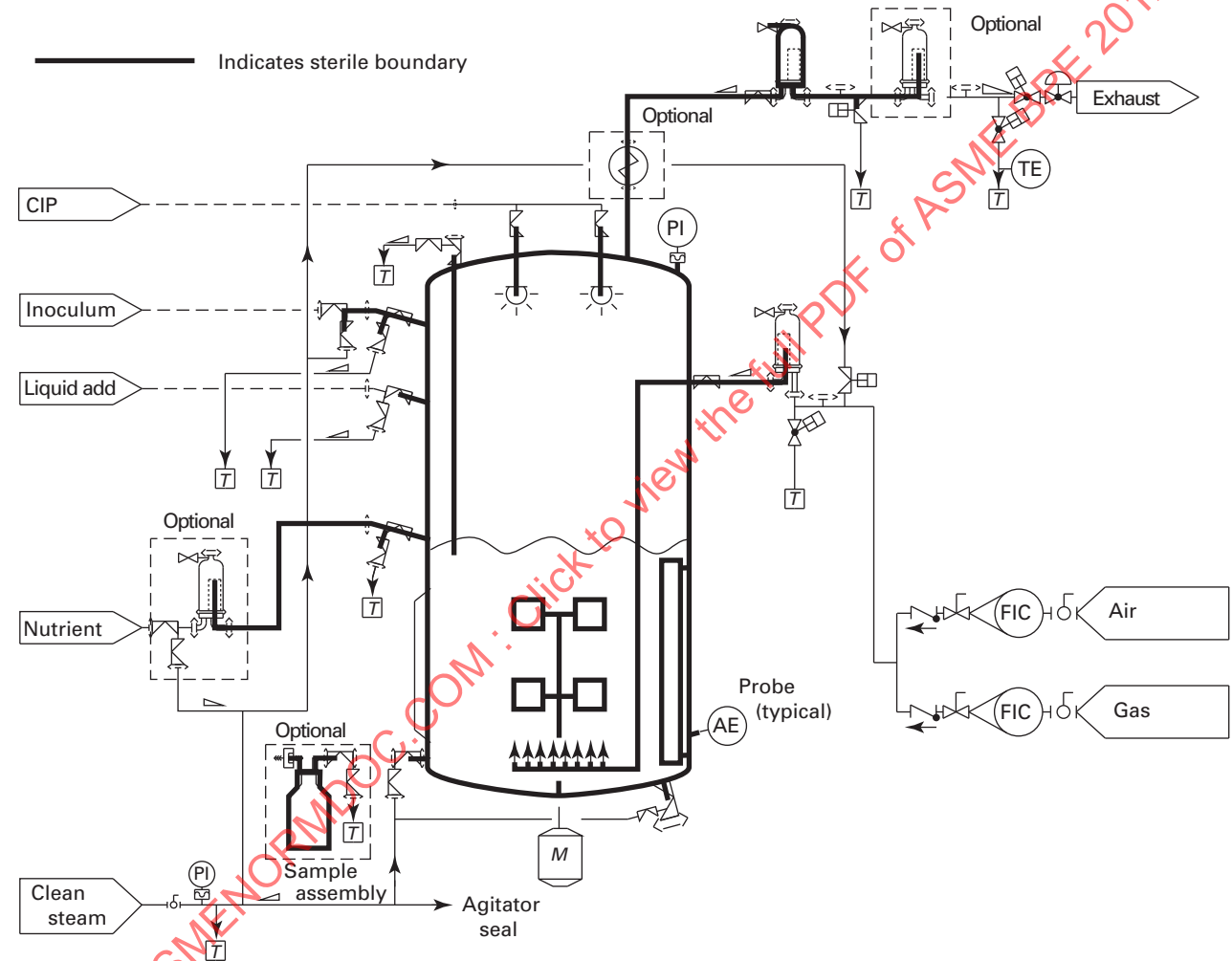
(e) The bioreactor vessel should be pressure/vacuum and temperature rated per the owner/user's design criteria. The vessel shall be constructed, tested, inspected, and stamped in accordance with local ordinances, regulations, and codes.

(f) The area within the sterile envelope should be designed for CIP. For components that cannot be CIP'd, the design shall allow removal for manual cleaning out of place or replacement.

(g) The area within the sterile envelope should be designed for SIP. For those components or assemblies that cannot be SIP'd, the design shall allow removal for steam sterilization using an autoclave as long as additional provisions are provided for sterilizing the interface (e.g., steam block) once the components or assemblies are reconnected to the remainder of the bioreactor system. Autoclaved components or assemblies shall be capable of being steam sterilized without degradation to any of the elastomers or polymers that make up the components or assemblies.

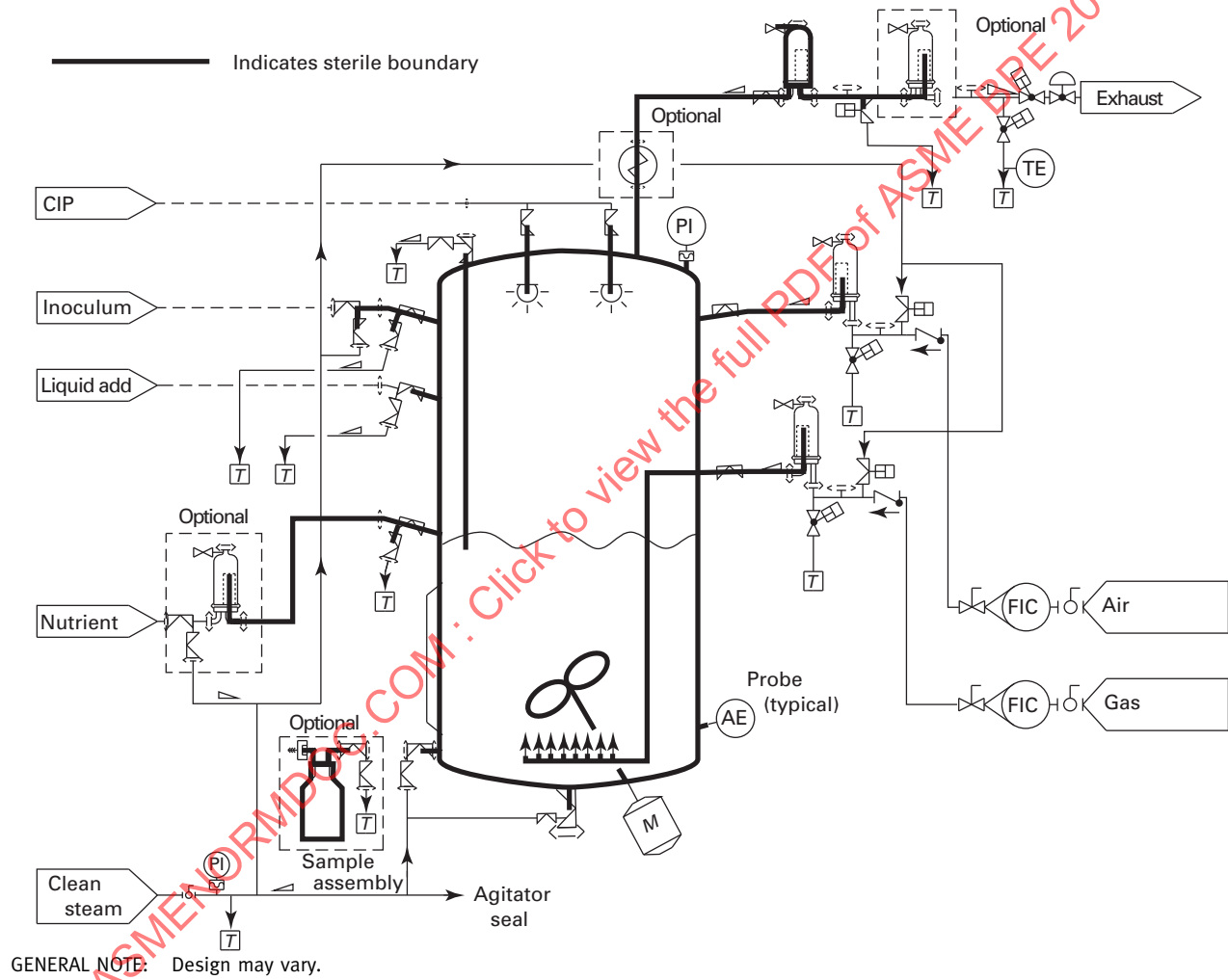


Fig. SD-5.1.1.1-1 Fermentor Sterile Envelope



GENERAL NOTE: Design may vary.

Fig. SD-5.1.1.1-2 Bioreactor Sterile Envelope



SD-5.1.1.2 Inlet Gas Assembly. The inlet gas assembly shall be defined as a piping assembly that has the ability to deliver controlled amounts of filtered gases into a bioreactor vessel. The assembly shall include but is not limited to the items in SD-5.1.1.2.1 through SD-5.1.1.2.4.

SD-5.1.1.2.1 Flow Control Devices

(a) Flow control devices (e.g., rotameters, mass flow controllers, and modulating control valves) shall be installed outside of the sterile boundary; therefore, piping requirements within this section may not apply. However, provisions shall be included within the design to prevent instrumentation damage due to SIP procedures and backflow.

(b) Flow control devices should be sized to prevent a vacuum condition, or a provision to bypass the flow control device shall be provided to maintain positive pressure in the vessel.

SD-5.1.1.2.2 Inlet Filter Assembly

(a) For this section, an inlet filter shall be defined as a filter element installed in a housing of suitable material. The inlet filter assembly shall be defined as the filter(s) local to the bioreactor.

(b) Inlet filter assemblies shall be designed for SIP with provisions to remove entrapped air and condensate.

(c) If multiple inlet filters are used in series, then the filter assembly closest to the bioreactor shall be a sterilizing filter.

(d) Provisions shall be made for integrity testing of the filter assembly in situ or out of place.

(e) If the housings are included in a cleaning circuit, the filter elements shall be removed prior to introduction of cleaning solutions.

(f) Gas filters should be installed above the bioreactor liquid level.

SD-5.1.1.2.3 Gas Sparging Assemblies

(a) Spargers shall be defined as mechanical devices normally located below an impeller used to disperse gases within a charged bioreactor. This section applies to sparge lances, wands, rings, and other devices (see Figs. SD-5.1.1.2.3-1 through SD-5.1.1.2.3-4) that may be mounted in the bioreactor vessel to introduce various gas streams for process operations. Sparge device assemblies shall meet the requirements of SD-3.4.2.

(b) Spargers shall be designed for SIP with the vessel.

(c) Spargers should be designed for CIP. If the sparge element cannot be CIP'd, provisions shall be made to remove the sparge assembly from the bioreactor for cleaning out of place or replacement.

(d) The removable sparger shall be supplied with the means to ensure that the installation orientation is in compliance with design intent.

(e) If the bioreactor is sterilized with media in the vessel, the SIP operation shall direct steam flow through the sparge device.

(f) CIP for sparge devices that use porous material for gas distribution requires particular attention. These devices should be evaluated for CIP cleanability and should be removed from the bioreactor for external cleaning and/or replacement when CIP is not feasible.

(g) All wetted surfaces shall be sloped to drain by gravity into the vessel.

(h) If a check valve is installed in the sparge line within the sterile envelope, it shall be designed for CIP and SIP.

SD-5.1.1.2.4 Inlet Gas Piping

(a) Overlay piping is defined as piping that directs filtered gases to the vessel headspace.

(b) Inlet gas assembly piping (sparge and overlay) within the sterile envelope shall meet the requirements as defined in SD-3.1.2.

(c) Inlet gas piping within the sterile envelope shall meet slope requirements as defined for GSD3 in Table SD-2.4.3.1-1.

SD-5.1.1.3 Exhaust Gas Assembly. The exhaust gas assembly is defined as a piping assembly that maintains the integrity of the sterile boundary with respect to sterility and pressure. The assembly shall include but is not limited to the items in SD-5.1.1.3.1 through SD-5.1.1.3.3.

SD-5.1.1.3.1 Exhaust Filter

(a) For this section, an exhaust filter shall be defined as a filter element installed in a housing of suitable material.

(b) Exhaust filters shall be designed for SIP. The housings shall be installed in such a way as to prevent the collection of condensate in the elements due to SIP.

(c) If redundant sterilizing grade exhaust filters are used in series, then the filter farthest from the bioreactor shall have a maximum rating of 0.2 μm absolute. In addition, provisions shall be included for draining condensate from the piping between the filters.

(d) Consideration should be made for CIP or removal in the case of cleaning out of place.

(e) Provisions shall be made for integrity testing of the exhaust filter.

(f) Filter elements shall be removed prior to introduction of cleaning solutions into exhaust gas assemblies.



Fig. SD-5.1.1.2.3-1 Gas Sparging Assembly — Lance

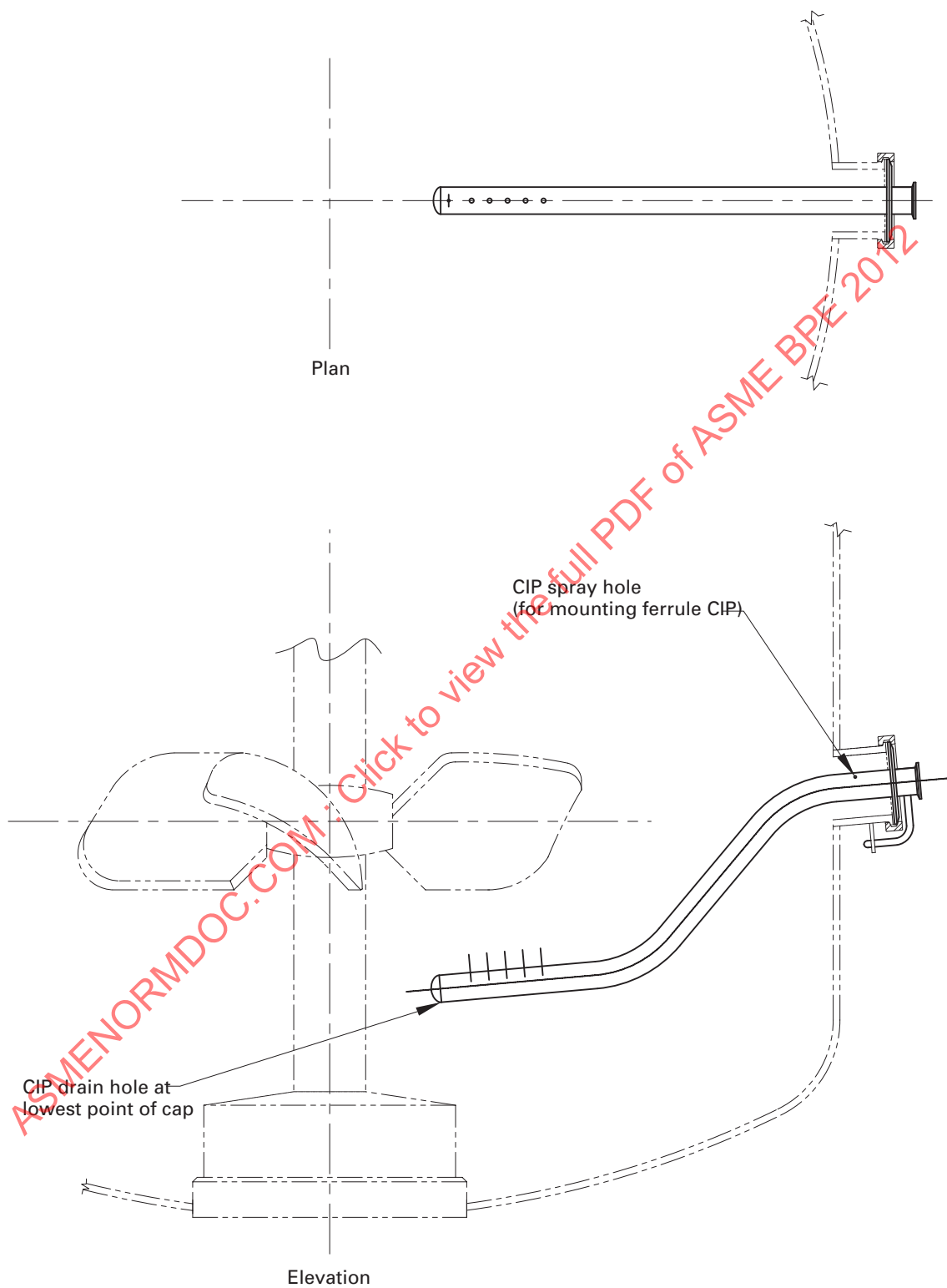


Fig. SD-5.1.1.2.3-2 Gas Sparging Assembly — Sintered

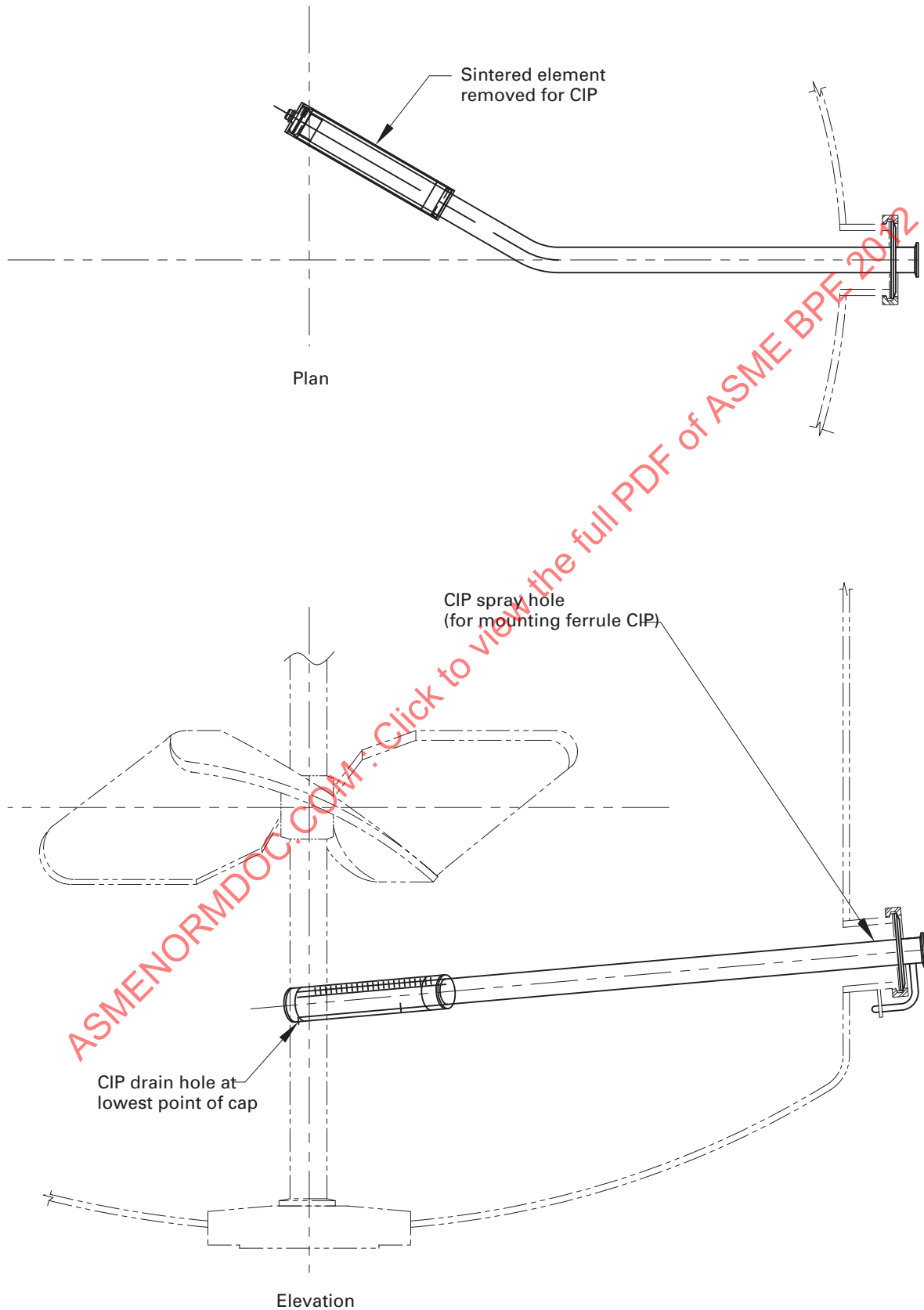


Fig. SD-5.1.1.2.3-3 Gas Sparging Assembly — Ring

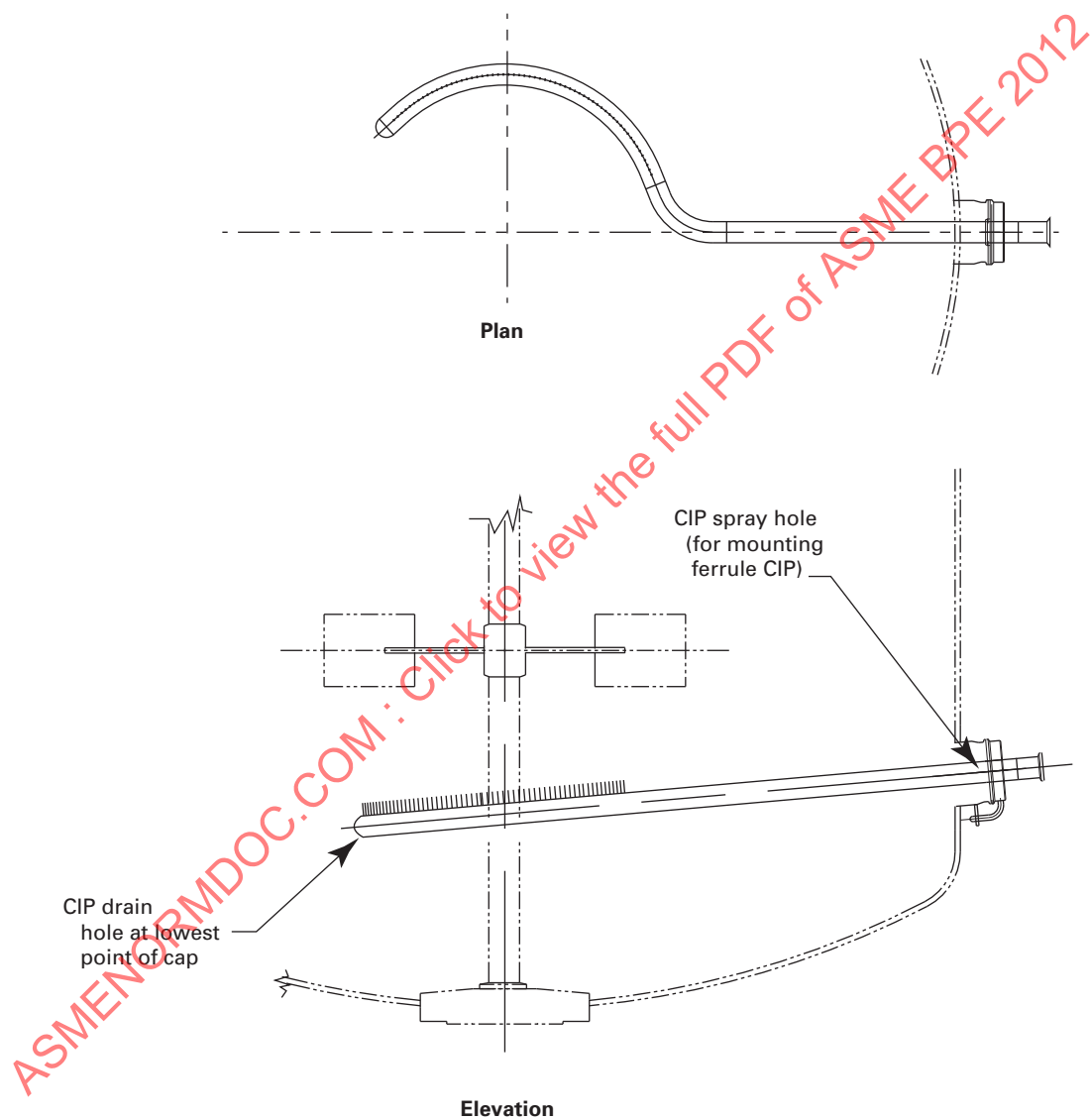


Fig. SD-5.1.1.2.3-4 Gas Sparging Assembly — Single Orifice

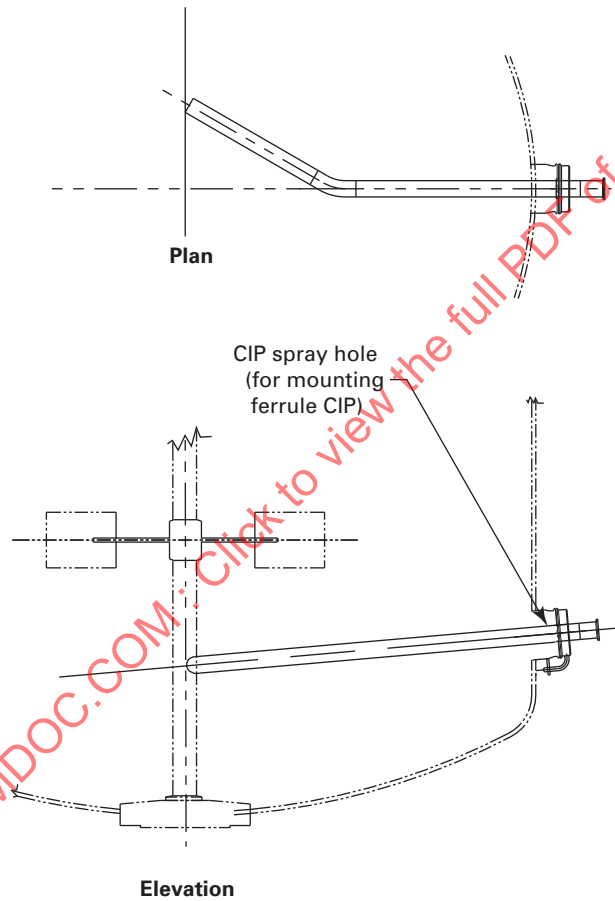
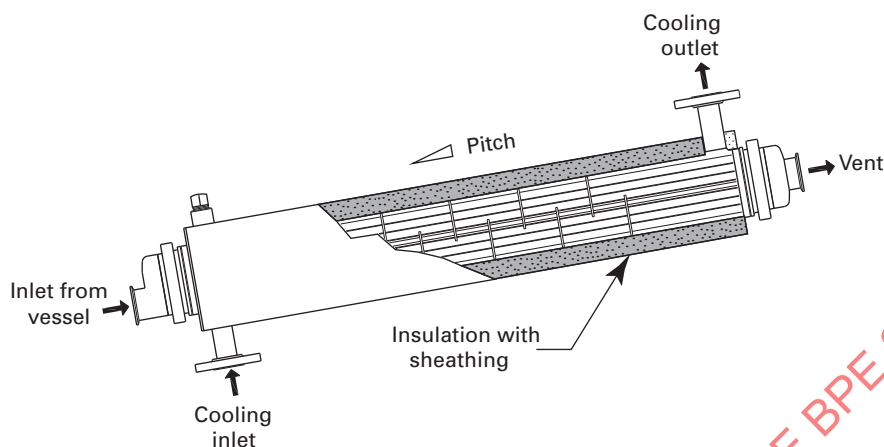
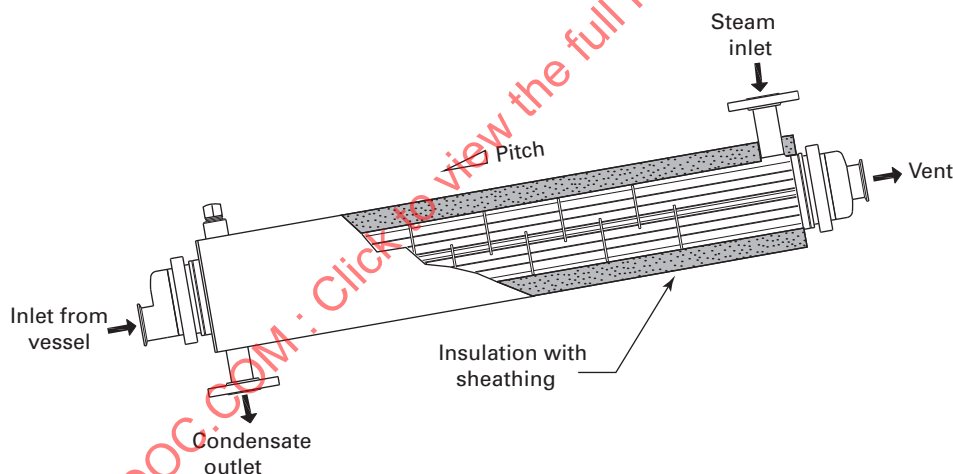


Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-1 Exhaust Gas Condenser**Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-2 Exhaust Gas Heater**

(g) To prevent the exhaust filters from becoming blinded by condensate saturation during operation, the exhaust gas assembly may include exhaust condensers (Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-1), exhaust heaters (Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-2), steam jacketed, or electrically heated traced filter housings (Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-3). These items shall be designed for SIP and CIP.

SD-5.1.1.3.2 Exhaust Gas Piping

(a) The exhaust gas assembly within the sterile envelope shall meet the requirements as defined in SD-3.1.2.

(b) Exhaust gas piping within the sterile envelope shall meet slope requirements as defined for GSD3 in Table SD-2.4.3.1-1.

(c) The design of exhaust gas piping from the bioreactor should ensure that there is no condensate accumulation in the line downstream of the system.

SD-5.1.1.3.3 Backpressure Control Devices

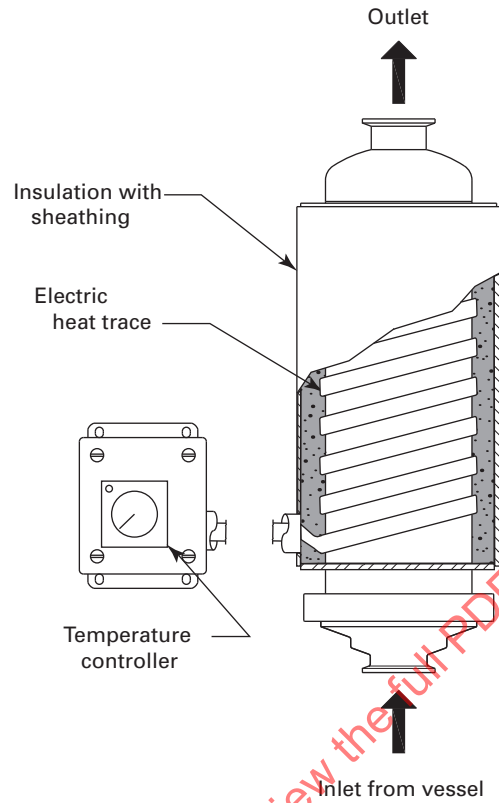
(a) If required, backpressure control devices (e.g., modulating control valves or regulators) should be installed outside of the sterile boundary.

(b) Backpressure control devices shall not hinder the bioreactor's capability of being SIP'd and CIP'd.

(c) If a vapor-liquid separator is used in the exhaust within the sterile envelope, it shall be designed for CIP and SIP.

SD-5.1.1.4 Piping Systems

SD-5.1.1.4.1 Feed Lines. This section applies to bioreactor piping systems used to feed liquid ingredients (e.g., pH control reagents, antifoam reagents, media, nutrient, and inoculum).

Fig. SD-5.1.1.3.1-3 Electrically Heat Traced Filter Housing

(a) Feed lines shall be designed with the appropriate piping system to allow CIP and SIP of the bioreactor vessel and the feed line itself. CIP and SIP of the feed line may be done independently or simultaneously with the bioreactor.

(b) If CIP of the ingredient feed system is performed during active culture operations, then the design should include provisions to prevent cross contamination between CIP solutions and product.

(c) Valve and piping orientation shall be designed to provide complete drainage during CIP and SIP.

SD-5.1.1.4.2 Dip Tubes. This section applies to all bioreactor port tube-extensions within the vessel.

(a) Bioreactor dip tubes shall meet the requirements of SD-3.4.2.

(b) Removable dip tubes (see Fig. SD-3.4.2-4) shall be inserted through a hygienic fitting. The removable dip tube shall be supplied with the means to ensure that the installation orientation is in compliance with design intent.

(c) All wetted surfaces shall be sloped to drain by gravity into the vessel.

(d) The SIP operation shall direct or balance steam distribution to establish and maintain sterilization temperature within the tube during the sterilization hold period.

(e) If the bioreactor is sterilized with media in the vessel, and the dip tube extends below the working level of the media, the SIP operation shall direct steam flow through the dip tube into the vessel.

(f) Bioreactor dip tubes shall be designed for CIP or COP.

(g) If the dip tube is installed in the vessel during CIP, both the inside and outside of the dip tube shall be cleaned.

SD-5.1.1.4.3 Harvest Valves/Bottom Outlet Valve. This section applies to all valves installed in the vessel bottom head.

(a) Harvest valves shall meet the requirements of SG-3.3.2.3.

(b) Bottom outlet valves shall be drainable and installed in such a way as to ensure complete drainage of the bioreactor contents.

(c) Bioreactor harvest valves shall be designed for SIP and CIP or COP.

SD-5.1.1.5 Miscellaneous Internal Components

SD-5.1.1.5.1 Agitation Assemblies. This section applies to mechanical agitator assemblies mounted in the bioreactor for achieving one or more mixing-related unit operations (e.g., blending, mass transfer, heat transfer, and solids suspension).

- (a) Agitators shall meet the requirements of SD-3.5.
- (b) Agitators with double mechanical seals (see Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-2) or magnetic couplings (Fig. SD-3.5.5-2) are recommended to isolate bioreactor contents from the environment.
- (c) Agitator seal or magnetic coupling components shall be designed for CIP and SIP.
- (d) Provisions shall be included in the design to clean the product-contact surfaces of impellers. Additional spray elements may be required to achieve coverage.
- (e) Bottom-mounted agitators shall not interfere with free and complete drainage of bioreactor contents.

SD-5.1.1.5.2 Mechanical Foam Breaker Assemblies. This section applies to mechanical foam breaker assemblies that may be mounted in the bioreactor for reducing or eliminating foam accumulation in the vapor space of the bioreactor.

- (a) Foam breaker assemblies shall meet the requirements of SD-3.5.
- (b) Foam breakers with either double mechanical seals (Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-2) or magnetic couplings (Fig. SD-3.5.5-2) are recommended to isolate bioreactor contents from the environment.
- (c) Foam breaker seal or magnetic coupling components shall be designed for CIP and/or SIP as appropriate.

SD-5.1.1.5.3 Internal Coils

- (a) Internal coils should be avoided where possible.
- (b) Product-contact surfaces of internal coils require provisions for CIP and SIP.

SD-5.1.1.5.4 Baffles. Baffle assemblies shall meet the requirements of SD-3.5.

SD-5.1.1.5.5 Sprayballs/Devices/Wands. This section applies to sprayballs, wands, and other devices (see Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-1) that may be mounted in the bioreactor vessel for distributing cleaning solution during CIP operations.

- (a) Spray device assemblies shall meet the requirements of SD-3.4.2 and SD-3.9.
- (b) If not removed during processing, spray device assemblies shall be designed for SIP.
 - (1) The SIP operation shall direct or balance steam distribution to establish and maintain sterilization temperature within the spray device during the sterilization hold period.
 - (2) With the exception of a combination sparger/spray device, internal spray devices should be located above the bioreactor operating liquid level.
 - (3) If the bioreactor is sterilized with media in the vessel, and the spray device assembly extends or is located beneath the working level of the media, the SIP operation shall direct steam flow through the device into the vessel.

SD-5.1.1.6 Instrumentation

- (a) Instruments installed within the sterile envelope or boundary shall be designed for SIP. Consideration should be made in the design for instrument removal for calibration.
- (b) Instruments installed within the sterile envelope or boundary shall be designed for CIP or removed for COP. In the case of COP, blind caps or plugs should be provided to maintain the integrity of the system.
- (c) Temperature sensing elements should be installed in thermowells. Piping associated with in-line thermowells shall be sized to allow sufficient steam and condensate flow.

SD-5.1.2 Cell Disrupters

- (a) Product contact material shall not affect product quality or integrity.
- (b) The device shall be designed with the ability to optimize drainability.
- (c) The design shall incorporate non-shedding components and parts.
- (d) Safety rupture discs shall be oriented for drainability while maintaining system integrity and safety.
- (e) The disrupter shall be designed for ease of disassembly to allow for COP.

SD-5.1.3 Centrifuges

SD-5.1.3.1 General

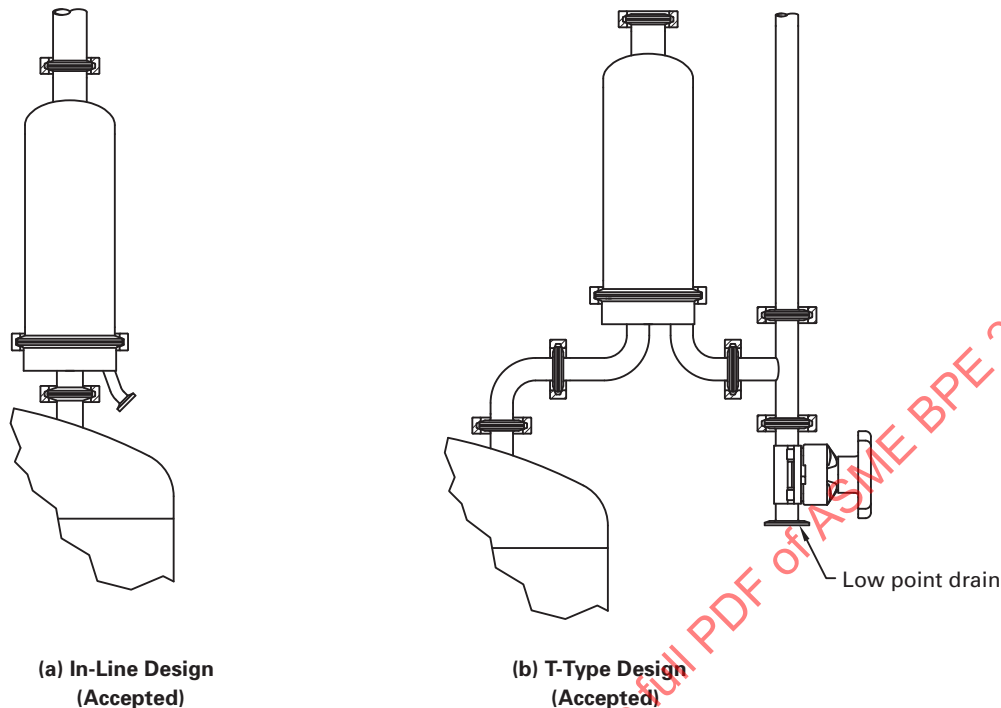
- (a) Centrifuges designed for CIP and SIP shall have all product contact surfaces accessible to the CIP and SIP fluids and be accessible for examination.
- (b) Centrifuges that are not designed for CIP or SIP should be easily disassembled and reassembled for cleaning and examination.
- (c) The owner/user shall inform the manufacturer of the cleaning requirements and the bioburden control method (e.g., temperature, pressure, chemistry).
- (d) All crevices and corners, etc., should be accessible for visual examination and cleaning.
- (e) Hexagon socket head cap screws shall not be used if they are in contact with the product.
- (f) No exposed lubricated bearings shall be allowed in product contact zones.
- (g) The centrifuge manufacturer should minimize all unwanted areas where solids may accumulate. These should include threads, gaps between parts, crevices, etc. The centrifuge manufacturer shall identify all areas of primary and incidental product contact that require manual cleaning in addition to CIP.

SD-5.1.3.2 Product Contact Surface Finishes (Process Contact/Wetted Surfaces)

- (a) Surface finish specifications shall comply with Parts SF and MJ of this Standard.
- (b) The owner/user and manufacturer shall agree on the required finishes for the various parts. The surface



Fig. SD-5.2.1-1 Tank/Vessel Vent Filters



finish of machined components or parts shall be specified by the manufacturer and agreed upon by the owner/user.

(c) Provisions should be made for inspection prior to assembly into larger assemblies of subcomponents and parts. Provisions shall be made to enhance the cleanability of the machined surface by use of sloping, draining, electropolishing of surface, or other means.

SD-5.2 Downstream Systems

SD-5.2.1 Filtration

(a) All wetted surfaces should be accessible for cleaning and examination.

(b) The filter housing shall be designed to allow for complete venting and draining. Liquid tee-type filter housings should be installed vertically, and vent type in-line filter housings should be installed vertically with the condensate drain port directed downward (see Fig. SD-5.2.1-1).

(c) All nozzle connections shall be of a hygienic design.

(d) Baffle plates, when used, should be cleanable and designed for SIP.

(e) The housing assembly, tube-sheets, end plates, and connections should be designed to prevent bypassing of the product around the element.

(f) Parts forming internal crevices should be easily disassembled to enable access for cleaning.

(g) Vent filters for hot process services should be heat traced or steam jacketed. Other methods for preventing

moisture accumulation in vent filters, such as vent heaters or condensers, could be considered.

SD-5.2.1.1 Filtration Systems

SD-5.2.1.1.1 Cleaning

(a) Filtration systems that are designed for cleaning in place shall be designed in accordance with SD-2.4.2 unless otherwise agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

(b) Tangential flow filtration elements may be designed for repeated use and cleaned along with the system. When multiple-use elements are cleaned in place, system design shall ensure suitable conditions (e.g., flow rates) to properly clean the filtration elements.

(c) Direct flow filtration elements are typically not reused and are not installed during the cleaning process.

SD-5.2.1.1.2 Sanitization. The owner/user is responsible for defining the sanitization requirements based upon the level of bioburden control required for the unit operation. All components and filter elements shall be either compatible with the selected sanitization agents and conditions, or capable of being removed or isolated prior to the sanitization process while maintaining a flow path through the system.

(a) *Chemical Sanitization.* Equipment intended to be chemically sanitized shall be designed to ensure contact between product contact surfaces and the sanitization solution.

(b) *Thermal Sanitization or Sterilization.* Temperature, flow direction, and differential pressure of the thermal

sanitization or sterilization process shall be defined by the owner/user. The properties of the filter elements shall be considered to confirm compatibility of the element with the exposure conditions of a thermal sanitization process.

SD-5.2.2 Micro/Ultrafiltration Systems

(a) Skid pumps designed for both process and CIP shall be designed to provide turbulent flow for cleaning. All process piping systems that include piping, tubing, and fluidic components shall be sloped for adequate drainage. For all low points in the system, a drain port shall be installed. A common drain port on the skid is preferred.

(b) Piping and equipment hold-up volume shall be minimized.

(c) Ultrafiltration cartridge housings shall be designed with connections and covers that will allow the unit to drain completely.

SD-5.2.2.1 Depth Filtration. [Reserved for future content]

SD-5.2.2.2 Tangential/Cross Flow Filtration.
[Reserved for future content]

SD-5.2.3 Chromatography. For this section, “system” is intended to cover the chromatography piping skid, not including the associated column.

SD-5.2.3.1 Cleaning. Chromatography systems shall be designed for cleaning in place. Systems should be designed in accordance with SD-3.1 unless otherwise agreed by owner/user and manufacturer.

SD-5.2.3.2 Sanitization

SD-5.2.3.2.1 Chemical Sanitization. Chemical sanitization processes are used to reduce bioburden. All product contact surfaces of system components shall either be compatible with the selected sanitization agents or be capable of being removed or isolated prior to the sanitization process. Chromatography systems are typically stored flooded with a sanitizing solution to maintain bioburden control.

SD-5.2.3.2.2 Thermal Sanitization. Chromatography systems may be designed for thermal sanitization. However, because it is generally not possible to perform thermal sanitization of columns, the requirement is often waived for chromatography systems. If a system is designed for thermal sanitization, components shall be designed for the specified conditions, or shall be removed or isolated prior to the sanitization process. Note that if items are removed for sanitization, they should be sanitized separately and reinstalled in a controlled environment to avoid contaminating the system.

SD-5.3 Process Support Systems

SD-5.3.1 Washers. [Reserved for future content]

SD-5.3.2 Steam Sterilizers/Autoclaves

SD-5.3.2.1 General. For this section, autoclaves and steam sterilizers shall be used synonymously. This section describes the requirements of autoclaves that are used in bioprocessing for the steam sterilization of hard, dry-wrapped, and liquid materials. Autoclave chambers are pressure vessels and shall be pressure and temperature rated per the owner/user’s design criteria with a minimum pressure rating of 25 psig at 266°F (1.7 barg at 130°C). The chambers shall also be vacuum rated.

For systems used in the processing of materials used in the European market, autoclaves may also be required to comply with Pressure Equipment Directive (PED) 97/23/EC and/or EN-285. Special conditions such as bio-seals may be required for autoclaves used in BSL-3 and BSL-4 applications. Please refer to the Biosafety in Microbiological and Medical Labs (BMBL) and Centers for Disease Control (CDC) guidelines for these special conditions.

This section does not pertain to pasteurizers, ETO (ethylene oxide), VHP (vaporized hydrogen peroxide), or ClO₂ (chlorine dioxide) type sterilization equipment.

The Manufacturer shall define the sterile boundary of the system.

SD-5.3.2.2 Cycle Types. Autoclaves should be capable of multiple cycle types for various load conditions. Autoclaves shall only be used to sterilize the types of goods for which they are designed. The most common load types are specified in SD-5.3.2.2.1 through SD-5.3.2.2.3.

SD-5.3.2.2.1 Hard Goods Cycles. Hard goods refer to goods such as metallic instruments, containers, and glassware. Effective removal of noncondensable gases is required for effective autoclaving of hard goods. Hard goods may be wrapped or unwrapped. Unwrapped goods can often be effectively autoclaved using either a single vacuum pull or gravity air displacement. These goods can sometimes be autoclaved at higher temperatures. Multiple vacuum pulse preconditioning is required for wrapped goods to ensure proper evacuation of noncondensable gases from both the autoclave chamber and autoclaved goods. Steam sterilizers used for the processing of wrapped or porous goods shall be able to pull vacuum to levels below 1 psia [69 mbar (a)] and maintain the vacuum with a maximum leak rate of 0.1 psi/5 min (6.9 mbar/5 min). Cooling, drying (pulse, vacuum) is an optional cycle step used to dry goods at the end of the autoclave cycle. Heated pulse drying is also recommended for the drying of porous goods such as rubber stoppers. Exhaust rates and heating rates should be adjustable for pressure-sensitive materials.

SD-5.3.2.2.2 Liquid Cycles. Forced air removal preconditioning is an optional cycle used to evacuate the noncondensable gases from the autoclave chamber. Liquid cooling cycles should be provided to efficiently



cool the autoclave chamber. Providing the chamber with overpressure helps prevent the liquid goods from boiling over during the cool down phase. Liquids can also be cooled by slow rate exhaust. Heating rates should be adjustable to help compensate for differences in heating profiles of items in mixed loads.

SD-5.3.2.2.3 Air Filter Sterilization. An independent air filter steam in place sterilization (SIP) cycle should be provided for the in situ sterilization of the chamber vent filters ensuring supply of sterile air for cool-down phases of autoclave loads.

SD-5.3.2.3 Components

SD-5.3.2.3.1 General

(a) *Materials of Construction.* Materials in contact with steam shall resist corrosion from steam and steam condensate. The materials shall not affect steam quality and shall not release any substances known to be toxic or that could adulterate the product. Piping/tubing and fittings shall be pressure and vacuum tight. The piping/tubing layout should be designed to eliminate dead-legs within the sterile boundary. Tubing within the sterile boundary should be orbital-welded stainless steel tubing where possible and shall comply with Part MJ (Table MJ-8.4-1) acceptance criteria. All process contact surfaces within the sterile boundary including tubing, chamber, and components shall be passivated.

The autoclave shall be enclosed with paneling that is resistant to corrosion and is cleanable.

(b) *Surface Finish.* The surface finish within the sterile boundary need not exceed $35 R_a \mu\text{in.}$ ($0.89 \mu\text{m}$). Electro-polishing is not required for steam sterilization systems.

(c) *Elastomers.* Elastomers shall comply with SG-3.1.1 (Service Temperature), SG-3.1.2 (Service Pressure), and SG-3.3 (Seal Construction). Elastomers shall be resistant to corrosion and to chemical and thermal degradation. Elastomers used in autoclave applications shall be capable of withstanding pressures of a minimum of 25 psig at 266°F (1.7 barg at 130°C). Seals should meet the testing requirements specified in SG-3.1.8.

(d) *Insulation.* External surfaces should be insulated to minimize heat transmission.

SD-5.3.2.3.2 Doors. Autoclave door(s) shall be accessible, cleanable, and replaceable, and should be capable of undergoing inspection without dismantling. The door seal shall be resistant to clean steam and clean steam condensate. The door on the non-sterile side shall be capable of reopening after closing without undergoing a cycle. The door(s) shall not be capable of opening during a sterilization cycle. The doors shall be constructed of materials that are resistant to clean steam and clean steam condensate. For multiple-door systems, the doors shall be interlocked to allow the opening of only one door at a time. The unloading ("sterile-side") door shall remain sealed in standby mode. Refer to Part

SG for specifications of seals used in bioprocessing.

SD-5.3.2.3.3 Sterile Air/Vent Filters. Where the sterilization cycle requires admission of air into the chamber, the air should be filtered with a sterilizing filter ($0.22 \mu\text{m}$ or less). The filter element shall be replaceable. Provisions for the steam in place (SIP) of the vent filter elements should be provided.

SD-5.3.2.3.4 Steam Traps. Refer to SD-3.12 for requirements of steam traps.

SD-5.3.2.3.5 Loading Carts/Trays. Carts and trays exposed to clean steam shall be constructed of materials resistant to clean steam and clean steam condensate. Carts, trays, and chamber shall be accessible or removable and cleanable.

SD-5.3.2.3.6 Valves. Valves and sealing materials located within the sterile boundary shall comply with SG-3.3.2.3. Valves within the sterile boundary are typically only exposed to clean steam service and chemical(s) used during passivation. Exposure to these conditions should be considered when selecting a valve type for this application.

SD-5.3.2.3.7 Check Valves. Provisions to prevent back-siphoning into the service feed systems should be considered.

SD-5.3.2.3.8 Jacket. The jacket shall be constructed using materials that are resistant to corrosion and degradation from steam or clean steam and clean steam condensate, as applicable.

SD-5.3.2.4 Other Features

SD-5.3.2.4.1 Drain Temperature. Waste to drain temperature shall comply with owner/user specifications. The owner/user must specify discharge temperature requirements to the manufacturer.

SD-5.3.2.4.2 Instrumentation. Autoclave pressure and temperature shall be displayed at all doors. All instruments within the sterile boundary should be of hygienic design. Instruments shall be capable of being calibrated and replaced. The instrumentation shall include the following:

(a) *Temperature.* Independent temperature elements (one or two for monitoring and recording and an independent one for controlling temperature) shall be provided. The chamber temperature recording element should be located in the chamber drain. Each temperature element shall be accurate to $\pm 0.1^\circ\text{C}$ (0.18°F) with a sensor response time < 5 sec. The element installation shall not affect the maximum leak rate. The temperature elements shall be temperature and clean steam resistant.

(b) *Pressure/Vacuum.* Pressure/vacuum instruments shall be provided. The pressure instruments shall monitor the chamber and jacket pressures. Provisions for



recording chamber pressure during active autoclave cycles shall be included.

(c) *Date/Time*. Provisions for recording the date and time during an autoclave cycle shall be included.

(d) Recording may be achieved by paper or 21CFR Part 11 compliant electronic means.

SD-5.3.3 CIP Systems and Design

SD-5.3.3.1 General

SD-5.3.3.1.1 Scope and Definitions

(a) The following terms are defined for this section:

(1) *Clean-in-place (CIP) system*: a system used in the preparation, distribution, delivery, and subsequent removal of cleaning solutions to soiled equipment.

(2) *CIP cycle*: the executed recipe of rinses, washes, and air blows used to clean soiled equipment.

(3) *CIP circuit*: the sum of paths within a process unit operation that are cleaned as part of a single CIP cycle (e.g., bioreactor, buffer hold vessel).

(4) *CIP path*: the specific destination contacted with cleaning solution/rinse water during a CIP cycle (e.g., spray device path, inoculum line path, addition line path). Multiple paths within a circuit may be cleaned simultaneously.

(b) All in-circuit components of the CIP system (e.g., filter housings, pumps, vessels, heat exchangers, transfer panels, instrumentation, valving, piping) shall be designed to be cleanable, drainable, and of hygienic design appropriate for use in contact with process fluids per the applicable sections of this Standard.

SD-5.3.3.1.2 CIP System Operating Capabilities

(a) The CIP system shall be capable of delivering and subsequently removing cleaning solutions to soiled equipment in a verifiable and reproducible manner.

(b) The CIP system shall be capable of removing process soils to an owner/user determined acceptance criteria.

(c) The CIP system shall be capable of removing cleaning chemicals to a verifiable amount characteristic of the final rinse solution.

SD-5.3.3.1.3 CIP System Functionality

(a) A CIP system is a distributed system of properly integrated components including the following:

(1) CIP skid (CIP preparation equipment) designed to prepare the cleaning solution. The CIP skid should be designed to deliver feed water, inject cleaning chemicals, heat, and supply the cleaning solution to the soiled equipment. The skid shall also be designed to remove all residual cleaning chemicals added during the cycle.

(2) CIP distribution equipment designed to transport the cleaning solution to and from the soiled equipment. The distribution equipment may also return the solution to the CIP skid, if applicable.

(3) Spray devices (if applicable) designed to deliver the cleaning solutions throughout the soiled process equipment.

(4) Instrumentation and controls architecture (if applicable) designed to communicate, monitor, and synchronize the CIP cycle, and report CIP variables.

(b) The following cleaning variables should be considered in the design of the CIP system and CIP cycle:

(1) time of exposure (contact time) to wash and rinse solutions

(2) temperature of wash and rinse solutions

(3) chemical concentration of wash solutions

(4) fluid hydraulics

(c) A CIP system should include the capability to control directly or indirectly (monitor and record if applicable) the following CIP variables:

(1) timing of CIP cycle

(2) path being cleaned (e.g., valve position indication, pressure/flow verification, manual setup verification)

(3) CIP supply temperature (or return if applicable)

(4) conductivity, volume of cleaning chemical added, or cleaning chemical concentration for wash solutions

(5) final rinse conductivity or residual cleaning chemical concentration

(6) CIP supply flow rate

(7) totalized flow (if timing not monitored)

(8) CIP supply pressure

(9) spray device rotation (if used)

(10) interruption or unacceptable decrease in flow to a path

(11) pressure of clean compressed air supply (if used in air blow)

SD-5.3.3.2 CIP Skid Design

(a) For this section, a CIP skid consists of a wash and/or rinse tank with all requisite valves, pumps, and instrumentation. Provision for separation of feed waters and wash solutions should be considered. CIP skids may be located in a fixed, centralized location or may be portable and used adjacent to the soiled equipment.

(b) The CIP skid design should consider the CIP circuit volume for water consumption, location of skid in facility (if fixed), chemical consumption, waste effluent, and energy required to clean a given circuit.

(c) The wash/rinse tank(s) shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.4. The tank(s) shall be designed for cleanability per SD-5.3.3.4 and shall be equipped with a spray device(s) per SD-3.9.

(d) If used on wash/rinse tanks, a hydrophobic vent filter shall be designed to prevent moisture accumulation in the vent filters and shall be fabricated per SD-5.2.1.

(e) Heat exchange equipment shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.6.1.



**Table SD-5.3.3.3-1 Flow Rates to Achieve
5 ft/sec (1.52 m/s)**

Sanitary Tube Size				Flow Rate	
O.D.		I.D.		gpm	Lpm
in.	mm	in.	mm		
0.5	12.7	0.37	9.4	1.7	6.3
0.75	19.1	0.62	15.7	4.7	18
1.0	25.4	0.87	22.1	9.3	35
1.5	38.1	1.37	34.8	23	87
2	50.8	1.87	47.5	42.8	162

(f) The CIP skid should have flow control, either via pump output or by means of flow control valves.

(g) CIP supply pumps shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.3.2. The pump design should consider the handling of a gas/liquid mixture.

(h) The design should consider hazardous operation of cycle considering choice of cleaning chemicals. Chemical segregation, spill control, addition handling, material compatibility, secondary containment, and personnel safety should be considered.

SD-5.3.3.3 CIP Flow Rate Guidelines for Process Lines

(a) Pipeline should be fully flooded and ensure turbulent flow during cleaning.

(b) CIP shall be performed at a flow rate that maintains a fully flooded process line and ensures turbulent flow.

(c) The flow direction, line orientation, line size, and presence and orientation of branches, fittings, and other equipment can have a significant influence on the flow rate required to fully flood a process line. Consequently, designers should take these into account when determining suitable flow paths and CIP flow rates.

(d) CIP flow rate requirements should not be considered exclusively of other CIP process variables.

(e) Table SD-5.3.3.3-1 details flow rate recommendations that should ensure air removal in straight horizontal and vertical lines for line sizes up to 2 in. These flow rates correspond to a flow velocity of 5 ft/sec (1.52 m/s), which is characterized by turbulent flow for all CIP solutions that are within the scope of this section and all line sizes referenced in Part DT.

SD-5.3.3.4 Design Guidelines for Cleaning Process Vessels

(a) Process vessels should be cleaned via internal spray device(s) designed to consistently expose all internal surfaces to the cleaning variables described in SD-5.3.3.

(b) The use and application of a particular spray device design to satisfy these requirements is to be

decided by the owner/user. Spray devices shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.9 (also see Fig. SD-3.9.2.1-1 for static spray device design considerations).

(c) Dished-head vertical vessels should have cleaning solutions delivered with the majority of flow directed toward the upper head and sidewall area at the upper knuckle radius. Cylindrical horizontal vessels should have cleaning solutions delivered with the majority of flow directed toward the upper one-third of the vessel.

(1) If a static sprayball is used, gravity provides a solution sheeting over the side wall and bottom head (vertical vessels) or lower surfaces (horizontal vessels).

(2) If a dynamic spray device is used, the device may directly spray areas throughout the vessel or rely on sheeting action.

(3) Figure SD-3.9.2-2 details ranges of flow recommendations for static sprayballs on vertical process vessels under typical cleaning loads. The recommendations in Fig. SD-3.9.2-2 ensure sufficient coverage.

(4) The criteria to ensure sufficient coverage on horizontal process vessels vary with geometry and size.

(5) Sufficient exposure shall be confirmed by coverage testing per SD-6.1 at site of equipment manufacture and/or installation.

(d) Spray device design and location shall ensure appurtenances such as manways, baffles, dip tubes, agitator impellers, and nozzles are contacted with cleaning solution. Some appurtenances may require additional provisions for cleaning.

(e) Spray devices only ensure coverage of the exterior of installed appurtenances and equipment. If not removed during CIP, cleaning solutions shall flow through appurtenances to clean their interior.

(f) The fluid level should be minimized in the process vessel during CIP. Proper hydraulic balance (supply and return flow) of the CIP circuit and sizing of the bottom outlet valve should be considered to minimize fluid level.

(g) Vortex formation during CIP may adversely affect the operation. The installation of a vortex breaker may be required.

(h) Vortex breaker design is to be decided by the owner/user. Vortex breaker surfaces shall be sloped to eliminate pooling during CIP and positioned to not adversely affect the hydraulic balance of the CIP circuit.

(i) For process vessels equipped with an agitator, the impeller should be rotated at an appropriate speed during the CIP cycle.

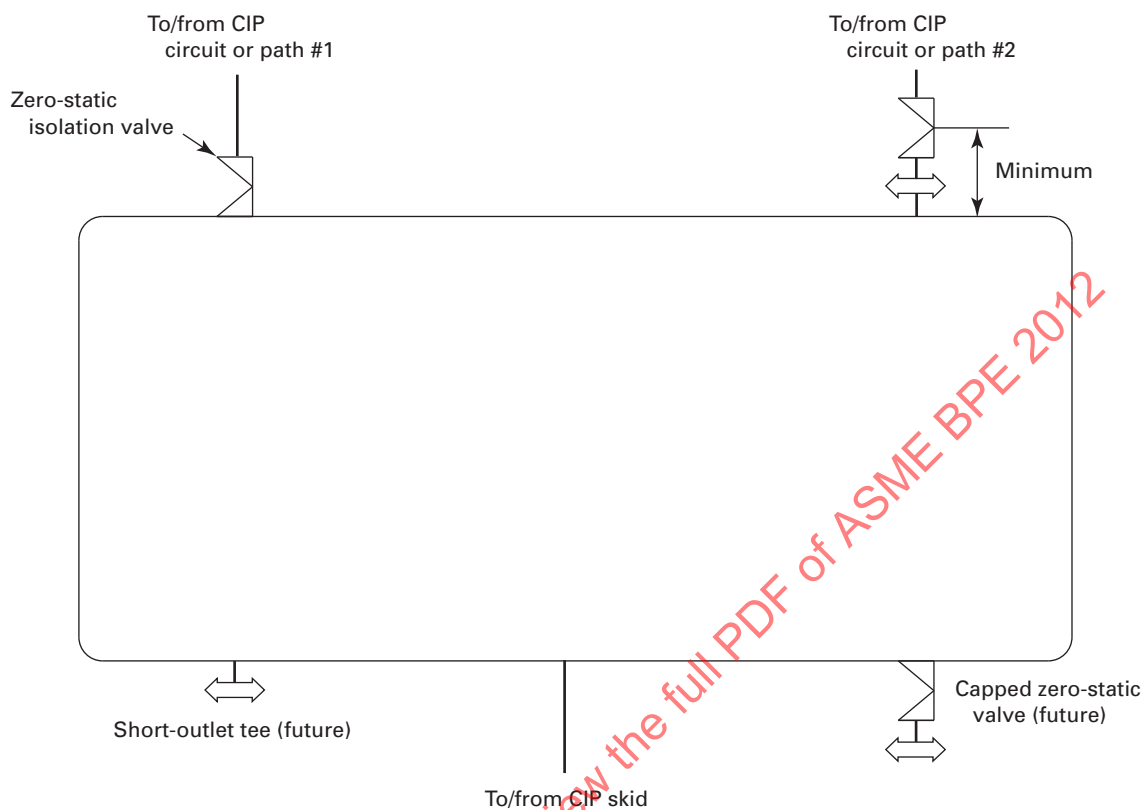
SD-5.3.3.5 CIP Distribution Design

SD-5.3.3.5.1 CIP Distribution Guidelines (Supply and Return)

(a) *General*

(1) The use and application of a particular distribution design or combination of designs is to be decided



Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-1 CIP Looped Header (Supply or Return)

by the owner/user. SD-5.3.3.5 discusses design and installation considerations for a series of CIP distribution options.

(2) All CIP distribution designs shall be sloped for drainability as per SD-2.4.3. Slope designation GSD2 is recommended.

(3) The use of looped headers, transfer panels, and valve types (e.g., divert, mix-proof, multiport, zerostatic, and diaphragm) should all be considered in the design of the CIP distribution system.

(b) *Looped Headers* (See Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-1)

(1) For this section, a CIP distribution looped header shall be defined as a piping ring surrounded by circuit-specific isolation valves. The entire ring path is cleaned during a CIP cycle.

(2) The dimension from the looped header to the isolation valve weir or seat should conform to SD-3.1.2.2 (see Fig. SD-3.1.2.2-1 for details). The use of short-outlet tees or zero-static valves is to be decided by owner/user.

(3) Future connections (if applicable) on the looped header should utilize capped short-outlet tees or capped installed zero-static valves.

(4) Looped header connections should be oriented horizontally when used in CIP return applications.

(5) CIP supply header design should provide for adequate velocity in parallel cleaning paths (e.g., line size reduction in loop header).

(c) *Transfer Panels*. Transfer panels shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.7.1.

(d) *Multiport Valves*. For this section, a CIP distribution multiport valve shall be defined as a multiple valve assembly fabricated as a single body to minimize distances and maximize drainability [see SG-3.3.2.3(a) for details].

(e) *Zero-Static Chains* (See Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-2)

(1) For this section, a CIP distribution zero-static chain shall be defined as a manifold of circuit-specific zero-static valves.

(2) Provision shall be made to flush the manifold in a zero-static chain.

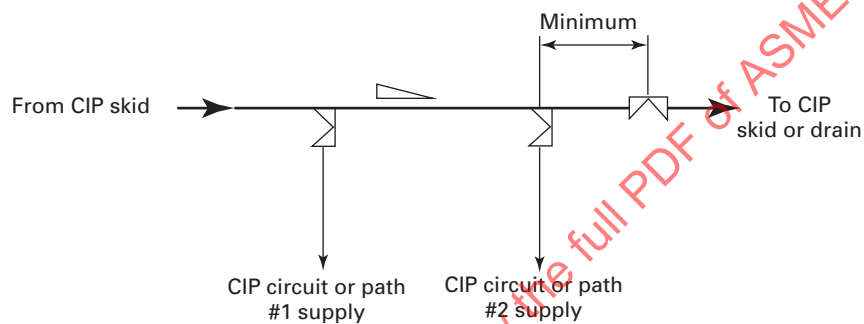
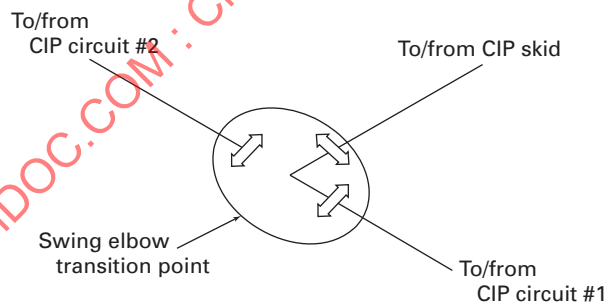
(f) *Swing Elbows and Piping Spools* (See Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-3)

(1) For this section, a swing elbow or piping spool shall be defined as a removable section of pipe used to provide a positive break between two paths.

(2) Swing elbows or piping spools shall be connected to adequately supported piping to maintain line slope and connection alignment.

SD-5.3.3.5.2 CIP Distribution Piping

(a) The distribution piping and components in a recirculated CIP circuit shall be hygienic for design and fabrication as per SD-3.1.2 and SD-2.4.3.

Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-2 Zero-Static Chain**Fig. SD-5.3.3.5.1-3 Swing Elbow Arrangement**

(b) The distribution piping and components in a once through CIP circuit or path (not recirculated) shall be hygienic for design and fabrication as per SD-3.1.2 and SD-2.4.3 upstream of the location of cleaning performance verification.

(c) CIP supply piping should be sized to ensure that the fluid flow meets or exceeds the guidelines stated in sections SD-5.3.2.3 and SD-5.3.2.4.

(d) The distribution circuits shall be designed such that fluid flow will maintain a positive pressure relative to the process drain, preventing backflow.

(e) CIP return piping shall be designed to maintain hydraulic balance (supply and return flow) of the CIP circuit.

SD-5.3.3.5.3 CIP Return Pumps

(a) CIP return pumps (if required) shall be designed and fabricated per SD-3.3.2. Centrifugal pumps are preferred for CIP return applications. If a gas/liquid mixture is anticipated, then hygienic liquid ring pumps are recommended.

(b) When a vessel is included in the circuit, CIP return pumps should be placed as close as possible to the vessel bottom outlet and at the low point of the circuit.

(c) Provision shall be made to flush through the casing drain of CIP return pumps.

(d) CIP return pumps shall be designed to maintain hydraulic balance (supply and return flow) of the CIP circuit.

SD-5.3.3.5.4 CIP Return Eductors. For this section, a CIP return eductor shall be defined as a device that uses a motive fluid to create a pressure differential that returns the CIP solution.

(a) CIP return eductors shall be designed and installed to be drainable.

(b) CIP return eductors shall be designed to be removable for examination.

(c) Special design factors shall be considered when using CIP return eductors (e.g., vapor pressure, return line size).

SD-5.3.4 Ultra High Temperature Sterilizers.

[Reserved for future content]

SD-5.3.5 Media Prep. [Reserved for future content]

(12) SD-6 TESTING

All testing shall be performed using systems that avoid surface contamination of the equipment.

There are two types of testing and quality assurances performed: performance/calibration and sterility/cleaning. All testing and quality assurance documentation will be stamped with the date and time. For each test documentation sheet, signatures of the test personnel and a supervisor shall be required, confirming the test results.

SD-6.1 Spray Device Coverage Test

The purpose of a spray device coverage test is to document proper fluid coverage of the internal surface and parts of a tank or piece of equipment. The results give information about fluid coverage, a requirement for cleanability. All internal instruments shall be installed (e.g., agitators, level probes, and dip pipes) during the spray device coverage testing. If it is not practical to conduct the test with all interior equipment in place, dummy shafts and dip tubes may be used to check shadowing. Cleaning of impellers may have to be verified during production CIP validation (i.e., hot WFI, cleaning agents, etc.). Sprayballs shall be drainable, shall provide hole patterns to ensure that complete coverage is attained, and shall be properly manufactured to minimize corrosion.

The test shall be performed by spraying a dye (e.g., riboflavin) on the entire interior of the equipment product/process contact walls, nozzles, and miscellaneous surfaces. The test may be performed with ambient temperature water and before the riboflavin dye has dried. This test will confirm coverage of the sprayballs, but may not verify cleanability. Cleanability should be checked using the full CIP protocol at the facility where the vessel is installed including cleansers and temperatures. Water used for the following rinse shall meet the requirements of SD-5.3:

- (a) pressure
- (b) flow (per spray device)
- (c) burst duration and delay sequence between bursts

Acceptance shall be determined when all (100%) of the dye has been removed via the rinse. This shall be visually determined using an ultraviolet lamp, or by other verification methods as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

SD-6.2 Cleaning, Steaming, and Bioburden Control Testing

Cleaning, steaming, and bioburden control testing (in addition to spray device testing) shall be as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer, and in accordance with accepted industry standards.

SD-6.3 Hydrostatic Test

Where applicable, all product contact surfaces shall be hydrostatically tested with clean purified or deionized water filtered at 0.2 μm . If purified or deionized water is not available, then the water quality for testing shall be agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

SD-6.4 Vessel Drainability Test

A drainability test for vessels shall be conducted as agreed to by all parties. As a proposed test procedure, the following shall be considered: The bottom head of the vessel shall be leveled with the outlet nozzle flange face (to within a tolerance agreed to) and shall be filled



approximately to the weld seam. The outlet valve shall be opened, and the vessel shall be allowed to drain by gravity. There shall be no puddles of water left on the bottom of the vessel greater than 5 mm in diameter (or as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer). If there are any puddles greater than the agreed-upon diameter, a thumb or soft rubber dowel is to be pushed into the center of the puddle, displacing the water. If water returns to the puddle, that area shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the owner/user.

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012



Part DT

Dimensions and Tolerances for Process Components

DT-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide requirements that ensure process component fit-up and compatibility.

This Part specifies dimensions, tolerances, and all supplementary conditions for process components.

DT-2 PRESSURE RATING

Fittings manufactured to this Part shall meet or exceed the pressure ratings shown in Table DT-2-1, and shall have an ambient temperature bursting strength of at least three times the 100°F rated internal working pressure as shown in Table DT-2-1 (see also Fig. DT-2-1).

Fabricated components employing welds shall be rated at 100% of the above ratings.

Valves manufactured to this Part shall be rated per the manufacturer's marked pressure and temperature recommendations.

DT-3 WALL THICKNESS

The nominal wall thickness of the fittings and process components at the point of joining shall be the same as the tube to which they are welded. The thickness of the weld ends shall conform with the tolerances listed in Tables DT-3-1 and DT-3-2.

After fabrication and surface treatment, the wall thickness in any formed part of the fitting or process component, beyond the control portion as defined in DT-7, shall be a minimum of 65% of the nominal wall thickness. For guidelines regarding all shop and field welds, refer to Part MJ. All welds shall meet the provisions of MJ-8 and Fig. MJ-8.4.1.

DT-4 DIMENSIONS

Process components are designed for use with nominal outside diameter (O.D.) tubing for the sizes listed in Table DT-4-1. The dimensions are accompanied with soft metric conversions from the U.S. Customary units, and are listed for reference only. For nominal metric size tubing and fittings, refer to the appropriate international standards.

DT-4.1 Fitting Dimensions

Dimensions for fittings that are governed by this Standard are grouped and categorized into tables.

All sizes shown in these tables are nominal O.D. tube sizes.

All automatic weld end fittings shall have minimum tangent lengths per Table DT-4.1-1. The tangent length, T , is defined as the straight length measured from the welding end.

The categorized groups in DT-4.1.1 through DT-4.1.5 designate specific fitting dimensions.

DT-4.1.1 Elbows/Bends. Refer to Tables DT-4.1.1-1 through DT-4.1.1-8.

DT-4.1.2 Tees/Crosses. Refer to Tables DT-4.1.2-1 through DT-4.1.2-11.

DT-4.1.3 Reducers. Refer to Tables DT-4.1.3-1 through DT-4.1.3-3.

DT-4.1.4 Ferrules. Refer to Table DT-4.1.4-1.

DT-4.1.5 Caps. Refer to Tables DT-4.1.5-1 and DT-4.1.5-2.

DT-4.2 Nonstandard Fitting Dimensions

Fittings not specifically described in Tables DT-4.1.1-1 through DT-4.1.5-2 may be constructed using combinations of centerline-to-end dimensions from the tables.

For tees and crosses, use Tables DT-4.1.2-4 and DT-4.1.2-8 for standard clamp leg lengths, Tables DT-4.1.2-2 and DT-4.1.2-7 for short outlet branch clamp lengths, Table DT-4.1.2-3 for short outlet run clamp lengths, and Table DT-4.1.2-1 for weld end lengths. Consideration shall be made for clamp clearances when fabricating fittings not depicted in Tables DT-4.1.1-1 through DT-4.1.5-2.

DT-4.3 Special Angle Fittings Dimensions

Special angle fittings can be offered if in accordance with all DT tables, with the exception of "O" (off angle) in Table DT-3-1. Elbows furnished to this Standard shall not be mitered.

DT-4.4 Valve Dimensions

The dimensions of the valve or valve fabrication shall conform to manufacturer's standards, or as agreed to by the purchaser and manufacturer.

Standard dimensions for valve weld end connections covered by this Standard are given in Table DT-4.4.1-1. All sizes shown are nominal O.D. tube sizes.

The categorized group in DT-4.4.1 designates specific valve dimensions.



DT-4.4.1 Diaphragm Valves. Refer to Table DT-4.4.1-1.

DT-5 MATERIALS

Materials used in the manufacture of fittings and other process components shall conform to one of the material specifications listed in Part MM.

DT-6 TESTS

Hydrostatic testing of each fitting is not required in this Standard; however, fittings shall be capable of withstanding a hydrostatic test pressure of 1.5 times the pressure rating shown in Table DT-2-1 at 100°F (38°C).

DT-7 TOLERANCES

Tables DT-3-1, DT-3-2, DT-4-1, and DT-7-1 list the required tolerances for fittings and process components depicted by this Standard. For tubing tolerances, refer to ASTM A270, Supplement 2. Table DT-7-2 lists the required tolerances for transfer panel nozzles and jumpers.

These tolerances shall apply after heat and surface treatment.

The control portion of the fitting or process components (refer to C in the Table DT-3-1 illustration) is defined as the length from the welding end over which tolerances for wall thickness and O.D. are maintained. The length of the control portion is fixed for all sizes at 0.75 in. (19 mm). For exceptions, see Table DT-4.1.4-1 for ferrule lengths and Table DT-4.1.5-1 for automatic tube weld caps.

DT-8 WELD ENDS

Where Type 316L is specified, the material of the automatic weld end shall conform to the requirements for chemical composition as prescribed in MM-5.1.1. For nonautomatic weld ends, the chemical composition shall meet the requirements of the applicable ASTM specification.

Automatic weld ends furnished to this Standard shall be furnished with square-cut ends, free from burrs and breaks. All weld end connections for valves shall have a minimum unobstructed weld end length equal to or greater than the minimum control portion as per DT-7.

DT-9 HYGIENIC CLAMP UNIONS

DT-9.1 Typical Hygienic Clamp Unions

Typical hygienic clamp unions are illustrated in Fig. SG-2.2.2-1, illustrations (a) through (d) and include the ferrules, gasket seal, and clamp.

DT-9.2 Hygienic Gaskets

Fittings and process components with hygienic clamp unions furnished to this Standard shall employ gasket materials and gasket designs that meet the requirements of Table DT-2-1 and Part SG. Gasket seal performance in the clamp union shall be based on the principles of SG-4 and shall comply with the dimensional requirements of Fig. SG-4.2-1, illustration (d) when the union assembly is tightened to an amount recommended by the manufacturer. Gasket seal width as shown in Fig. SG-4.2-1, illustration (d) shall be a maximum of 0.085 in. in the uncompressed condition prior to installation.

DT-9.3 Connections

Connections meeting all dimensions of Table DT-7-1 are considered interchangeable. Alternative sealing designs are acceptable, provided dimensions A, B, C, and D of Table DT-7-1, as well as A and B of Table DT-9.3-1, are met. All connections shall be made in accordance with SG-3.3.2.

DT-9.4 Hygienic Clamps

Hygienic clamps shall be designed and manufactured through the entire range of all union component dimensional tolerances to accomplish the following:

- (a) completely retain all components in a fully sealed state to meet the requirements of DT-2
- (b) maintain proper component alignment during installation and operation per SG-3.3.2.1
- (c) cause the ferrules to be aligned to meet a uniform nominal gap per Fig. SG-2.2.2-1, illustration (d) when installed and tightened to the proper design specifications
- (d) cause the gauging and contact diameter between the ferrules and the mating surfaces of the clamp to occur at the gauging diameter (A) specified in Table DT-9.3-1 when installed and tightened to achieve the nominal gap per Fig. SG-2.2.2-1, illustration (d).

NOTE: As this is a nominal design condition, manufacturing tolerances of the components will cause some variation in the actual gauging and contact diameter at assembly.

- (e) avoid any interference with any clamp union components or itself that would prevent proper assembly when assembled with all components (see Fig. DT-2-1)

DT-10 MINIMUM EXAMINATION REQUIREMENTS

DT-10.1 Visual Inspection

For fittings and process components including, but not limited to, tubing, valves, pumps, filter housings, and instrumentation, each item shall be visually examined for the following criteria, as a minimum. It is not a requirement that the packaged components be removed



from the original packaging, provided the following can be verified:

- (a) manufacturer's name, logo, or trademark
- (b) alloy/material type
- (c) description including size and configuration
- (d) heat number/code
- (e) product contact surface finish symbol
- (f) reference to ASME BPE
- (g) pressure rating for valves
- (h) no damage or other noncompliances

DT-10.2 Documentation Verification

Refer to Part GR for documentation verification requirements.

DT-10.3 Physical Examination

For this paragraph, a "lot" shall be defined as a specific combination of size, configuration, and heat number for fittings and process components including, but not limited to, tubing, valves, pumps, filter housings, and instrumentation in a single shipment.

If required by the owner/user, a percentage of each lot may be physically examined by the manufacturer, installing contractor, inspection contractor, or owner/user for the following criteria:

- (a) wall thickness (for weld ends only)
- (b) outside diameter (O.D.) (for weld ends only)
- (c) surface finish (as specified)
- (d) visual

When required examination reveals a defect(s), an additional 10% of that lot shall be examined for the specific defect(s). If this examination reveals another defect, an additional 10% of that lot shall be examined for the specific defect(s). If additional defects are found, perform 100% examination or reject the balance of the lot. All examined and accepted material in this lot may be retained and utilized.

The completed Material Examination Log shall describe all of the features listed above. The results of the examination shall be recorded on a Material Examination Log. This documentation may be one line item for the total quantity of a particular size, configuration, and heat number. The information required to be on the Material Examination Log may be in any format, written or tabular, to fit the needs of the manufacturer, installing contractor, inspection contractor, and owner/user as long as all information is included or referenced.

Refer to Forms MEL-1 and MEL-2, which have been provided as a guide for the Material Examination Log (see Nonmandatory Appendix B).

DT-11 MARKING

DT-11.1 Fitting Marking Information

Except as specified in DT-11.1.1, each fitting and process component shall be permanently marked by any

suitable method not injurious to the product contact surface to show the following:

- (a) heat number/code traceable to material test report for each product contact surface component
- (b) material type
- (c) manufacturer's name, logo, or trademark
- (d) reference to this Standard (BPE)
- (e) product contact surface designation for the appropriate BPE specification

DT-11.1.1 Exceptions

(a) Where the size of the fitting or process component does not permit complete marking, the identification marks may be omitted in reverse of the order presented above. However, the heat number and material type shall be marked on the fitting or process component.

(b) Where the size of the fitting or process component does not permit complete marking of the heat number, a manufacturer's code number is acceptable under this Standard.

DT-11.2 Valve Marking Information

Except as specified in DT-11.2.1, each valve shall be permanently marked by any suitable method not injurious to the product contact surface to show the following:

- (a) heat number/code traceable to material test report for all wetted metal component parts of the valve or valve fabrication, if more than one heat is used
- (b) valve pressure rating
- (c) material type
- (d) manufacturer's name, logo, or trademark
- (e) reference to this Standard (BPE)
- (f) product contact surface designation for the appropriate BPE specification

DT-11.2.1 Exceptions

(a) Where the size of the valve does not permit complete marking, the identification marks may be omitted in reverse of the order presented above. However, the heat number, valve pressure rating, and material type shall be marked on the valve.

(b) Where the size of the valve does not permit complete marking of the heat number, a manufacturer's code number is acceptable under this Standard.

DT-12 PACKAGING

All end connections of fittings or process components shall be protected with end caps. Additionally, fittings shall be sealed in transparent bags or shrink wrapped. Additional packaging for process components, other than fittings, shall be as agreed to by the purchaser and manufacturer.



Table DT-2-1 Hygienic Unions: Rated Internal Working Pressure

Temperature		< 3 in. Clamp		3 in. Clamp		4 in. Clamp		6 in. Clamp	
°F	°C	psig	kPa	psig	kPa	psig	kPa	psig	kPa
100	38	200	1 379	200	1 379	200	1 379	150	1 034
250	121	165	1 138	150	1 034	125	862	75	517

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) These pressure ratings apply to the hygienic clamp and gasket. For information on pressure ratings, see the manufacturer's guidelines for the components.
- (b) For installation practices, refer to Fig. DT-2-1.



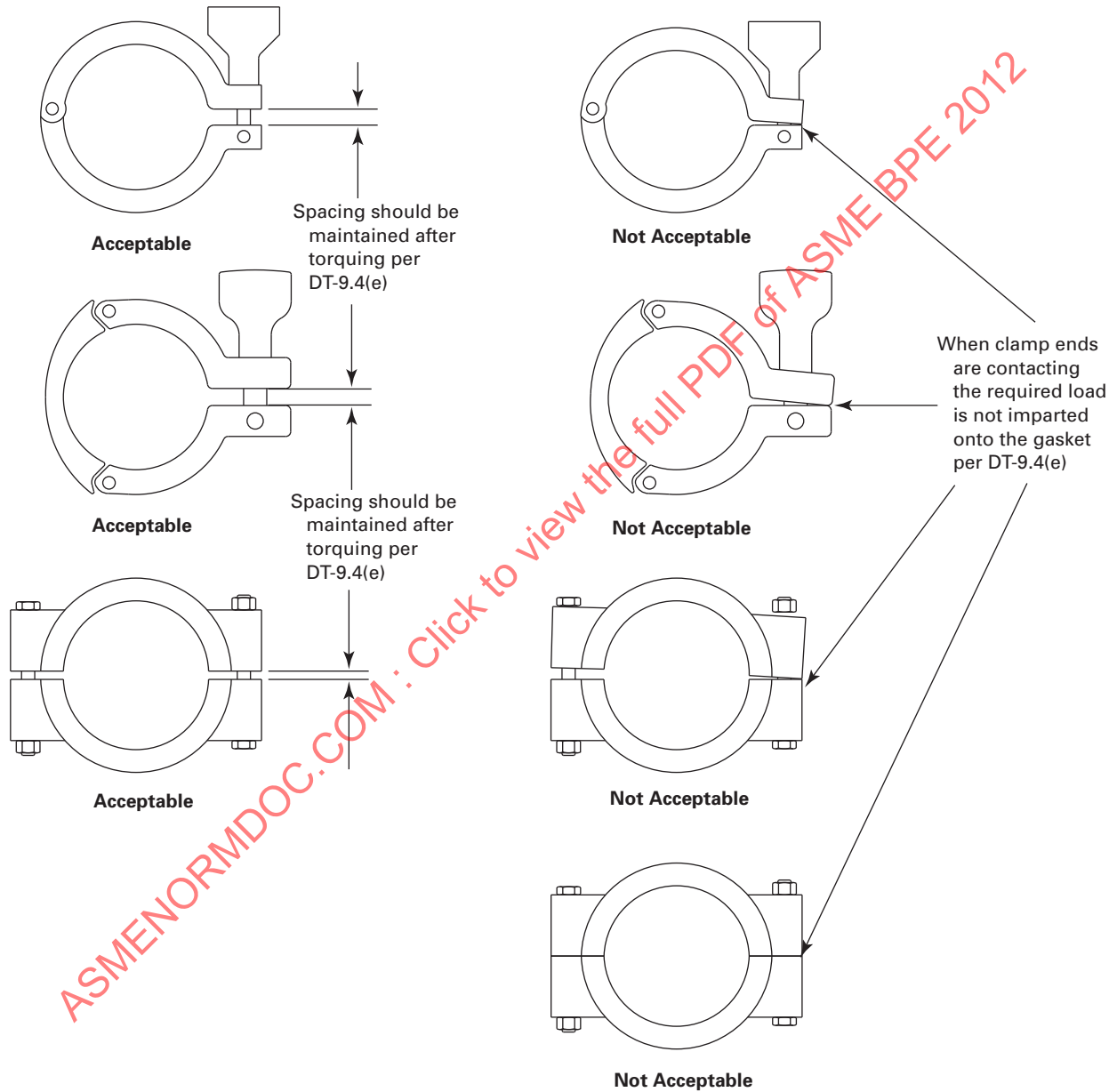
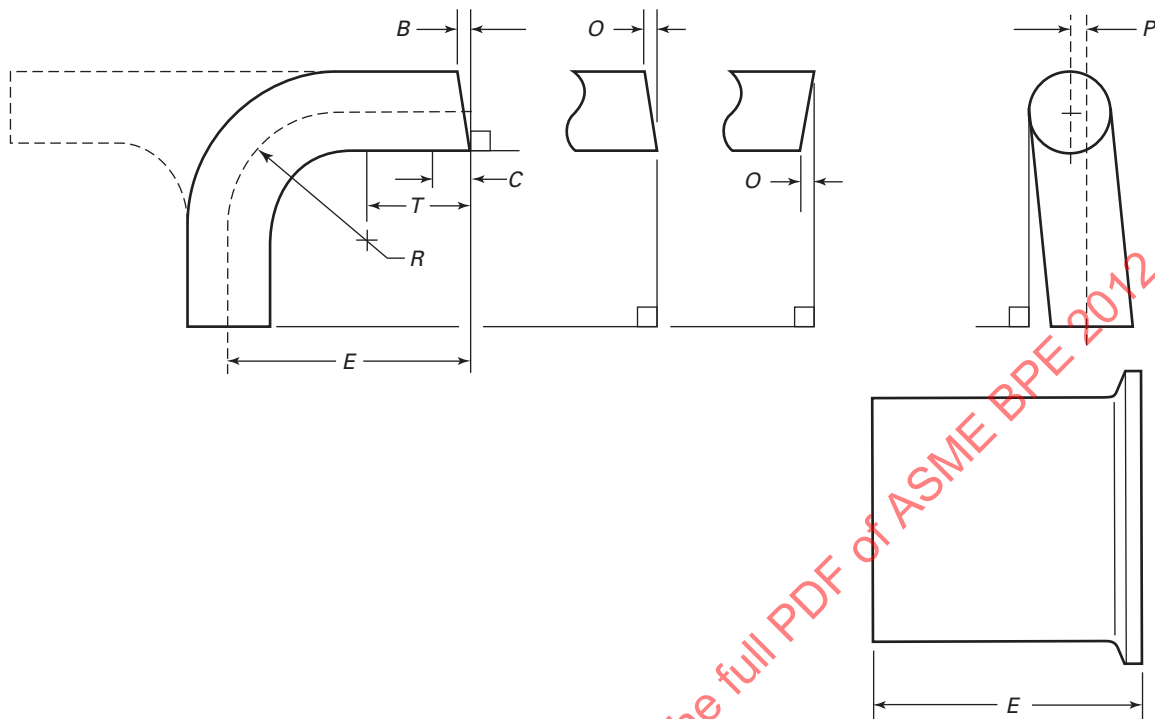
Fig. DT-2-1 Clamp Conditions at Installation

Table DT-3-1 Final Tolerances for Mechanically Polished Fittings and Process Components

Nominal Size, in.	O.D.		Wall Thickness		Squareness Face to Tangent, <i>B</i>		Off Angle, <i>O</i>		Equivalent Angle (for <i>O</i>) deg	Off Plane, <i>P</i>		Centerline Radius (CLR), <i>R</i>	
	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm		in.	mm	in.	mm
1/4	± 0.005	± 0.13	+0.003/-0.004	+0.08/-0.10	0.005	0.13	0.009	0.23	2.1	0.030	0.76	0.563	14.30
3/8	± 0.005	± 0.13	+0.003/-0.004	+0.08/-0.10	0.005	0.13	0.012	0.30	1.8	0.030	0.76	1.125	28.58
1/2	± 0.005	± 0.13	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.005	0.13	0.014	0.36	1.6	0.030	0.76	1.125	28.58
3/4	± 0.005	± 0.13	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.005	0.13	0.018	0.46	1.4	0.030	0.76	1.125	28.58
1	± 0.005	± 0.13	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.008	0.20	0.025	0.64	1.4	0.030	0.76	1.500	38.10
1 1/2	± 0.008	± 0.20	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.008	0.20	0.034	0.86	1.3	0.050	1.27	2.250	57.15
2	± 0.008	± 0.20	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.008	0.20	0.043	1.09	1.2	0.050	1.27	3.000	76.20
2 1/2	± 0.010	± 0.25	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.010	0.25	0.054	1.37	1.2	0.050	1.27	3.750	95.25
3	± 0.010	± 0.25	+0.005/-0.008	+0.13/-0.20	0.016	0.41	0.068	1.73	1.3	0.050	1.27	4.500	114.30
4	± 0.015	± 0.38	+0.008/-0.010	+0.20/-0.25	0.016	0.41	0.086	2.18	1.2	0.060	1.52	6.000	152.40
6	± 0.030	± 0.76	+0.015/-0.015	+0.38/-0.38	0.030	0.76	0.135	3.43	1.3	0.060	1.52	9.000	228.60

GENERAL NOTES:

- Tolerance on end-to-end and center-to-end dimension "E" is ±0.050 in. (1.27 mm) for all fittings and process components depicted. For those not depicted in this Standard, see manufacturer for standards.
- See Table DT-3-2 for electropolished wall thickness tolerances.
- See DT-7-1 (Tolerances) for "C" control portion lengths.
- See Table DT-4.1-1 for "T" tangent length dimensions.
- Tolerance for centerline radius (CLR) is ±10% of the nominal dimension (*R*).

Table DT-3-2 Final Tolerances for Electropolished Fittings and Process Components

Nominal Size, in.	Wall Thickness	
	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	+0.003/−0.006	+0.08/−0.15
$\frac{3}{8}$	+0.003/−0.006	+0.08/−0.15
$\frac{1}{2}$	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
$\frac{3}{4}$	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
1	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
$1\frac{1}{2}$	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
2	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
$2\frac{1}{2}$	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
3	+0.005/−0.010	+0.13/−0.25
4	+0.008/−0.012	+0.20/−0.30
6	+0.015/−0.017	+0.38/−0.43

Table DT-4-1 Nominal O.D. Tubing Sizes

Nominal Size, in.	Tube O.D.		Tube Wall Thickness	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	0.250	6.35	0.035	0.89
$\frac{3}{8}$	0.375	9.53	0.035	0.89
$\frac{1}{2}$	0.500	12.70	0.065	1.65
$\frac{3}{4}$	0.750	19.05	0.065	1.65
1	1.000	25.40	0.065	1.65
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.500	38.10	0.065	1.65
2	2.000	50.80	0.065	1.65
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2.500	63.50	0.065	1.65
3	3.000	76.20	0.065	1.65
4	4.000	101.60	0.083	2.11
6	6.000	152.40	0.109	2.77

GENERAL NOTE: Refer to ASTM A270, Supplement 2 for tubing tolerances.

Table DT-4.1-1 Tangent Lengths

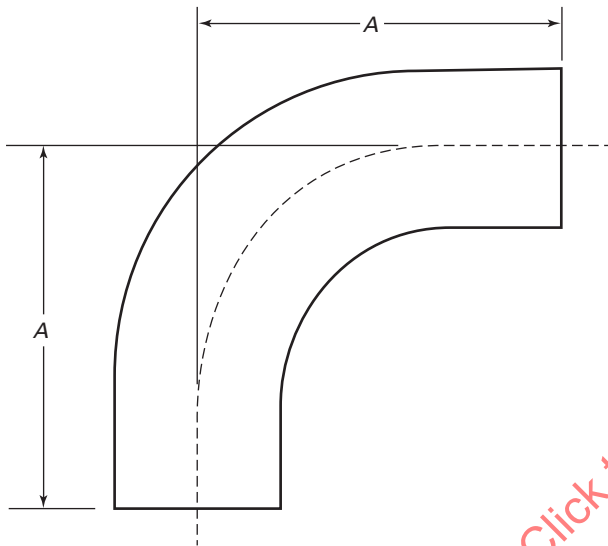
Nominal O.D. Tube Size, in.	Tangent, <i>T</i>	
	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	1.50	38.10
$\frac{3}{8}$	1.50	38.10
$\frac{1}{2}$	1.50	38.10
$\frac{3}{4}$	1.50	38.10
1	1.50	38.10
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.50	38.10
2	1.50	38.10
$2\frac{1}{2}$	1.50	38.10
3	1.75	44.45
4	2.00	50.80
6	2.50	63.50

GENERAL NOTES:

- Minimum tangent lengths for ferrules do not apply. See Table DT-4.1.4-1, dimensions *B* and *C*, for available length options.
- Minimum tangent length for $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. size automatic tube weld: 180 deg return bend does not conform (see Table DT-4.1.1-7, Dimension B).
- Minimum tangent lengths for Tables DT-4.1.2-2, DT-4.1.2-3, DT-4.1.2-7, DT-4.1.3-1 illustration (b), and DT-4.1.3-2 illustration (b) do not apply.

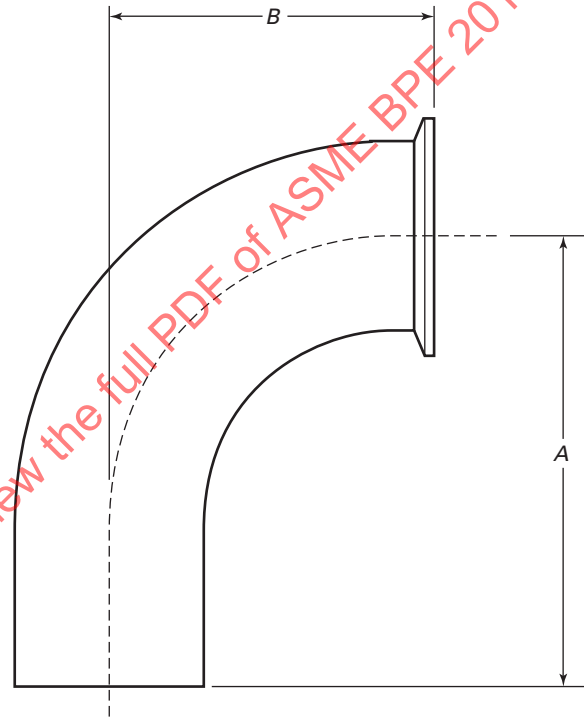


Table DT-4.1.1-1 Automatic Tube Weld: 90-deg Elbow



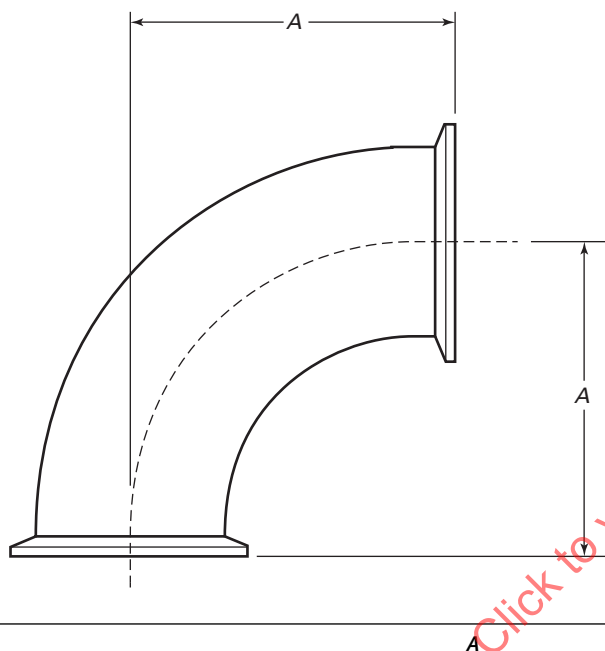
Nominal Size, in.	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	2.625	66.7
$\frac{3}{8}$	2.625	66.7
$\frac{1}{2}$	3.000	76.2
$\frac{3}{4}$	3.000	76.2
1	3.000	76.2
$1\frac{1}{2}$	3.750	95.3
2	4.750	120.7
$2\frac{1}{2}$	5.500	139.7
3	6.250	158.8
4	8.000	203.2
6	11.500	292.1

Table DT-4.1.1-2 Automatic Tube Weld: Hygienic Clamp Joint, 90-deg Elbow



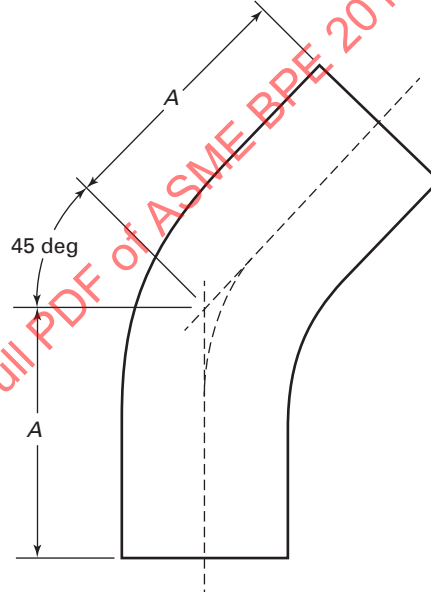
Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	2.625	66.7	1.625	41.3
$\frac{3}{8}$	2.625	66.7	1.625	41.3
$\frac{1}{2}$	3.000	76.2	1.625	41.3
$\frac{3}{4}$	3.000	76.2	1.625	41.3
1	3.000	76.2	2.000	50.8
$1\frac{1}{2}$	3.750	95.3	2.750	69.9
2	4.750	120.7	3.500	88.9
$2\frac{1}{2}$	5.500	139.7	4.250	108.0
3	6.250	158.8	5.000	127.0
4	8.000	203.2	6.625	168.3
6	11.500	292.1	10.500	266.7

Table DT-4.1.1-3 Hygienic Clamp Joint: 90-deg Elbow



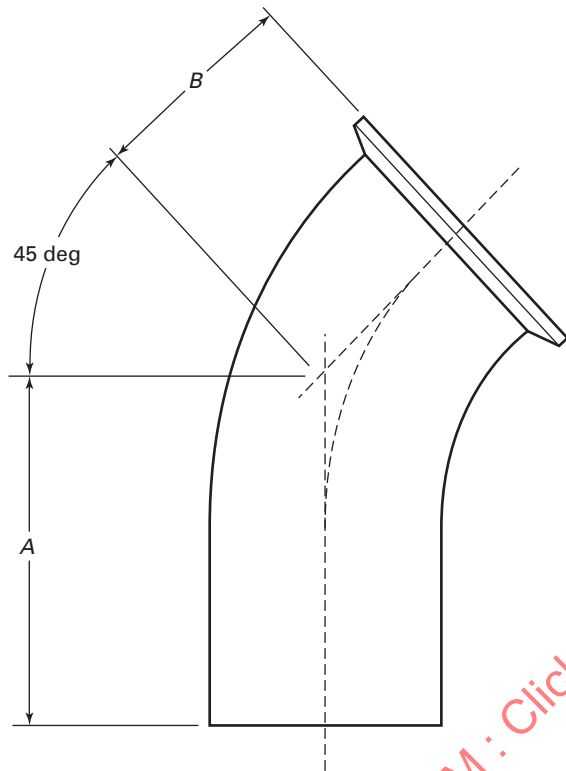
Nominal Size, in.	A	
	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	1.625	41.3
$\frac{3}{8}$	1.625	41.3
$\frac{1}{2}$	1.625	41.3
$\frac{3}{4}$	1.625	41.3
1	2.000	50.8
$1\frac{1}{2}$	2.750	69.9
2	3.500	88.9
$2\frac{1}{2}$	4.250	108.0
3	5.000	127.0
4	6.625	168.3
6	10.500	266.7

Table DT-4.1.1-4 Automatic Tube Weld: 45-deg Elbow



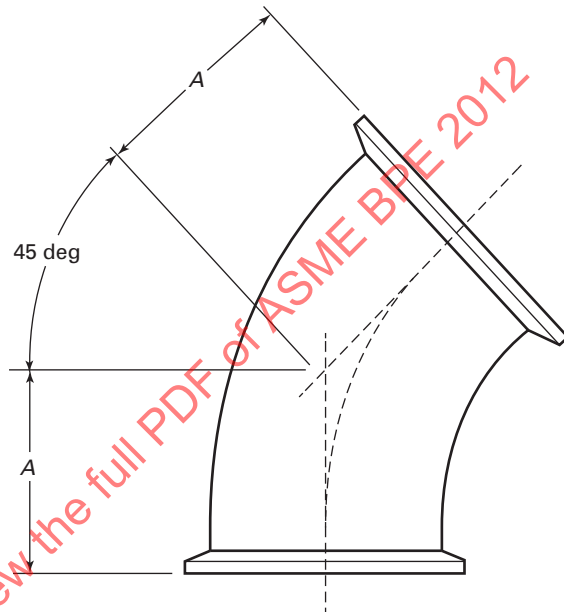
Nominal Size, in.	A	
	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	2.000	50.8
$\frac{3}{8}$	2.000	50.8
$\frac{1}{2}$	2.250	57.2
$\frac{3}{4}$	2.250	57.2
1	2.250	57.2
$1\frac{1}{2}$	2.500	63.5
2	3.000	76.2
$2\frac{1}{2}$	3.375	85.7
3	3.625	92.1
4	4.500	114.3
6	6.250	158.8

Table DT-4.1.1-5 Automatic Tube Weld: Hygienic Clamp Joint, 45-deg Elbow

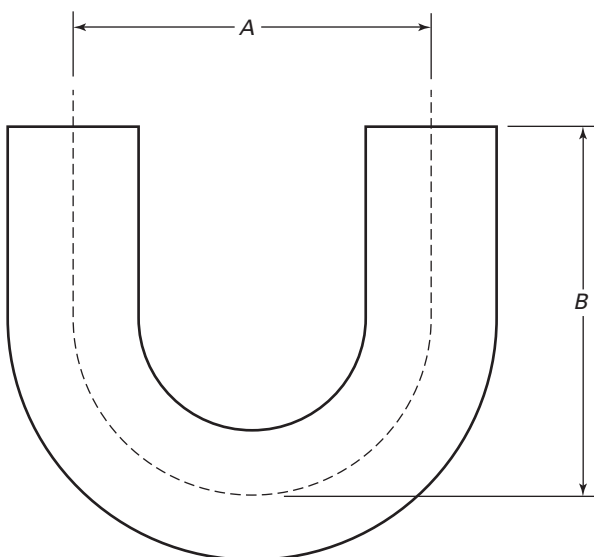


Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/4	2.000	50.8	1.000	25.4
3/8	2.000	50.8	1.000	25.4
1/2	2.250	57.2	1.000	25.4
3/4	2.250	57.2	1.000	25.4
1	2.250	57.2	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	2.500	63.5	1.438	36.5
2	3.000	76.2	1.750	44.5
2 1/2	3.375	85.7	2.063	52.4
3	3.625	92.1	2.375	60.3
4	4.500	114.3	3.125	79.4
6	6.250	158.8	5.250	133.4

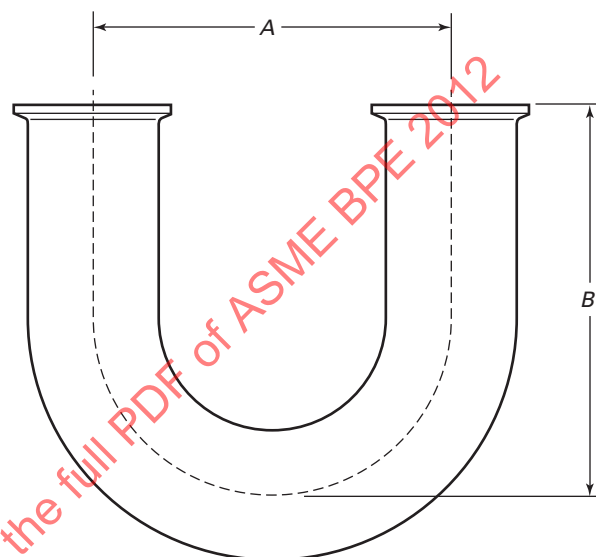
Table DT-4.1.1-6 Hygienic Clamp Joint: 45-deg Elbow



Nominal Size, in.	A	
	in.	mm
1/4	1.000	25.4
3/8	1.000	25.4
1/2	1.000	25.4
3/4	1.000	25.4
1	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	1.438	36.5
2	1.750	44.5
2 1/2	2.063	52.4
3	2.375	60.3
4	3.125	79.4
6	5.250	133.4

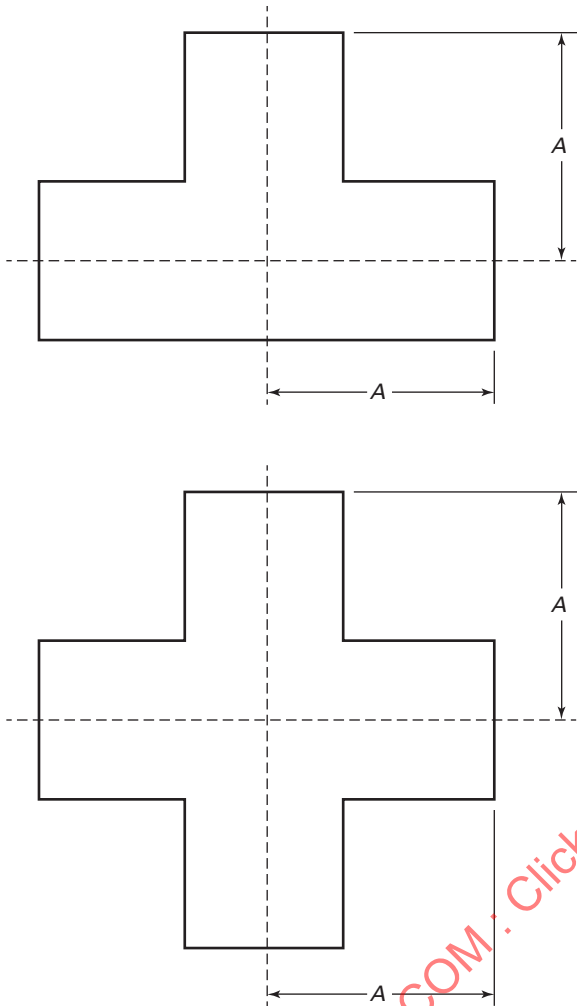
Table DT-4.1.1-7 Automatic Tube Weld: 180-deg Return Bend

Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	4.500	114.3	2.625	66.7
$\frac{3}{8}$	4.500	114.3	2.625	66.7
$\frac{1}{2}$	4.500	114.3	3.000	76.2
$\frac{3}{4}$	4.500	114.3	3.000	76.2
1	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
$1\frac{1}{2}$	4.500	114.3	4.500	114.3
2	6.000	152.4	5.000	127.0
$2\frac{1}{2}$	7.500	190.5	5.750	146.1
3	9.000	228.6	6.500	165.1
4	12.000	304.8	8.500	215.9
6	18.000	457.2	11.500	292.1

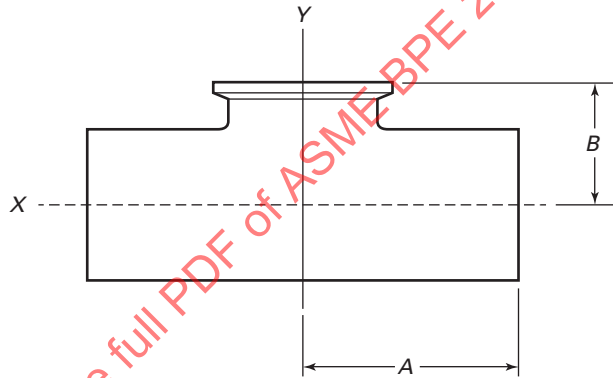
Table DT-4.1.1-8 Hygienic Clamp Joint: 180-deg Return Bend

Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	4.500	114.3	3.125	79.4
$\frac{3}{8}$	4.500	114.3	3.125	79.4
$\frac{1}{2}$	4.500	114.3	3.500	88.9
$\frac{3}{4}$	4.500	114.3	3.500	88.9
1	3.000	76.2	3.500	88.9
$1\frac{1}{2}$	4.500	114.3	5.000	127.0
2	6.000	152.4	5.500	139.7
$2\frac{1}{2}$	7.500	190.5	6.250	158.8
3	9.000	228.6	7.000	177.8
4	12.000	304.8	9.125	231.8
6	18.000	457.2	13.000	330.2

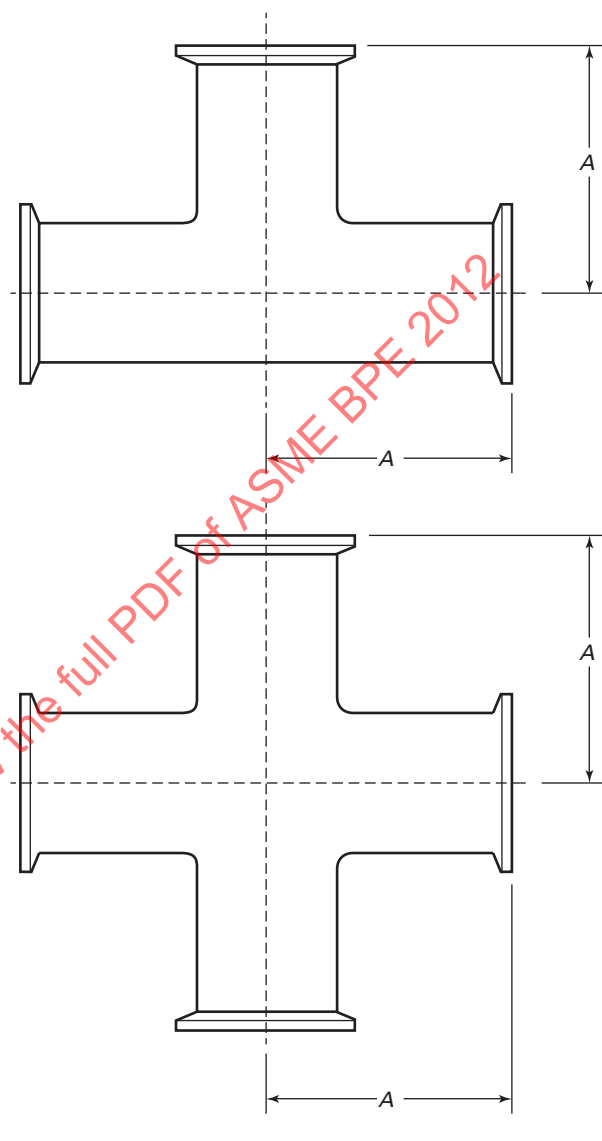
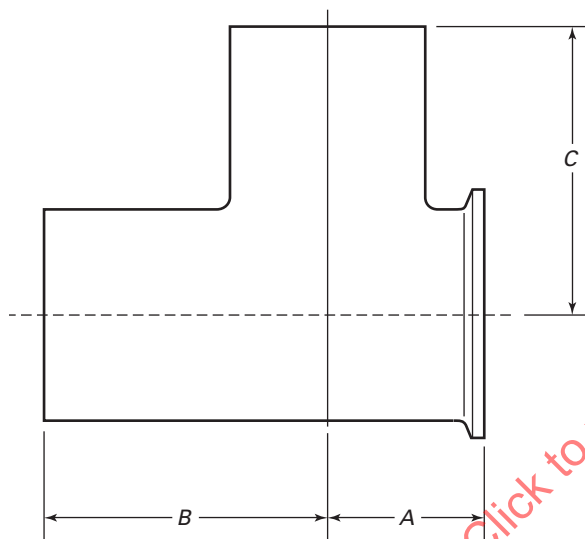
GENERAL NOTE: $\frac{1}{4}$ in. – $\frac{3}{4}$ in. sizes do not conform to Table DT-4.1-1.

Table DT-4.1.2-1 Automatic Tube Weld: Straight Tee and Cross

A		
Nominal Size, in.	in.	mm
1/4	1.750	44.5
3/8	1.750	44.5
1/2	1.875	47.6
3/4	2.000	50.8
1	2.125	54.0
1 1/2	2.375	60.3
2	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	3.125	79.4
3	3.375	85.7
4	4.125	104.8
6	5.625	142.9

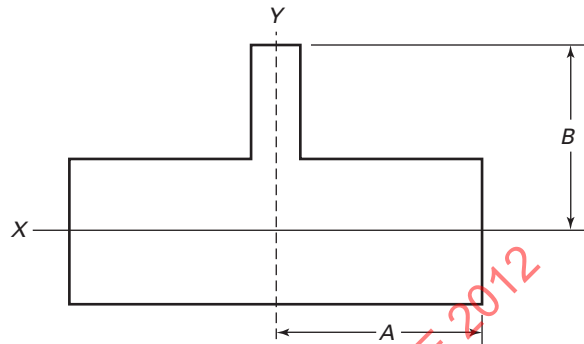
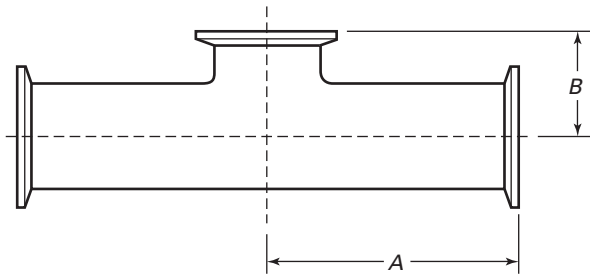
Table DT-4.1.2-2 Automatic Tube Weld: Short Outlet Hygienic Clamp Joint Tee

Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/4	1.750	44.5	1.000	25.4
3/8	1.750	44.5	1.000	25.4
1/2	1.875	47.6	1.000	25.4
3/4	2.000	50.8	1.125	28.6
1	2.125	54.0	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	2.375	60.3	1.375	34.9
2	2.875	73.0	1.625	41.3
2 1/2	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
3	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
4	4.125	104.8	2.750	69.9
6	5.625	142.9	4.625	117.5

Table DT-4.1.2-4 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Straight Tee and Cross**Table DT-4.1.2-3 Hygienic Mechanical Joint: Short Outlet Run Tee**

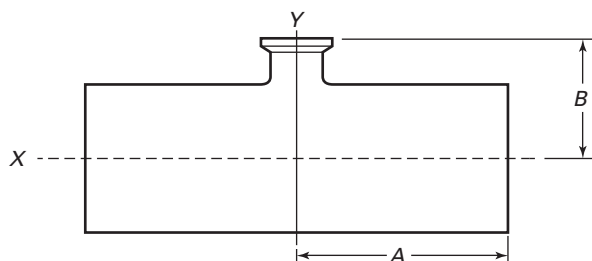
Nominal Size, in.	A		B		C	
	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/4	0.875	22.2	1.750	44.5	1.750	44.5
3/8	0.875	22.2	1.750	44.5	1.750	44.5
1/2	0.875	22.2	1.875	47.6	1.875	47.6
3/4	1.000	25.4	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
1	1.125	28.6	2.125	54.0	2.125	54.0
1 1/2	1.375	34.9	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
2	1.625	41.3	2.875	73.0	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	1.875	47.6	3.125	79.4	3.125	79.4
3	2.125	54.0	3.375	85.7	3.375	85.7
4	2.750	69.9	4.125	104.8	4.125	104.8
6	4.625	117.5	5.625	142.9	5.625	142.9

A		
Nominal Size, in.	in.	mm
1/4	2.250	57.2
3/8	2.250	57.2
1/2	2.250	57.2
3/4	2.375	60.3
1	2.625	66.7
1 1/2	2.875	73.0
2	3.375	85.7
2 1/2	3.625	92.1
3	3.875	98.4
4	4.750	120.7
6	7.125	181.0

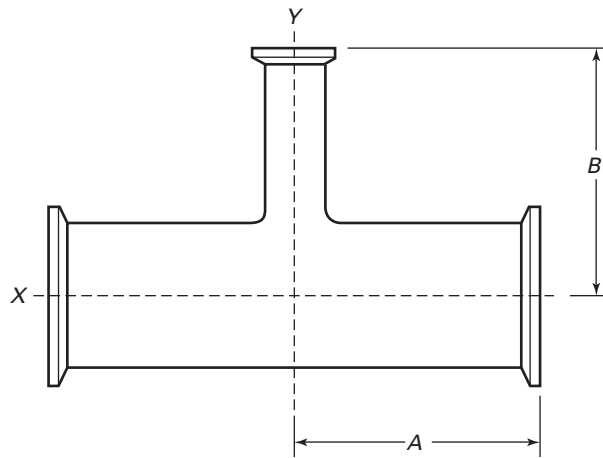
**Table DT-4.1.2-6 Automatic Tube Weld:
Reducing Tee****Table DT-4.1.2-5 Hygienic Clamp Joint:
Short Outlet Tee**

Nominal Size, in.	A		B	
	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/2	2.250	57.2	1.000	25.4
3/4	2.375	60.3	1.125	28.6
1	2.625	66.7	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	2.875	73.0	1.375	34.9
2	3.375	85.7	1.625	41.3
2 1/2	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
3	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
4	4.750	120.7	2.750	69.9
6	7.125	181.0	4.625	117.5

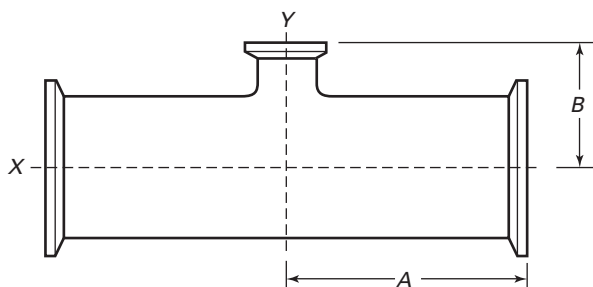
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/8	1/4	1.750	44.5	1.750	44.5
1/2	1/4	1.875	47.6	1.875	47.6
1/2	3/8	1.875	47.6	1.875	47.6
3/4	1/4	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
3/4	3/8	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
3/4	1/2	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
1	1/4	2.125	54.0	2.125	54.0
1	3/8	2.125	54.0	2.125	54.0
1	1/2	2.125	54.0	2.125	54.0
1	3/4	2.125	54.0	2.125	54.0
1 1/2	1/2	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
1 1/2	3/4	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
1 1/2	1	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
2	1/2	2.875	73.0	2.625	66.7
2	3/4	2.875	73.0	2.625	66.7
2	1	2.875	73.0	2.625	66.7
2	1 1/2	2.875	73.0	2.625	66.7
2 1/2	1/2	3.125	79.4	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	3/4	3.125	79.4	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	1	3.125	79.4	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	1 1/2	3.125	79.4	2.875	73.0
2 1/2	2	3.125	79.4	2.875	73.0
3	1/2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
3	3/4	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
3	1	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
3	1 1/2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
3	2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
3	2 1/2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
4	1/2	4.125	104.8	3.625	92.1
4	3/4	4.125	104.8	3.625	92.1
4	1	4.125	104.8	3.625	92.1
4	1 1/2	4.125	104.8	3.625	92.1
4	2	4.125	104.8	3.875	98.4
4	2 1/2	4.125	104.8	3.875	98.4
4	3	4.125	104.8	3.875	98.4
6	3	5.625	142.9	4.875	123.8
6	4	5.625	142.9	5.125	130.2

Table DT-4.1.2-7 Automatic Tube Weld: Short Outlet Hygienic Clamp, Joint Reducing Tee

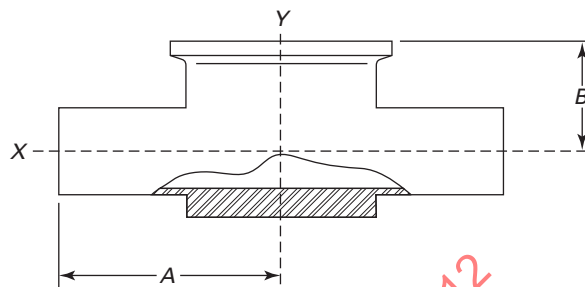
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/8	1/4	1.750	44.5	1.000	25.4
1/2	1/4	1.875	47.6	1.000	25.4
1/2	3/8	1.875	47.6	1.000	25.4
3/4	1/4	2.000	50.8	1.000	25.4
3/4	3/8	2.000	50.8	1.000	25.4
3/4	1/2	2.000	50.8	1.000	25.4
1	1/4	2.125	54.0	1.125	28.6
1	3/8	2.125	54.0	1.125	28.6
1	1/2	2.125	54.0	1.125	28.6
1	3/4	2.125	54.0	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	1/2	2.375	60.3	1.375	34.9
1 1/2	3/4	2.375	60.3	1.375	34.9
1 1/2	1	2.375	60.3	1.375	34.9
2	1/2	2.875	73.0	1.625	41.3
2	3/4	2.875	73.0	1.625	41.3
2	1	2.875	73.0	1.625	41.3
2	1 1/2	2.875	73.0	1.625	41.3
2 1/2	1/2	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	3/4	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	1	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	1 1/2	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	2	3.125	79.4	1.875	47.6
3	1/2	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
3	3/4	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
3	1	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
3	1 1/2	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
3	2	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
3	2 1/2	3.375	85.7	2.125	54.0
4	1/2	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	3/4	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	1	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	1 1/2	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	2	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	2 1/2	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
4	3	4.125	104.8	2.625	66.7
6	1/2	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	3/4	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	1	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	1 1/2	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	2	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	2 1/2	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	3	5.625	142.9	3.625	92.1
6	4	5.625	142.9	3.750	95.3

Table DT-4.1.2-8 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Reducing Tee

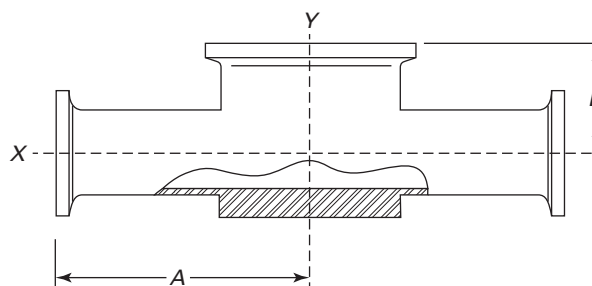
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/8	1/4	2.250	57.2	2.250	57.2
1/2	1/4	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
1/2	3/8	2.375	60.3	2.375	60.3
3/4	1/4	2.500	63.5	2.500	63.5
3/4	3/8	2.500	63.5	2.500	63.5
3/4	1/2	2.500	63.5	2.500	63.5
1	1/4	2.625	66.7	2.625	66.7
1	3/8	2.625	66.7	2.625	66.7
1	1/2	2.625	66.7	2.625	66.7
1	3/4	2.625	66.7	2.625	66.7
1 1/2	1/2	2.875	73.0	2.875	73.0
1 1/2	3/4	2.875	73.0	2.875	73.0
1 1/2	1	2.875	73.0	2.875	73.0
2	1/2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
2	3/4	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
2	1	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
2	1 1/2	3.375	85.7	3.125	79.4
2 1/2	1/2	3.625	92.1	3.375	85.7
2 1/2	3/4	3.625	92.1	3.375	85.7
2 1/2	1	3.625	92.1	3.375	85.7
2 1/2	1 1/2	3.625	92.1	3.375	85.7
2 1/2	2	3.625	92.1	3.375	85.7
3	1/2	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
3	3/4	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
3	1	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
3	1 1/2	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
3	2	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
3	2 1/2	3.875	98.4	3.625	92.1
4	1/2	4.750	120.7	4.125	104.8
4	3/4	4.750	120.7	4.125	104.8
4	1	4.750	120.7	4.125	104.8
4	1 1/2	4.750	120.7	4.125	104.8
4	2	4.750	120.7	4.375	111.1
4	2 1/2	4.750	120.7	4.375	111.1
4	3	4.750	120.7	4.375	111.1
6	3	7.125	181.0	5.375	136.5
6	4	7.125	181.0	5.750	146.1

Table DT-4.1.2-9 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Short Outlet Reducing Tee

Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/8	1/4	2.250	57.2	1.000	25.4
1/2	1/4	2.375	60.3	1.000	25.4
1/2	3/8	2.375	60.3	1.000	25.4
3/4	1/4	2.500	63.5	1.000	25.4
3/4	3/8	2.500	63.5	1.000	25.4
3/4	1/2	2.500	63.5	1.000	25.4
1	1/4	2.625	66.7	1.125	28.6
1	3/8	2.625	66.7	1.125	28.6
1	1/2	2.625	66.7	1.125	28.6
1	3/4	2.625	66.7	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	1/2	2.875	73.0	1.375	34.9
1 1/2	3/4	2.875	73.0	1.375	34.9
1 1/2	1	2.875	73.0	1.375	34.9
2	1/2	3.375	85.7	1.625	41.3
2	3/4	3.375	85.7	1.625	41.3
2	1	3.375	85.7	1.625	41.3
2	1 1/2	3.375	85.7	1.625	41.3
2 1/2	1/2	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	3/4	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	1	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	1 1/2	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
2 1/2	2	3.625	92.1	1.875	47.6
3	1/2	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
3	3/4	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
3	1	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
3	1 1/2	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
3	2	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
3	2 1/2	3.875	98.4	2.125	54.0
4	1/2	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	3/4	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	1	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	1 1/2	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	2	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	2 1/2	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
4	3	4.750	120.7	2.625	66.7
6	1/2	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	3/4	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	1	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	1 1/2	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	2	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	2 1/2	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	3	7.125	181.0	3.625	92.1
6	4	7.125	181.0	3.750	95.3

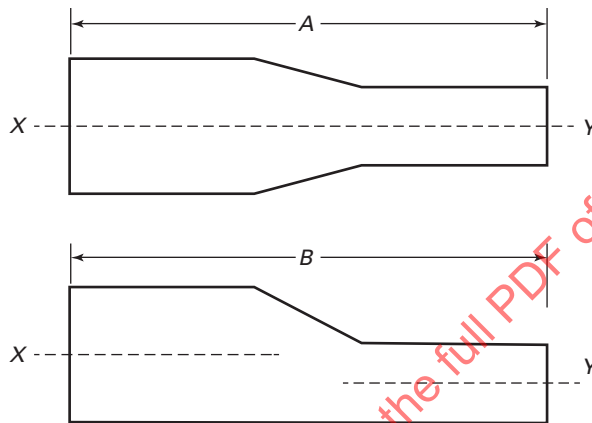
Table DT-4.1.2-10 Automatic Tube Weld: Instrument Tee

Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/2	× 1 1/2	2.500	63.5	0.875	22.2
3/4	× 1 1/2	2.500	63.5	1.000	25.4
1	× 1 1/2	2.500	63.5	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	× 2	2.750	69.9	1.000	25.4
3/4	× 2	2.750	69.9	1.125	28.6
1	× 2	2.750	69.9	1.250	31.8
1 1/2	× 2	2.750	69.9	1.500	38.1

Table DT-4.1.2-11 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Instrument Tee

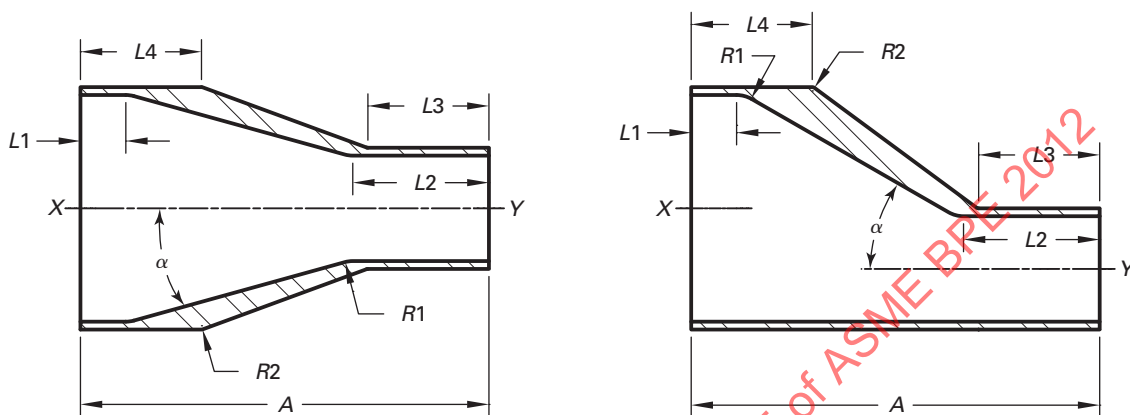
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/2	× 1 1/2	3.000	76.2	0.875	22.2
3/4	× 1 1/2	3.000	76.2	1.000	25.4
1	× 1 1/2	3.000	76.2	1.125	28.6
1 1/2	× 2	3.250	82.6	1.000	25.4
3/4	× 2	3.250	82.6	1.125	28.6
1	× 2	3.250	82.6	1.250	31.8
1 1/2	× 2	3.250	82.6	1.500	38.1

**Table DT-4.1.3-1(a) Automatic Tube Weld:
Concentric and Eccentric Reducer**



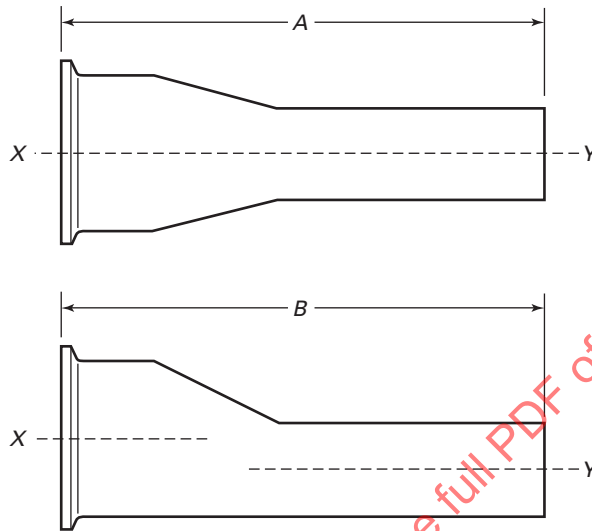
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	3.250	82.6	4.000	101.6
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	3.250	82.6	4.000	101.6
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	3.250	82.6	4.000	101.6
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	3.250	82.6	4.000	101.6
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	4.000	101.6	4.000	101.6
1	$\frac{1}{2}$	4.500	114.3	4.500	114.3
1	$\frac{3}{4}$	4.000	101.6	4.000	101.6
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	5.000	127.0	5.000	127.0
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1	5.000	127.0	5.000	127.0
2	1	7.250	184.2	7.250	184.2
2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	5.250	133.4	5.250	133.4
$2\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	7.250	184.2	7.250	184.2
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2	5.500	139.7	5.500	139.7
3	$1\frac{1}{2}$	9.250	235.0	9.250	235.0
3	2	7.500	190.5	7.500	190.5
3	$2\frac{1}{2}$	5.500	139.7	5.500	139.7
4	2	11.750	298.5	11.750	298.5
4	$2\frac{1}{2}$	9.750	247.7	9.750	247.7
4	3	7.750	196.9	7.750	196.9
6	3	10.000	254.0	9.750	247.7
6	4	10.000	254.0	10.000	254.0

Table DT-4.1.3-1(b) Automatic Tube Weld: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer



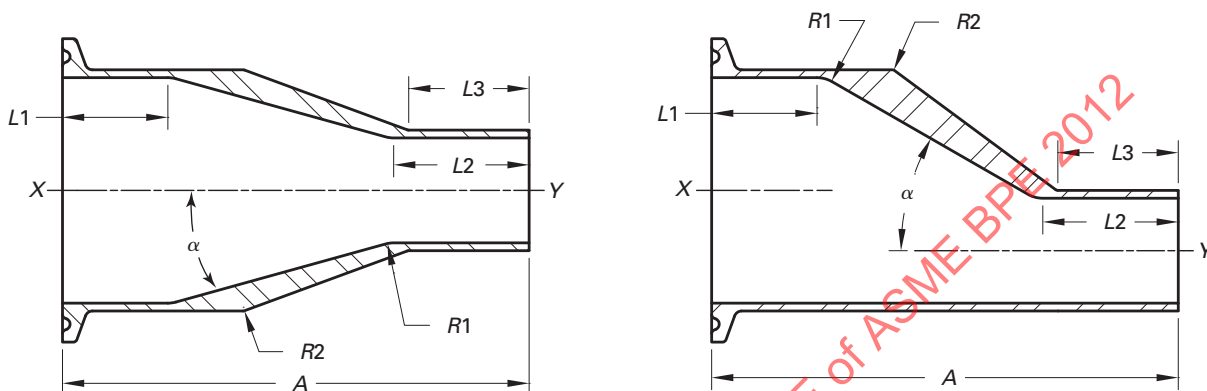
Nominal Size, in.		Overall Length, A, in.	Minimum I.D. Tangent, Large End, L1, in.	Minimum I.D. Tangent, Small End, L2, in.	Minimum O.D. Tangent, Small End, L3, in.	Minimum O.D. Tangent, Large End, L4, in.	Maximum Internal Taper, α , deg	Minimum Internal Radius, R1, in.	Minimum External Radius, R2, in.
X	Y								
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1.625	0.375	0.875	0.750	0.750	30	0.250	0.031
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1.875	0.375	0.875	0.750	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	1.875	0.375	0.875	0.750	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	2.000	0.375	0.875	0.750	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	2.125	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1	$\frac{1}{2}$	2.500	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1	$\frac{3}{4}$	2.125	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	3.000	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1	2.500	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2	1	3.375	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2.500	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$2\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	3.375	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2	2.500	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
3	$1\frac{1}{2}$	4.250	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
3	2	3.375	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
3	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2.625	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
4	2	5.125	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
4	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4.250	0.375	1.125	1.000	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
4	3	3.875	0.375	1.625	1.500	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
6	3	7.250	0.375	1.625	1.500	2.000	30	0.250	0.031
6	4	5.625	0.375	1.625	1.500	2.000	30	0.250	0.031

Table DT-4.1.3-2(a) Hygienic Clamp Joint: Tube Weld Concentric and Eccentric Reducer



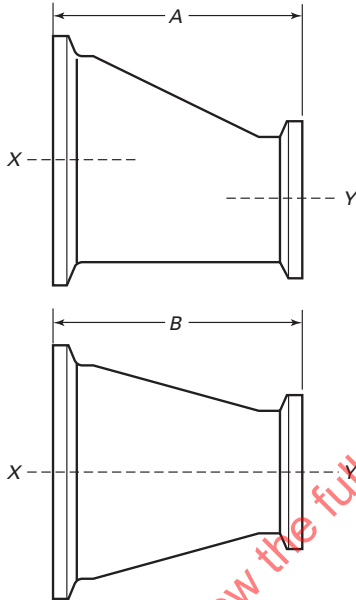
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/4	1/2	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
1	1/2	3.500	88.9	3.500	88.9
1	3/4	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
1 1/2	3/4	4.000	101.6	4.000	101.6
1 1/2	1	4.000	101.6	4.000	101.6
2	1	6.000	152.4	6.000	152.4
2	1 1/2	4.000	101.6	4.000	101.6
2 1/2	1 1/2	6.000	152.4	6.000	152.4
2 1/2	2	4.250	107.9	4.250	108.0
3	1 1/2	8.000	203.2	8.000	203.2
3	2	6.250	158.8	6.250	158.8
3	2 1/2	4.250	108.0	4.250	108.0
4	2	10.375	263.5	10.375	263.5
4	2 1/2	8.375	212.7	8.375	212.7
4	3	6.375	161.9	6.375	161.9
6	3	9.000	228.6	8.750	222.3
6	4	9.000	228.6	9.000	228.6

Table DT-4.1.3-2(b) Hygienic Clamp Joint: Tube Weld Concentric and Eccentric Reducer



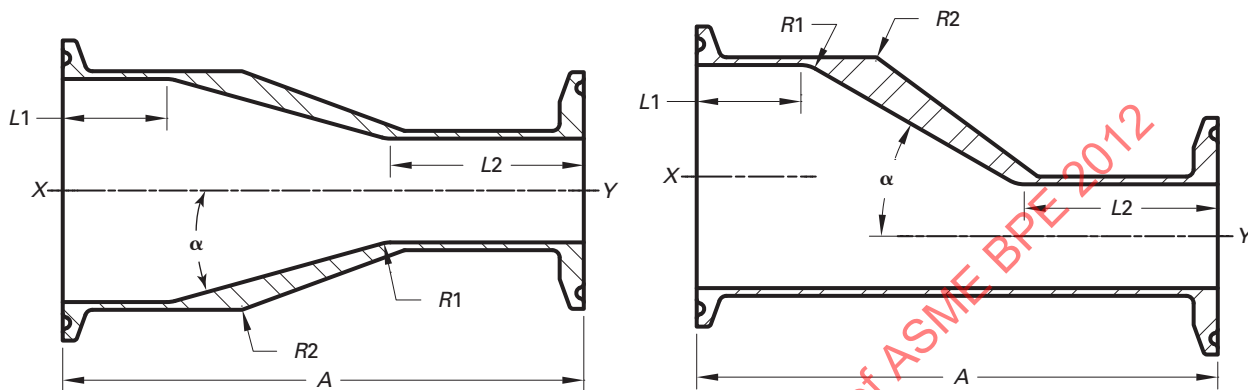
Nominal Size, in.		Overall Length, A, in.	Minimum I.D. Tangent, Large End, L1, in.	Minimum I.D. Tangent, Small End, L2, in.	Minimum O.D. Tangent, Small End, L3, in.	Maximum Internal Taper, α , deg	Minimum Internal Radius, R1, in.	Minimum External Radius, R2, in.
X	Y							
3/8	1/4	2.125	0.375	0.875	0.750	30	0.250	0.031
1/2	1/4	2.375	0.375	0.875	0.750	30	0.250	0.031
1/2	3/8	2.375	0.375	0.875	0.750	30	0.250	0.031
3/4	3/8	2.500	0.375	0.875	0.750	30	0.250	0.031
3/4	1/2	2.625	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1	1/2	3.000	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1	3/4	2.625	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1 1/2	3/4	3.500	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
1 1/2	1	3.000	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2	1	3.875	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2	1 1/2	3.000	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2 1/2	1 1/2	3.875	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
2 1/2	2	3.000	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
3	1 1/2	4.750	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
3	2	3.875	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
3	2 1/2	3.125	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
4	2	5.750	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
4	2 1/2	4.875	0.375	1.125	1.000	30	0.250	0.031
4	3	4.500	0.375	1.625	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
6	3	8.000	0.375	1.625	1.500	30	0.250	0.031
6	4	6.375	0.375	1.625	1.500	30	0.250	0.031

**Table DT-4.1.3-3(a) Hygienic Clamp Joint:
Concentric and Eccentric Reducer**



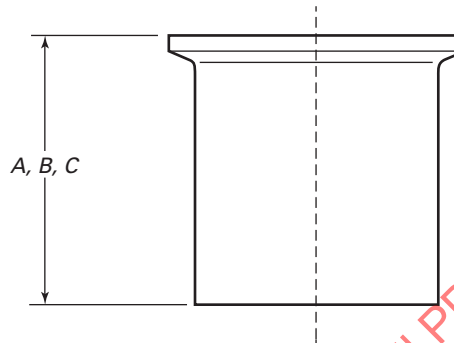
Nominal Size, in.		A		B	
X	Y	in.	mm	in.	mm
3/4	1/2	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
1	1/2	2.500	63.5	2.500	63.5
1	3/4	2.000	50.8	2.000	50.8
1 1/2	3/4	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
1 1/2	1	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
2	1	5.000	127.0	5.000	127.0
2	1 1/2	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
2 1/2	1 1/2	5.000	127.0	5.000	127.0
2 1/2	2	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
3	1 1/2	7.000	177.8	7.000	177.8
3	2	5.000	127.0	5.000	127.0
3	2 1/2	3.000	76.2	3.000	76.2
4	2	9.125	231.8	9.125	231.8
4	2 1/2	7.125	181.0	7.125	181.0
4	3	5.125	130.2	5.125	130.2
6	3	7.625	193.7	7.500	190.5
6	4	7.625	193.7	7.625	193.7

Table DT-4.1.3-3(b) Hygienic Clamp Joint: Concentric and Eccentric Reducer

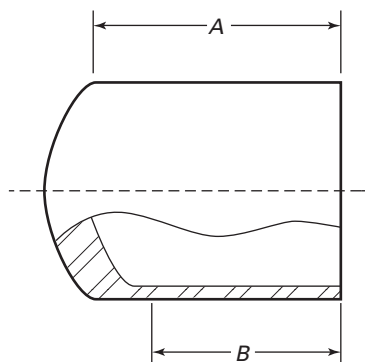


Nominal Size, in.		Overall Length, A, in.	Minimum I.D Tangent, Large End, L1, in.	Minimum I.D. Tangent, Small End, L2, in.	Maximum Internal Taper, α , deg	Minimum Internal Radius, R1, in.	Minimum External Radius, R2, in.
X	Y						
3/8	1/4	2.625	0.375	0.875	30	0.250	0.031
1/2	1/4	2.875	0.375	0.875	30	0.250	0.031
1/2	3/8	2.875	0.375	0.875	30	0.250	0.031
3/4	3/8	3.000	0.375	0.875	30	0.250	0.031
3/4	1/2	3.125	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
1	1/2	3.500	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
1	3/4	3.125	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
1 1/2	3/4	4.000	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
1 1/2	1	3.500	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
2	1	4.375	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
2	1 1/2	3.500	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
2 1/2	1 1/2	4.375	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
2 1/2	2	3.500	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
3	1 1/2	5.250	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
3	2	4.375	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
3	2 1/2	3.625	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
4	2	6.250	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
4	2 1/2	5.375	0.375	1.125	30	0.250	0.031
4	3	5.000	0.375	1.625	30	0.250	0.031
6	3	8.500	0.375	1.625	30	0.250	0.031
6	4	7.000	0.375	1.625	30	0.250	0.031

Table DT-4.1.4-1 Automatic Tube Weld: Ferrule

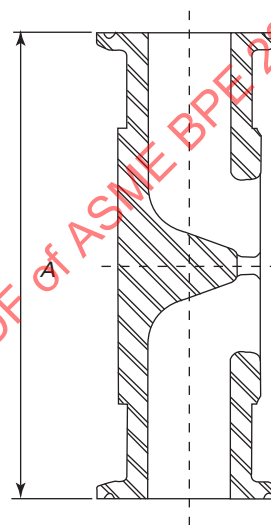


Nominal Size, in.	A		B		C	
	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm
$\frac{1}{4}$	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
$\frac{3}{8}$	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
$\frac{1}{2}$	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
$\frac{3}{4}$	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
1	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.750	44.5	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
2	2.250	57.2	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2.250	57.2	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
3	2.250	57.2	1.130	28.7	0.500	12.7
4	2.250	57.2	1.130	28.7	0.625	15.9
6	3.000	76.2	1.500	38.1	0.750	19.1

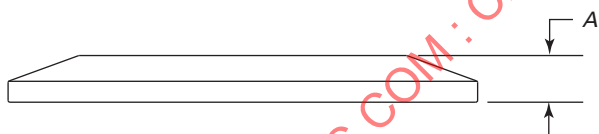
Table DT-4.1.5-1 Automatic Tube Weld: Cap

Nominal Size, in.	A, Min.	
	in.	mm
1/2	1.500	38.1
3/4	1.500	38.1
1	1.500	38.1
1 1/2	1.500	38.1
2	1.500	38.1
2 1/2	1.500	38.1
3	1.750	44.5
4	2.000	50.8
6	2.500	63.5

GENERAL NOTE: Minimum I.D. control portion length, B, is 0.375 in. (9.53 mm) for all sizes.

Table DT-4.4.1-1 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Weir Style Diaphragm Valve

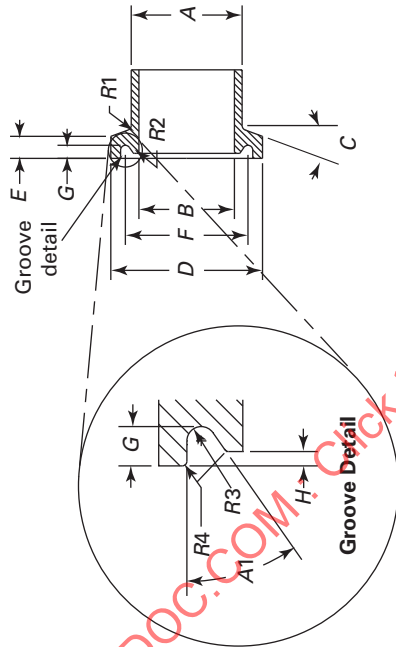
Nominal Size, in.	A	
	in.	mm
1/4 Fractional	2.500	63.5
3/8 Fractional	2.500	63.5
1/2 Fractional	2.500	63.5
1/2	3.500	88.9
3/4	4.000	101.6
1	4.500	114.3
1 1/2	5.500	139.7
2	6.250	158.8
2 1/2	7.630	193.8
3	8.750	222.3
4	11.500	292.1

Table DT-4.1.5-2 Hygienic Clamp Joint: Solid End Cap

Nominal Size, in.	A, min.	
	in.	mm
1/4	0.187	4.7
3/8	0.187	4.7
1/2	0.187	4.7
3/4	0.187	4.7
1	0.250	6.4
1 1/2	0.250	6.4
2	0.250	6.4
2 1/2	0.250	6.4
3	0.250	6.4
4	0.312	7.9
6	0.437	11.1

Table DT-7-1 Hygienic Clamp Ferrule Standard Dimensions and Tolerances

Type A

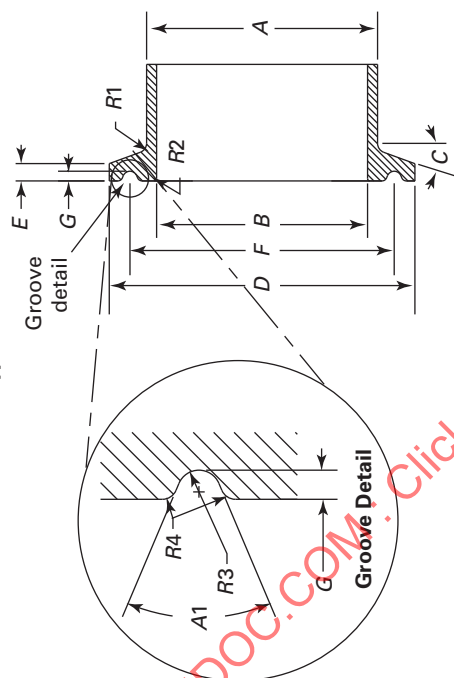


Nominal Size, in.	Type	Tube Diameter, A, in.		I.D. Bore, B, in.		Flange Angle, C, deg		Flange Diameter, D, in.		Flange Thickness, E, in. ref.		Groove Diameter, F, in.	
		Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±
1/4	A	0.250	0.005	0.180	0.005	20	0.5	0.984	0.005	0.143	0.005	0.800	0.005
3/8	A	0.375	0.005	0.305	0.005	20	0.5	0.984	0.005	0.143	0.005	0.800	0.005
1/2	A	0.500	0.005	0.370	0.005	20	0.5	0.984	0.005	0.143	0.005	0.800	0.005
3/4	A	0.750	0.005	0.620	0.005	20	0.5	0.984	0.005	0.143	0.005	0.800	0.005
1	A	1.000	0.005	0.870	0.005	20	1.0	1.339	0.005	0.143	0.005	1.160	0.005

Nominal Size, in.	Type	Groove Depth, G, in.		Face Offset, H, in.		Groove Detail, R3, in.		Groove Detail, R4, in.		Groove Detail, A1, deg		Radius, R1, in.		Radius, R2, in.	
		Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Dimen- sion	Tolerance, ±	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1/4	A	0.085	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.020	0.005	35	1	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005
3/8	A	0.085	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.020	0.005	35	1	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005
1/2	A	0.085	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.020	0.005	35	1	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005
3/4	A	0.085	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.020	0.005	35	1	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005
1	A	0.085	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005	0.020	0.005	35	1	0.031	0.005	0.031	0.005

Table DT-7-1 Hygienic Clamp Ferrule Standard Dimensions and Tolerances (Cont'd)

Type B



Nominal Size, in.	Type	Tube Diameter, A, in.		I.D. Bore, B, in.		Flange Angle, C, deg		Flange Diameter, D, in.		Flange Thickness, E, in. ref.		Groove Diameter, F, in.	
		Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±
1/	B	1.000	0.005	0.870	0.005	20	1.0	1.984	0.008	0.112	0.005	1.718	0.005
1 1/2	B	1.500	0.008	1.370	0.005	20	1.0	1.984	0.008	0.112	0.005	1.718	0.005
2	B	2.000	0.008	1.870	0.005	20	1.0	2.516	0.008	0.112	0.008	2.218	0.005
2 1/2	B	2.500	0.010	2.370	0.005	20	1.0	3.047	0.008	0.112	0.008	2.781	0.005
3	B	3.000	0.010	2.870	0.005	20	1.0	3.579	0.010	0.112	0.010	3.281	0.005
4	B	4.000	0.015	3.834	0.005	20	1.0	4.682	0.015	0.112	0.015	4.344	0.005
6	B	6.000	0.030	7.782	0.005	20	1.0	6.570	0.030	0.220	0.030	6.176	0.005

Nominal Size, in.	Type	Groove Depth, G, in.		Face Offset, H, in.		Groove Detail, R3, in.		Groove Detail, R4, in.		Groove Detail, A1, deg		Radius, R1, in.		Radius, R2, in.	
		Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.
1	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
1 1/2	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
2	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
2 1/2	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
3	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
4	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005
6	B	0.063	0.005	N/A	N/A	0.047	0.005	0.020	0.005	46	1	0.063	0.031	0.031	0.005

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Dimensions and tolerances apply to machined finishes only.

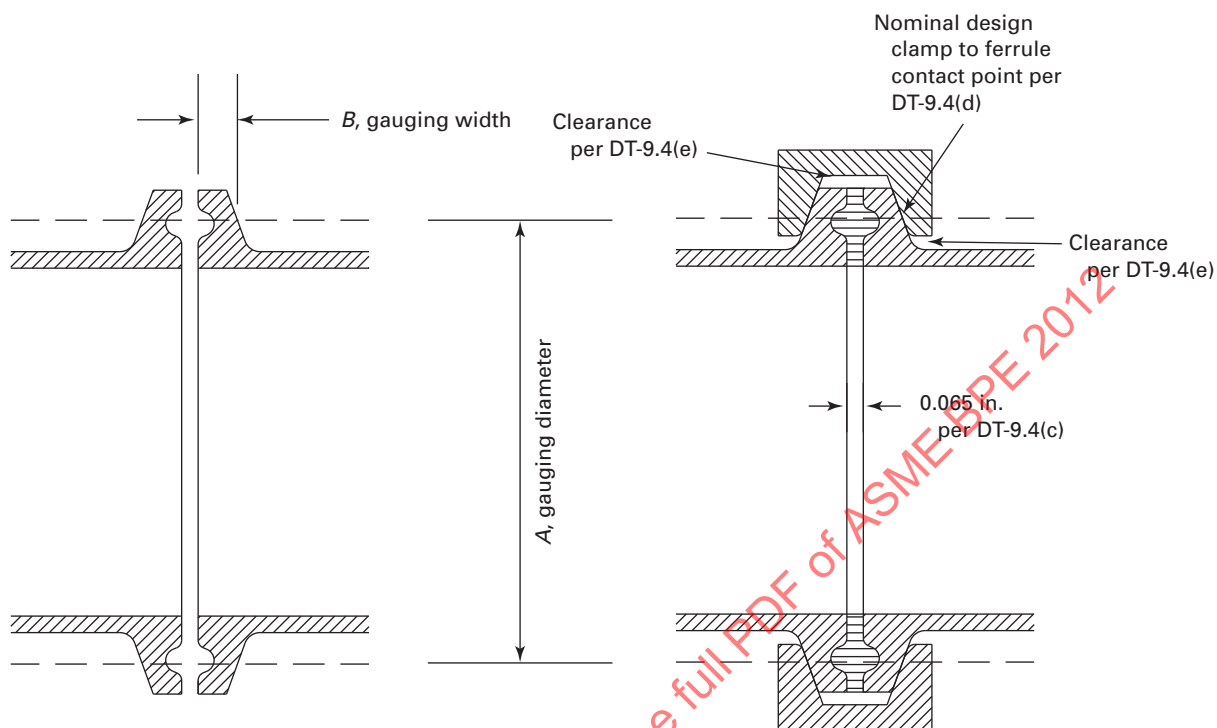
(b) I.D. bore dimension "B" should be measured on the ferrule face side only.



Table DT-7-2 Transfer Panel and Jumper Tolerances

Connection Nominal Size, in.	Flatness Tolerance	
	Maximum Gap Allowed, in.	Center-to-Center Dimensional Tolerance, in.
0.50	0.010	±0.015
0.75	0.010	±0.015
1.00	0.020	±0.015
1.50	0.020	±0.015
2.00	0.025	±0.015
2.50	0.025	±0.015
3.00	0.030	±0.015
4.00	0.040	±0.015



Table DT-9.3-1 Hygienic Clamp Ferrule: Design Criteria

Nominal Size, in.	Type (From Table DT-7-1)	Basic Gauging and Contact Diameter, A, in. ref	Gauging Width, B, in.		Hygienic Clamp Size, in.
		Dimension	Dimension	Tolerance, ±	
1/4	A	0.867	0.164	0.004	3/4
3/8	A	0.867	0.164	0.004	3/4
1/2	A	0.867	0.164	0.004	3/4
3/4	A	0.867	0.164	0.004	3/4
1	A	1.222	0.164	0.004	ISO DN15
1	B	1.748	0.155	0.005	1 1/2
1 1/2	B	1.748	0.155	0.005	1 1/2
2	B	2.280	0.155	0.005	2
2 1/2	B	2.811	0.155	0.005	2 1/2
3	B	3.264	0.169	0.005	3
4	B	4.288	0.184	0.005	4
6	B	6.255	0.277	0.005	6

Part MJ

Material Joining

MJ-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide requirements for the joining of metallic materials. This includes joining methods, welding procedure and performance qualification, examination, inspection, testing, and acceptance criteria.

(12) MJ-2 MATERIALS

MJ-2.1 Base Metals

MJ-2.1.1 Stainless Steels

(a) *Austenitic Stainless Steels.* Only the austenitic stainless steel grades listed in Table MM-2.1-1 or Table MM-2.1-3 may be used for welded components, except as permitted in MM-5.1.

All tubing, fittings, and weld ends made of austenitic stainless steel grades, except UNS S31703 and EN1.4438, that are to be autogenously welded (without filler metal or consumable inserts) shall have a chemical composition conforming to the requirements of MM-5.1.1.

However, a process component or tube of one of the above alloys with a sulfur content either below the lower limit or above the upper limit for sulfur in MM-5.1.1 may be used in a welded connection, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Use of the process component or tube is agreed to by the owner/user.

(2) The process component or tube meets the 0.030 wt. % maximum sulfur limit.

(3) All welds on the component or tube are internally inspected and meet the requirements of MJ-8.4.

(b) *Superaustenitic Stainless Steels.* Only the superaustenitic stainless steel grades listed in Table MM-2.1-1 or Table MM-2.1-3 may be used for welded components, except as permitted in MM-5.1.

The superaustenitic stainless steels are prone to the precipitation of undesirable secondary intermetallic phases such as sigma and chi. The cautions of MM-5.2.2 must be considered when welding superaustenitic stainless steels.

(c) *Duplex Stainless Steels.* Only the duplex stainless steel grades listed in Table MM-2.1-1 or Table MM-2.1-3 may be used for welded components, except as permitted in MM-5.1. The cautions of MM-5.2.4 must be considered when welding duplex stainless steels.

MJ-2.1.2 Nickel Alloys. Only the nickel alloys listed in Table MM-2.1-2 or Table MM-2.1-3 may be used for welded components, except as permitted in MM-5.1.

MJ-2.1.3 Other Metals. Other metals (e.g., titanium, tantalum, palladium, or gold, as used in instrumentation) may be joined, when specified by the owner/user.

MJ-2.2 Filler Metals

When filler metals are used, the matching filler metals listed in Table MM-5.1.2-1 and Table MM-5.1.2-2 shall be used except that higher alloy filler metals may be used when specified by the owner/user.

Austenitic stainless steel grades may be welded with or without filler metals.

Superaustenitic stainless steels shall be welded either with or without filler metals or consumable inserts. When welded autogenously (without filler metal or consumable inserts), postweld solution heat treatment in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations is required to minimize segregation.

Duplex stainless steels shall be welded either with or without filler metals or consumable inserts. When welded autogenously, postweld solution heat treatment in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations is required. Welding of duplex stainless steels generally results in an increase in the amount of ferrite in the microstructure, and as a result, appropriate welding procedures should be selected. The balance of austenite and ferrite in the weld metal shall be maintained so that there is no less than 30% of the lesser phase.

Nickel alloys shall be welded with or without filler metals. Postweld solution heat treatment is not required.

MJ-2.3 Nonmetallics

Joining of polymers (e.g., thermoplastics) shall be performed in accordance with Part PM. Joining of other nonmetallic materials shall be in accordance with procedures and processes recommended by the material manufacturer, and approved by the owner/user, using materials or compounds that are inert to the intended service.

MJ-3 WELD JOINT DESIGN AND PREPARATION

(12)

MJ-3.1 General

All butt joints in which one or both weld faces is a product contact surface shall have continuous complete



weld joint penetration. This requirement exists for welds made from either one side or from both sides of the weld joint. All weld joints must have the product contact surfaces properly purged or protected for the prevention of discoloration or contamination. External attachments (e.g., lift lugs, dimple jackets, ladder clips, etc.) must have any discoloration of the product contact surface removed.

Welds attaching any connection that passes through the wall of a tank or vessel, or a branch connection on a pipe or tube system, in which one or both sides of the weld joint is a product contact surface, shall either be joined with a full penetration groove weld with a reinforcing fillet weld [similar to Fig. SD-3.4.2-2, illustration (a)], or have at least one telltale hole provided if double fillet welded only [similar to Fig. SD-3.4.2-2, illustration (b)]. A telltale hole is required on all lap, tee, corner, or edge joints that have one or both welds as a product contact surface and are not attached by full penetration welds. The telltale hole shall provide a path for product or test media flow if the inner weld containment fails. Telltale holes are not required when all welds are on product contact surfaces [e.g., Fig. SD-3.4.3-1, illustration (c) detail or similar]. The telltale hole shall be no larger than NPS $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6.35 mm) and may be tapped for a preliminary compressed air and soapsuds test for tightness of inside welds. These telltale holes may be plugged when the vessel is in service. The plugging material used shall not be capable of sustaining pressure between the lapped surfaces.

Socket welding is not permitted in process stream systems or where CIP or SIP requirements are defined.

MJ-3.2 Pressure Vessels and Tanks

Joint designs shall be those permitted by ASME BPVC, Section VIII, and shall comply with MJ-3.1.

MJ-3.3 Piping

Joint designs shall be those permitted by ASME B31.3, and shall comply with MJ-3.1.

MJ-3.4 Tubing

Joint designs for hygienic tubing and fittings shall be square butt joints. The tubing and fittings shall have ends prepared by machining or facing to provide a square end that meets the requirements of Tables DT-3-1 and DT-3-2. The butt weld joints shall be properly cleaned within $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) of the joint area on the inside and outside surfaces prior to welding. Welding on tubing shall be done using automatic (or machine) welding techniques (such as orbital tube welding or lathe welding), except where size or space will not permit. In that case, manual welding can be performed, but must be agreed to by the owner/user and contractor.

MJ-3.5 Tube-Attachment Welds

(a) Tube-attachment welds, as addressed in this Standard, are those that

(1) make branch connections other than those used to fabricate the fittings described in Part DT of this Standard

(2) attach tubes to other product forms

(3) attach nozzles to transfer panels

(4) attach a tube to any part of a hygienic system

(b) Tube-attachment welds not governed by this Part of the Standard include

(1) those governed by MJ-8.4 of this Standard

(2) tube-to-tubesheet welds that are governed by ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, in addition to the visual inspection requirements of Part SF and MJ-8.2 of this Standard

These welds may be performed by the manual, machine, or an automatic welding process. Joint designs shall comply with MJ-3.1. The weld joints for complete penetration welds shall be prepared by means compatible with hygienic service. The weld joints shall be properly cleaned within $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) on the inside and outside surfaces, where accessible, prior to welding. Either fillet welds, groove welds, or a combination of both may be used.

MJ-4 JOINING PROCESSES AND PROCEDURES

(12)

MJ-4.1 Welds Finished After Welding

For pressure vessels, tanks, and piping and tubing systems where the process-contact surface of the weld is to be finished after welding, the welding processes used shall be limited to the arc or high energy beam (electron beam and laser beam) processes as defined in AWS A3.0. All welding procedures must be qualified per MJ-5 of this Standard. The owner/user and contractor shall agree that the welding process selected will provide the desired results.

MJ-4.2 Welds Used in the As-Welded Condition

For pressure vessels, tanks, and piping and tubing systems where the process-contact surface of the weld is to be used as is, welding processes shall be limited to the inert-gas arc processes (such as gas tungsten-arc welding and plasma arc welding) or the high energy beam processes (such as electron beam or laser beam welding), as defined in AWS A3.0. All welding procedures must be qualified per MJ-5 of this Standard. Every effort shall be made to use an automatic or machine welding process. Autogenous welds, welds with filler wire, or consumable inserts are acceptable for this Standard provided they meet the requirements for all applicable codes. The owner/user and contractor shall agree that the welding process selected will provide the desired results.



(12) MJ-5 PROCEDURE QUALIFICATIONS**MJ-5.1 Pressure Vessels and Tanks**

Welding procedures for pressure vessels and tanks shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified by the specific code section under which the vessels or tanks are designed.

MJ-5.2 Piping

Welding procedures for piping systems shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified in ASME B31.3.

MJ-5.3 Tubing

Welding procedures for welding of hygienic tubing systems shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified in ASME B31.3, with the following additions:

(a) A change in the type or nominal composition of the backing (purge) gas shall require requalification (see QW-250).

(b) If filler metal is used, a change from one AWS classification of filler metal to another, or to a proprietary filler metal, shall require requalification (see QW-250).

MJ-5.4 Duplex Stainless Steels

In addition to the welding procedure specification test requirements of ASME BPVC, Section IX, the weld metal and heat-affected zones from qualification test coupons of duplex stainless steels shall also meet the requirements of ASTM A923 Methods A and/or C.

(12) MJ-6 PERFORMANCE QUALIFICATIONS**MJ-6.1 Pressure Vessels and Tanks**

Welder and welding operator performance qualifications for pressure vessels and tanks shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified by the specific code section under which the vessels or tanks are designed.

MJ-6.2 Piping

Welder and welding operator performance qualifications for piping systems shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified in ASME B31.3. When the piping is to be used for hygienic systems, the additional rules in MJ-6.3 shall apply in addition to those of Section IX. The qualification ranges shall be governed by Tables MJ-6.2-1 and MJ-6.2-2.

MJ-6.3 Tubing

Welder and welding operator performance qualifications for welding of hygienic tubing systems shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section IX, except as modified in ASME B31.3.

Table MJ-6.2-1 Tube/Pipe Diameter Limits for Orbital GTAW Performance Qualification

Outside Diameter of Test Coupon, in. (mm)	Outside Diameter Qualified, in. (mm)	
	Min.	Max.
$\frac{1}{2}$ (13) and less	None	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13)
$>\frac{1}{2}$ (13) to $3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)	$>\frac{1}{2}$ (13)	$3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)
$>3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)	$>3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)	Unlimited

Table MJ-6.2-2 Weld Thickness Limits for Orbital GTAW Performance Qualification

Thickness of Test Coupon, <i>t</i> , in. (mm)	Deposited Weld Thickness Qualified, in. (mm)	
	Min.	Max.
$<\frac{1}{16}$ (1.5)	<i>t</i>	2 <i>t</i>
$\frac{1}{16}$ (1.5) $\leq t \leq \frac{3}{8}$ (10)	$\frac{1}{16}$ (1.5)	2 <i>t</i>
$>\frac{3}{8}$ (10)	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5)	Unlimited

For the qualification of welding operators, the following essential variables also apply in addition to those of Section IX:

(a) welding of a joint using an edge preparation other than a square groove.

(b) the addition or deletion of solid backing.

(c) a change in the fit-up gap from that qualified.

(d) a change in pipe/tube diameter. See Table MJ-6.2-1.

(e) the addition or deletion of filler metal.

(f) the addition or deletion of consumable inserts.

(g) a change in the thickness of the deposited weld metal. See Table MJ-6.2-2.

(h) the addition or deletion of backing gas (purge gas).

(i) a change in the current type or polarity.

(j) a change in the weld head type from open head to closed head or vice versa.

(k) a change from single pass to multipass welding or vice versa, when using filler wire.

In addition to the tests required by Section IX of the ASME BPVC, either the original qualification test or a single test coupon must meet all the requirements of Table MJ-8.4-1 of this Standard.

Any change in the variables listed in MJ-6.3 requires welding of a new test coupon, for which only visual inspection in accordance with Table MJ-8.4-1 is required. Compliance with the variables in MJ-6.3 shall be documented.

MJ-7 EXAMINATION, INSPECTION, AND TESTING (12)

Owner/user, inspection contractor, and/or engineer shall agree to the types of examinations, inspections, and testing unless otherwise specified in the applicable code.



MJ-7.1 Examination Procedures

MJ-7.1.1 Pressure Vessels and Tanks. Examination procedures for pressure vessels and tanks shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1.

MJ-7.1.2 Piping. Examination procedures for piping systems shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3.

MJ-7.1.3 Tubing. Examination procedures for tubing systems shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3.

MJ-7.1.4 Tube Attachments. Examination procedures for tubing systems shall be performed in accordance with ASME B31.3.

MJ-7.2 Personnel Requirements

MJ-7.2.1 Pressure Vessels and Tanks. Personnel performing examinations of pressure vessels and tanks designed to ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, shall meet the requirements of the appropriate section of that code.

All inspectors shall be qualified in accordance with GR-4.1.

All Inspectors' Delegates shall meet the requirements of GR-4.2.

MJ-7.2.2 Piping. All examiners, inspectors, and Inspectors' Delegates shall be qualified in accordance with GR-4.

MJ-7.2.3 Tubing. All examiners, inspectors, and Inspectors' Delegates shall be qualified in accordance with GR-4.

MJ-7.2.4 Tube Attachments. All examiners, inspectors, and Inspectors' Delegates shall be qualified in accordance with GR-4.

MJ-7.2.5 Examination Personnel Eye Examination Requirements. Personnel performing visual examinations of welds shall have eye examinations administered every 3 yr. These examinations shall include both near-vision acuity and color contrast differentiation in accordance with (as a minimum) the Vision Examination requirements of ASNT SNT-TC-1A. Eye examinations shall be administered by an Ophthalmologist, Optometrist, Medical Doctor, Registered Nurse or Nurse Practitioner, Certified Physician Assistant, or other ophthalmic medical personnel, and must include the state or province (or applicable jurisdictional) license number.

MJ-7.3 Examination, Inspection, and Testing Requirements

MJ-7.3.1 Pressure Vessels and Tanks

(a) *Examination.* Examinations shall be performed in accordance with the provisions of ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1. In addition, all welds having a product contact surface shall be visually examined by the fabricator.

(b) *Inspection.* In addition to the inspection required by ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, the owner/user or inspection contractor shall perform inspection(s) necessary to ensure compliance with this Standard as well as any additional requirements of the owner/user's specification.

(c) *Testing.* In addition to the testing required by ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, the owner/user or inspection contractor shall perform testing necessary to ensure compliance with this Standard as well as any additional requirements of the owner/user's specification.

MJ-7.3.2 Piping

(a) *Examination.* Examinations shall be performed in accordance with the provisions of the specified fluid service in ASME B31.3.

(b) *Inspection.* Owner/user, inspection contractor, and/or engineer shall agree to the minimum percentage of product contact welds to be selected for borescopic or direct visual inspection, and they shall inform the installation contractor. The inspection contractor shall submit an inspection plan to ensure that welds meet the acceptance criteria of this Part. This plan shall include borescopic or direct visual inspection of the product contact surfaces on at least 20% of the welds in each system installed. A representative sample of each welder's or welding operator's work must be included.

The examination required for compliance with ASME B31.3 may be included in the minimum inspection percentage, provided those examinations were direct visual or borescopic and of the product contact surface.

(c) *Testing.* Leak testing of piping systems shall be performed in accordance with the specified fluid service requirements in ASME B31.3.

MJ-7.3.3 Tubing

(a) *Examination.* Examinations shall be performed in accordance with the provisions of the specified fluid service in ASME B31.3. The external surfaces of all welds shall be visually examined.

If ASME B31.3 High Purity Fluid Service (Chapter X) is specified, radiographic, ultrasonic, or in-process examination is not required unless specified by the owner/user.

(b) *Inspection.* Owner/user, inspection contractor, and/or engineer shall agree to the minimum percentage of product contact welds to be selected for borescopic or direct visual inspection, and they shall inform the installation contractor. The inspection contractor shall submit an inspection plan to ensure that welds meet the acceptance criteria of this Part. This plan shall include borescopic or direct visual inspection of the product contact surfaces on at least 20% of the welds in each system installed. A representative sample of each welder's or welding operator's work must be included. There



shall also be a plan for inspecting a representative sample of each operator's first shift of production. A procedure shall be submitted for inspecting blind welds. The random selection of accessible welds to be inspected shall be up to the owner/user's inspector's discretion.

The examination required for compliance with ASME B31.3 may be included in the minimum inspection percentage provided those examinations were visual or borescopic and of the product contact surface.

(c) *Testing.* Leak testing of tubing systems shall be performed in accordance with the specified fluid service requirements in ASME B31.3.

MJ-7.3.4 Tube Attachments

(a) *Examination.* Examinations shall be performed in accordance with the provisions of the specified fluid service in ASME B31.3. The external surfaces of all welds shall be visually examined.

(b) *Inspection.* Visual inspection shall be performed on all product contact surfaces affected by the attachment welding.

(c) *Testing.* Testing shall be performed in conjunction with the system test.

MJ-7.4 Records

See GR-5.

(12) MJ-8 WELD ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA

MJ-8.1 General

Welding for a sterile environment requires that the weld shall not result in a surface that will contribute to microbiological growth and contamination of the product. The weld shall not have any discontinuities such as cracks, voids, porosity, or joint misalignment that will promote contamination of the product. All welding procedures shall be qualified to MJ-5.

MJ-8.2 Pressure Vessels and Tanks

Weld acceptance criteria for pressure vessels and tanks shall be in accordance with ASME BPVC, Section VIII, Division 1, with the additional requirements of Table MJ-8.2-1. Where "None" is specified in Table MJ-8.2-1, the limits of ASME BPVC Section VIII, Division 1 will apply.

MJ-8.3 Piping

Weld acceptance criteria for piping shall be in accordance with the specified fluid service of ASME B31.3. The additional requirements of Table MJ-8.3-1 shall apply.

MJ-8.4 Tubing

Weld acceptance criteria (including borescopic acceptance criteria) for tubing and fittings shall be in accordance with Table MJ-8.4-1 (see Fig. MJ-8.4-1).

Preproduction sample welds, when required, shall be submitted by the contractor to the owner/user to establish weld quality. Owner/user, contractor, and inspection contractor shall agree to the number and type of sample welds.

During construction, sample welds shall be made on a regular basis to verify that the equipment is operating properly and that the purging setup is adequate to prevent discoloration beyond the level agreed upon by the owner/user and contractor. Owner/user and contractor shall agree to the frequency of sample welds. It is strongly recommended that these sample welds be made at the beginning of each work shift, whenever the purge source bottle is changed, and when the automatic or machine welding equipment is changed (such as when the orbital tube weld head is changed).

The sample welds described in the preceding paragraphs, and any associated welding machine printed records (e.g., welding parameter printouts directly from welding machine or downloaded from a welding machine), if any, may be disposed of after written acceptance of the coupons by the owner, the owner's representative, or the inspector.

MJ-8.4.1 Sample Welds. Sample welds for tubing shall meet all the acceptance criteria of Table MJ-8.4-1. An internal bead width of 1.0 to 2.5 times the nominal wall thickness is required.

MJ-8.4.2 Rewelding. Rewelding (reflow) may be attempted one time only for the following defects:

- (a) incomplete penetration (lack of penetration)
- (b) incomplete fusion (lack of fusion)
- (c) unconsumed tack welds that can be inspected on the product contact side

All rewelds shall either totally consume the original weld or overlap the original weld with no base metal between the welds.

MJ-8.5 Tube-Attachment Welds

The acceptance criteria for tube-attachment welds shall be in accordance with Table MJ-8.5-1.

MJ-8.5.1 Sample Welds. Sample welds are not required for tube-attachment welds or seal welds.

MJ-8.5.2 Rewelding. Rewelding is allowed, except for welds that are product contact surfaces, for which the rewelding restrictions of MJ-8.4.2 apply.

MJ-9 DOCUMENTATION REQUIREMENTS (12)

The requirements for materials and weld documentation are listed in GR-5.

MJ-10 PASSIVATION (12)

Refer to SD-3.1.2.3(i).



Table MJ-8.2-1 Acceptance Criteria for Welds on Pressure Vessels and Tanks

Discontinuities	Welds on Product Contact Surfaces			Welds on Nonproduct Contact Surfaces	
	Welds Left in the As-Welded Condition	Prior to Finishing (As Welded)	After Postweld Finishing	Welds Left in the As-Welded Condition	After Postweld Finishing
Cracks	None	None	None	None	None
Lack of fusion	None	None	None	None	None
Incomplete penetration	None on product contact side; otherwise, see Note (1)	None on product contact side; otherwise, see Note (1)	None on product contact side; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Notes (1) and (2)	See Notes (1) and (2)
Porosity	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)
Inclusions [metallic (e.g., tungsten) or non-metallic]	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)
Undercut	None	See Note (1)	None	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Groove weld concavity	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	Maximum of 10% of the nominal wall thickness of thinner member	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Fillet weld convexity	$\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) max.	Per applicable design and fabrication code	$\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) max.	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Discoloration (heat affected zone)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	N/A	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	Per customer specification	Per customer specification
Discoloration (weld bead)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	N/A	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	Per customer specification	Per customer specification
Reinforcement	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	$\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) max.	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Tack welds	See Note (1)	N/A	N/A	See Note (1)	N/A
Arc strikes	None	N/A	None	None	None
Overlap	None	None	None	None	None
Weld bend width	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Minimum fillet weld size	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Misalignment (mismatch)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)

NOTES:

- (1) The limits of ASME Section VIII, Division 1 shall apply.
 (2) Does not apply to insulation sheathing and similar welds.



Table MJ-8.3-1 Acceptance Criteria for Welds on Pipe

Discontinuities	Welds on Product Contact Surfaces			Welds on Nonproduct Contact Surfaces	
	Welds Left in the As-Welded Condition	Prior to Finishing (As Welded)	After Postweld Finishing	Welds Left in the As-Welded Condition	After Postweld Finishing
Cracks	None	None	None	None	None
Lack of fusion	None	None	None	None	None
Incomplete penetration	None	None on product contact side; otherwise, see Note (1)	None on product contact side; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Notes (1) and (2)	See Notes (1) and (2)
Porosity	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)
Inclusions [metallic (e.g., tungsten) or nonmetallic]	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	See Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1)
Undercut	None	See Note (1)	None	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Concavity	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Fillet weld convexity	$\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) max.	See Note (1)	$\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) max.	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Discoloration (heat affected zone)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1, see Note (3)	N/A, see Note (3)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	Per customer specification	Per customer specification
Discoloration (weld bead)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1, see Note (3)	N/A, see Note (3)	Per Table MJ-8.4-1	Per customer specification	Per customer specification
Reinforcement	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	$\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) max.	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Tack welds	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead	Per customer specification	Per customer specification
Arc strikes	None	None	None	None	None
Overlap	None	None	None	None	None
Weld bend width	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Minimum fillet weld size	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)
Misalignment (mismatch)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)	See Note (1)

NOTES:

- (1) The limits of ASME B31.3 shall apply.
 (2) Does not apply to insulation sheathing and similar welds.
 (3) Special surface preparation may be needed to meet the criteria of Table MJ-8.4-1. Welds on piping that has been in service may require unique criteria.



Table MJ-8.4-1 Acceptance Criteria for Groove Welds on Tube-to-Tube Butt Joints

Discontinuities	Welds on Product Contact Surfaces	Welds on Nonproduct Contact Surfaces
Cracks	None	None
Lack of fusion	None	None
Incomplete penetration	None [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (e)]	None [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (e)]
Porosity	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1).	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1).
Inclusions [metallic (e.g., tungsten) or nonmetallic]	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (1).	See Note (1)
Undercut	None	See Note (1)
Concavity	Maximum of 10% of the nominal wall thickness [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustrations (c) and (d)]. However, O.D. and I.D. concavity shall be such that the wall thickness is not reduced below the minimum thickness required in DT-3 [see Note (2)].	Maximum of 10% of the nominal wall thickness [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustrations (c) and (d)] over entire circumference with up to 15% of the nominal wall thickness permitted over a maximum of 25% of the circumference [see Note (2)].
Convexity	Maximum of 10% of the nominal wall thickness [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (f)] [see Note (2)]	Maximum of 0.015 in. (0.38 mm) [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (f)] [see Note (2)].
Discoloration (heat-affected zone)	Heat-affected zone (HAZ) may be permitted to have light straw to light blue color (see Figs. MJ-8.4-2 and MJ-8.4-3). Any discoloration present must be tightly adhering to the surface such that normal operations will not remove it. In any case, the HAZ shall have no evidence of rust, free iron, or sugaring. See Note (3).	Discoloration level will be agreed upon between the owner/user and contractor. Postweld conditioning may be allowed to meet discoloration requirements at the discretion of the owner/user. See Note (3).
Discoloration (weld bead)	None allowed. For welds in nickel alloys, and for welds in superaustenitic alloys made with nickel alloy inserts or filler metals, slag is permitted as long as it is silver to light gray in color and adherent to the surface. See Note (3).	Discoloration level will be agreed upon between the owner/user and contractor. Postweld conditioning may be allowed to meet discoloration requirements at the discretion of the owner/user. See Note (3).
Reinforcement	See Convexity	See Convexity
Tack welds	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead [see Note (4)]	Same as product contact side.
Arc strikes	None	See Note (5)
Overlap	None	None
Weld bead width	No limit provided that complete joint penetration is achieved.	If product contact surface cannot be inspected (such as I.D. of a tube beyond the reach of remote vision equipment), then the nonproduct contact surface weld bead shall be straight and uniform around the entire weld circumference [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (g)]. The minimum weld bead width shall not be less than 50% of the maximum weld bead width [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (h)]. The maximum weld bead mean-der shall be 25% of the weld bead width, measured as a deviation from the weld centerline, as defined in Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (i).
Minimum throat	N/A	N/A
Misalignment (mismatch)	Maximum of 15% of nominal wall thickness [see Fig. MJ-8.4-1, illustration (b)], except that 4 in. tube may have a maximum of 0.015 in. (0.38 mm) misalignment on the O.D. and 6 in. tube may have a maximum of 0.030 in. (0.76 mm) misalignment on the O.D. Figure MJ-8.4-1, illustration (b) does not apply to 4 in. and 6 in. tube [see Note (2)].	Same as product contact surfaces



Table MJ-8.4-1 Acceptance Criteria for Groove Welds on Tube-to-Tube Butt Joints (Cont'd)

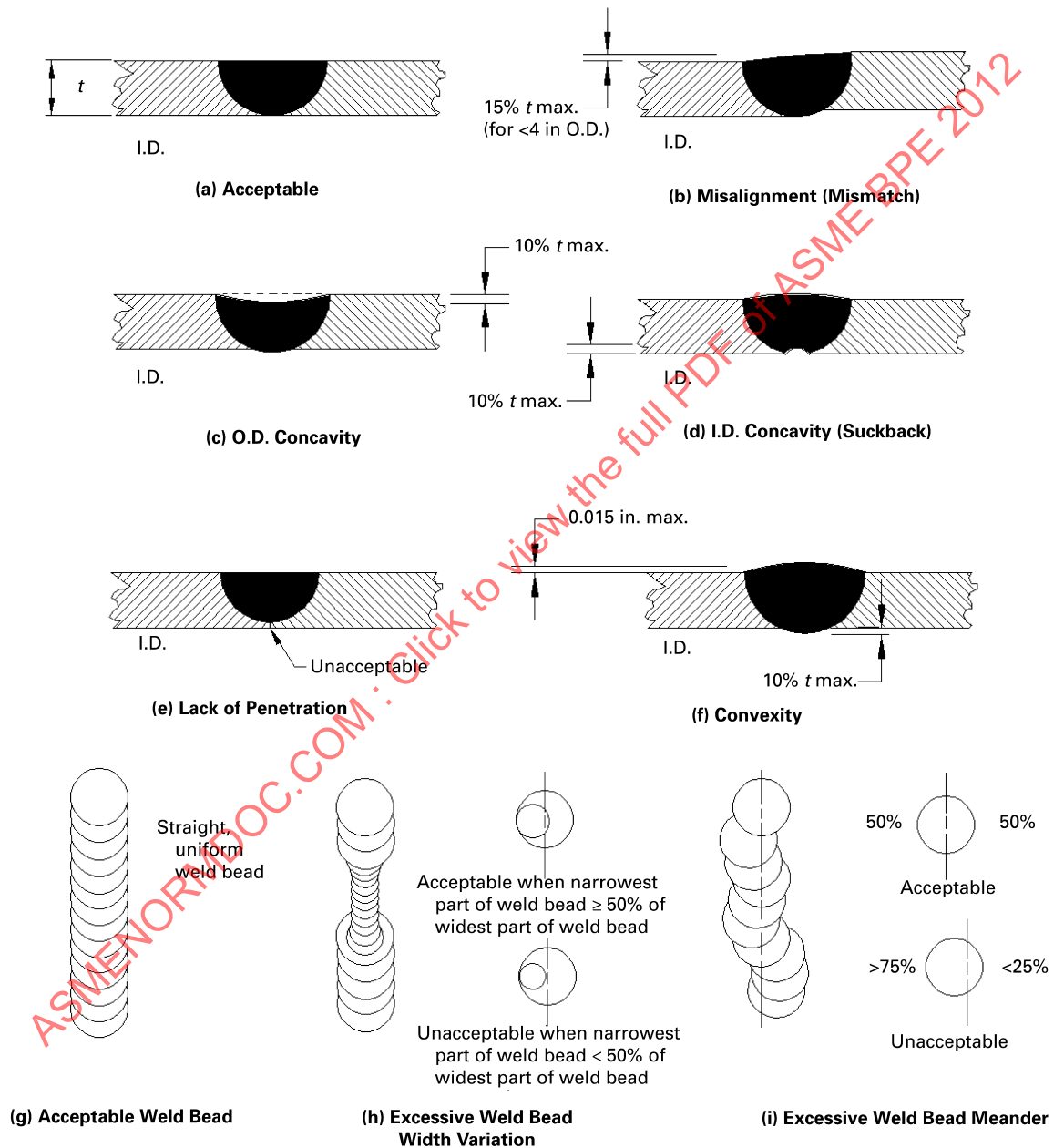
GENERAL NOTE: Includes all product forms (e.g., tube, fittings, castings, forgings, and bar) whose final dimensions meet Part DT requirements.

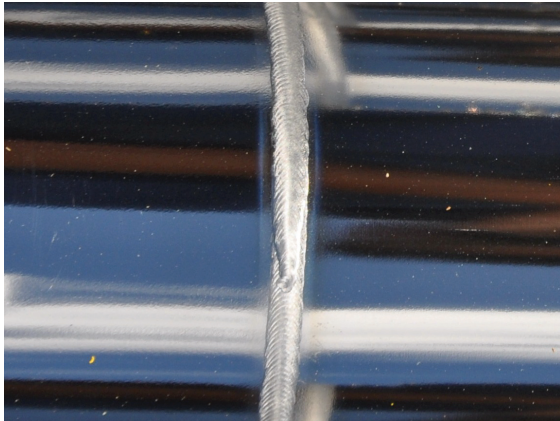
NOTES:

- (1) The limits of ASME B31.3 shall apply.
- (2) In the case of two different wall thicknesses, any acceptance criteria listed in terms of nominal wall thickness shall be based on the nominal wall thickness of the thinner tube.
- (3) Welds on tubing that has been in service may require unique criteria.
- (4) Any weld that shows unconsumed tack welds on the nonproduct contact surface must be inspected on the product contact surface; otherwise they are rejected. If the weld cannot be inspected on the product contact surface, rewelding per MJ-8.4.2 is not allowed. Rewelding per MJ-8.4.2 is allowed if the weld can be inspected on the product contact surface after rewelding.
- (5) Arc strikes on the nonproduct contact surface may be removed by mechanical polishing as long as the minimum design wall thickness is not compromised.

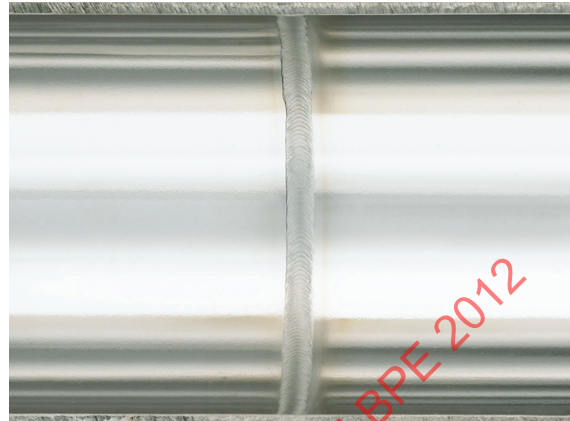
ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012



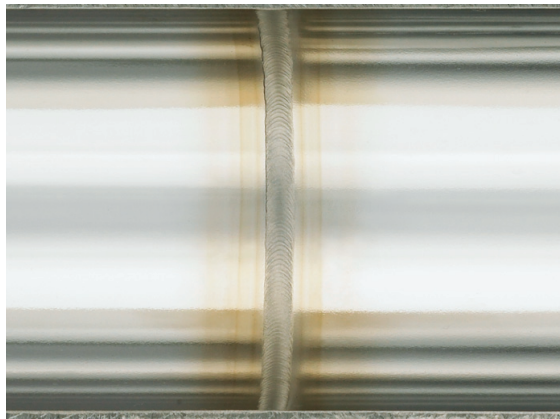
Fig. MJ-8.4-1 Acceptable and Unacceptable Weld Profiles for Tube Welds

(12) **Fig. MJ-8.4-2 Discoloration Acceptance Criteria for Weld Heat-Affected Zones on Electropolished 316L Tubing**

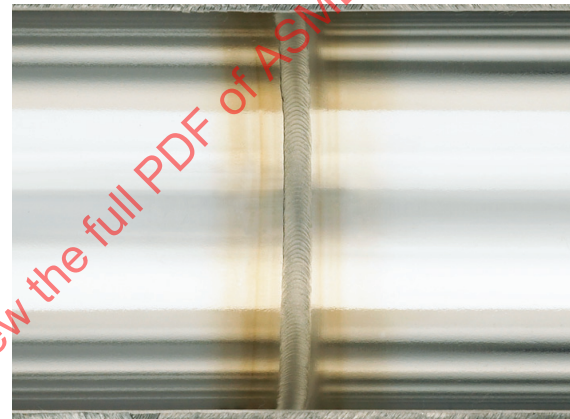
Sample #1a



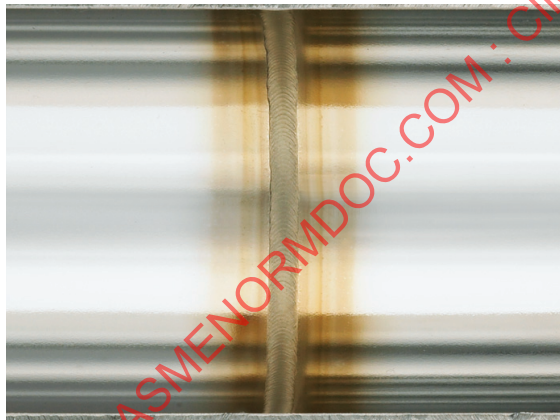
Sample #1b



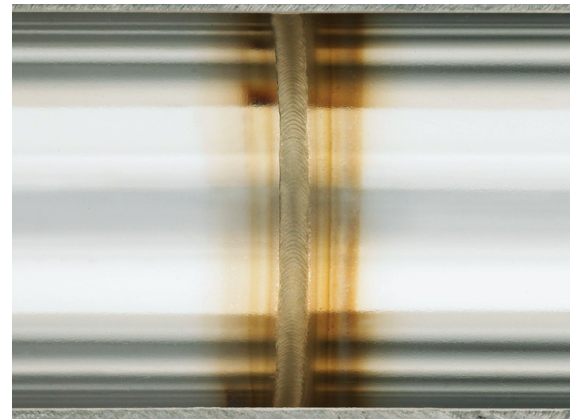
Sample #2



Sample #3



Sample #4



Sample #5

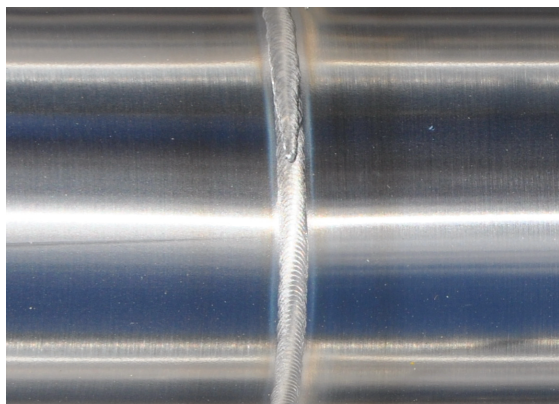
The weld bead shall have no discoloration. Weld heat-affected zones on electropolished 316L tubing having discoloration levels no worse than Samples #1 through #4 in the as-welded condition are acceptable. Heat-affected zone discoloration levels more severe than that shown in Sample #4 are unacceptable. Sample #5 shows an unacceptable weld and heat-affected zone discoloration for comparison. The user is cautioned that the colors observed during direct visual examination or borescope examination will be different viewing directly down (90 deg) at the surface compared with viewing at a lower angle along the edges.

GENERAL NOTES: The user is cautioned that electronic versions or photocopies of these acceptance criteria shall not be used for evaluation of sample or production welds since subtle differences in color can influence weld acceptability. Nonmandatory Appendix M explains the technique by which these acceptance criteria were determined.

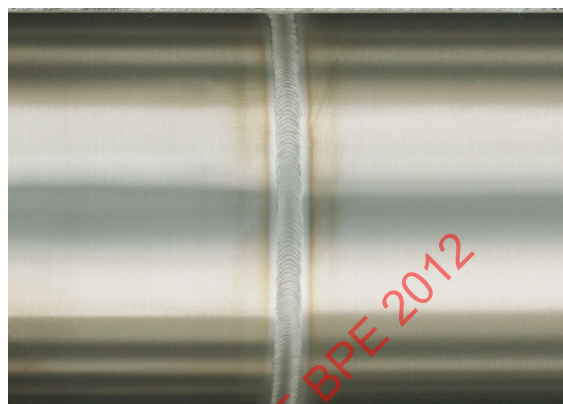
This figure is also available as a stand-alone document from ASME as ASME BPE-EP-2012.

Fig. MJ-8.4-3 Discoloration Acceptance Criteria for Weld Heat-Affected Zones on Mechanically Polished 316L Tubing

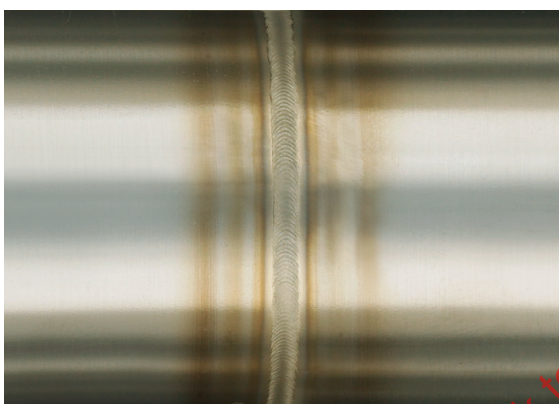
(12)



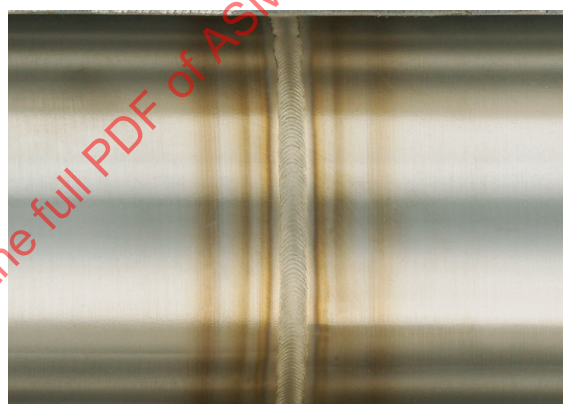
Sample #1a



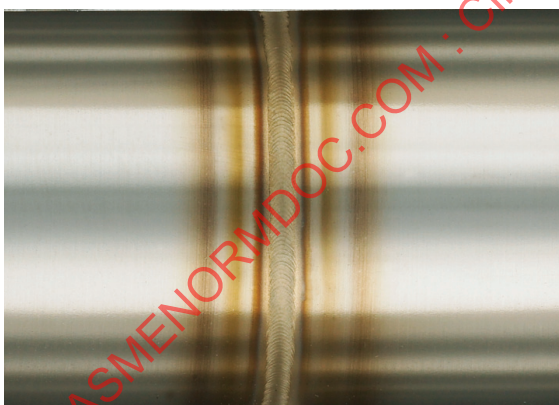
Sample #1b



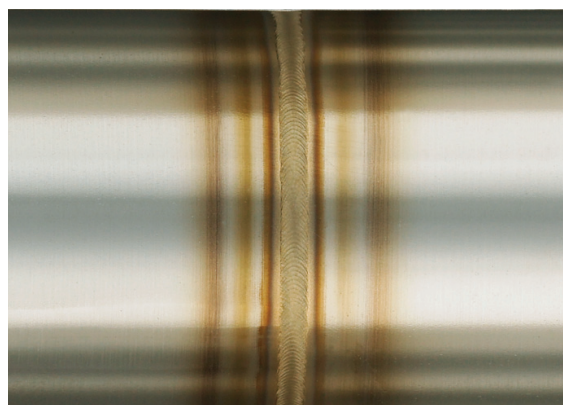
Sample #2



Sample #3



Sample #4



Sample #5

The weld bead shall have no discoloration. Weld heat-affected zones on mechanically polished 316L tubing having discoloration levels no worse than Samples #1 through #3 in the as-welded condition are acceptable. Heat-affected zone discoloration levels more severe than that shown in Sample #3 are unacceptable. Samples #4 and #5 show unacceptable welds and heat-affected zone discoloration for comparison. The user is cautioned that the colors observed during direct visual examination or borescope examination will be different viewing directly down (90 deg) at the surface compared with viewing at a lower angle along the edges.

GENERAL NOTES: The user is cautioned that electronic versions or photocopies of these acceptance criteria shall not be used for evaluation of sample or production welds since subtle differences in color can influence weld acceptability. Nonmandatory Appendix M explains the technique by which these acceptance criteria were determined.

This figure is also available as a stand-alone document from ASME as ASME BPE-MP-2012.

Table MJ-8.5-1 Acceptance Criteria for Tube-Attachment Welds [See Note (1)]

Discontinuities	Groove Welds [Note (2)]		Fillet Welds	
	Welds on Product Contact Surfaces	Welds on Nonproduct Contact Surfaces	Welds on Product Contact Surfaces	Welds on Nonproduct Contact Surfaces
Cracks	None	None	None	None
Lack of fusion	None	None	None	None
Incomplete penetration	None	None	N/A [Note (3)]	N/A
Porosity	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (4)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (4)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (4)	None open to the surface; otherwise, see Note (4)
Inclusions [metallic (e.g., tungsten) or nonmetallic]	None open to surface	None open to surface	None open to surface	None open to surface
Undercut	None	See Note (4)	None	See Note (4)
Concavity	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	N/A
Convexity	10% T_w max.	0.015 in. (0.38 mm) max. and Note (5)	10% T_w max.	N/A
Discoloration (heat affected zone)	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1
Discoloration (weld bead)	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1	See Table MJ-8.4-1
Reinforcement	See Convexity	See Convexity	N/A	N/A
Tack welds	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead; see Note (6)	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead; see Note (7)	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead; see Note (6)	Must be fully consumed by final weld bead; see Note (7)
Arc strikes	None	See Note (8)	None	See Note (8)
Overlap	None	None	None	None
Weld bead width	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Minimum fillet weld size	N/A	N/A	Per Client Spec. and Note (9)	Per Client Spec. and Note (9)
Misalignment (mismatch)	N/A as long as other conditions are met	N/A as long as other conditions are met	N/A	N/A

GENERAL NOTE: T_w is the nominal thickness of the thinner of the two members being joined. Weld metal must blend smoothly into base metal.

NOTES:

- (1) Tube attachment welds include groove welds and fillet welds in various joint configurations, such as proximity stems on jumpers on transfer panels, transfer panel nozzles, and locator pins on sprayballs.
- (2) Any weld where penetration is required into the joint.
- (3) Penetration to the product contact surfaces is neither required nor prohibited. Welds that penetrate through to the product contact surface may exhibit intermittent penetration. Weld penetration through to the product contact surface must meet all other product contact surface requirements of this table and Table MJ-8.4-1.
- (4) The limits of ASME B31.3 shall apply.
- (5) For $T_w \geq \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), convexity (reinforcement) is $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).
- (6) Rewelding per MJ-8.5-2 is allowed.
- (7) Any weld showing unconsumed tack weld(s) on the nonproduct contact surface can be rewelded per MJ-8.5-2 if the product contact surface can be reinspected. Otherwise, it is rejected.
- (8) Arc strikes on the nonproduct contact surface may be removed by mechanical polishing as long as the minimum design wall thickness is not compromised.
- (9) For welds designated by the owner/user as seal welds, there is no minimum fillet weld size.



Part SF

Product Contact Surface Finishes

SF-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide product contact surface finish acceptance criteria for metallic and polymeric materials.

SF-2 METALLIC APPLICATIONS

SF-2.1 Applicable Systems

This Part shall be applicable to all systems designated by the owner/user or representative thereof.

Product contact surface requirements shall apply to all accessible and inaccessible areas of the systems that directly or indirectly come in contact with the designated product.

These systems shall include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following:

- (a) USP Water-for-Injection (WFI)
- (b) USP Purified Water
- (c) USP Pure Steam
- (d) other product/process contact surface systems

SF-2.2 Acceptance Criteria

Acceptance criteria, for common austenitic stainless steels as per Table MM-2.1-1, are listed in Tables SF-2.2-1 and SF-2.2-2. Acceptance criteria for other alloys as described in Part MM may differ and should be mutually agreed upon by both the owner/user and supplier prior to ordering material. Visual comparison charts or samples may be used to define acceptable and/or unacceptable product contact surfaces.

SF-2.3 Inspection and Techniques Employed in the Classification of Product Contact Surface Finishes

Product contact surface finish inspections shall be made by one or more of the following methods:

- (a) visual inspection
 - (1) direct visual inspection
 - (2) indirect visual inspection (e.g., borescopes, mirrors)
- (b) liquid penetrant
- (c) surface roughness measurement device (profilometer)
- (d) scanning electron microscopy
- (e) electron spectroscopy for chemical analysis
- (f) auger electron spectroscopy
- (g) replicas: ASTM E1351

Acceptance criteria for metallic product contact surface finishes are shown in Table SF-2.2-1.

Acceptance criteria for electropolished metallic product contact surface finishes shall meet requirements shown in Table SF-2.2-2 in addition to those shown in Table SF-2.2-1.

Visual inspection shall be performed in accordance with examination requirements in the BPV Code, Section V, Article 9.

CAUTION: When observing electropolished surfaces with certain light sources, such as LED lights, a slight variance in luster may appear and shall not be cause for rejection.

SF-2.4 Surface Condition

Product contact surfaces shall be finished using mechanical polishing, cold working, machining, passivation, or electropolishing processes in conformance with applicable sections of this Part. When required by the owner/user, the electropolishing or passivation contractors shall qualify their procedures in accordance with the appropriate appendices as referenced in this Part. All surfaces shall be clean, and surface roughness values shall be in accordance with Table SF-2.4-1. Cleanliness applies to finished components/equipment as produced and packaged by the manufacturer. Subsequent shipping, storage, handling, and/or installation may affect the cleanliness, and it will become a contractual issue between owner/user and manufacturer/service provider.

SF-2.5 Electropolishing Procedure Qualification

Electropolishing service providers shall maintain and implement a quality assurance/control program for their electropolishing procedures. They shall also qualify their electropolishing method(s) in accordance with a written procedure. This procedure shall specify the acceptable ranges of the electropolishing essential variables.

Nonmandatory Appendix H, Electropolishing Procedure Qualification, has been provided as a guide.

Flash electropolishing shall not be acceptable. Spot electropolishing shall be acceptable if it meets the requirements in this section.

SF-2.6 Passivation Procedure

Passivation for this Part shall be limited to newly installed or newly modified sections of systems and



Table SF-2.2-1 Acceptance Criteria for Metallic Product Contact Surface Finishes

Anomaly or Indication	Acceptance Criteria
Pits	If diameter <0.020 in. (0.51 mm) and bottom is shiny [Notes (1) and (2)]. Pits <0.003 in. (0.08 mm) diameter are irrelevant and acceptable.
Cluster of pits	No more than 4 pits per each 0.5 in. (13 mm) × 0.5 in. (13 mm) inspection window. The cumulative total diameter of all relevant pits shall not exceed 0.040 in. (1.02 mm)
Dents	None accepted [Note (3)].
Finishing marks	If R_a max. is met.
Welds	Welds used in the as-welded condition shall meet the requirements of MJ-8. Welds finished after welding shall be flush with the base metal, and concavity and convexity shall meet the requirements of MJ-8. Such finishing shall meet the R_a requirements of Table SF-2.4-1.
Nicks	None accepted.
Scratches	For tubing, if cumulative length is <12.0 in. (305 mm) per 20 ft (6.1 m) tube length or prorated and if depth is <0.003 in. (0.08 mm). For fittings, valves, and other process components, if cumulative length is <0.25 in. (6.4 mm), depth <0.003 in. (0.08 mm), and R_a max. is met. For vessels, if length <0.50 in. (13 mm) at 0.003 in. (0.08 mm) depth and if <3 per inspection window [Note (4)].
Surface cracks	None accepted.
Surface inclusions	If R_a max. is met.
Surface residuals	None accepted, visual inspection
Surface roughness (R_a)	See Table SF-2.4-1.
Weld slag	For tubing, up to 3 per 20 ft (6.1 m) length or prorated, if <75% of the width of the weld bead. For fittings, valves, vessels, and other process components, none accepted (as welded shall meet the requirements of MJ-8 and Table MJ-8.4-1).
Porosity	None open to the surface.

GENERAL NOTE: This table covers surface finishes that are mechanically polished or any other finishing method that meets the R_a max.

NOTES:

- (1) Black bottom pit of any depth is not acceptable.
- (2) Pits in super-austenitic and nickel alloys may exceed this value. Acceptance criteria for pit size shall be established by agreement between owner/user and supplier. All other pit criteria remain the same.
- (3) For vessels, dents in the area covered by and resulting from welding dimple heat transfer jackets are acceptable.
- (4) An inspection window is defined as an area 4 in. × 4 in. (100 mm × 100 mm).



Table SF-2.2-2 Additional Acceptance Criteria for Electropolished Metallic Product Contact Surface Finishes

Anomaly or Indication	Acceptance Criteria
Blistering	None accepted
Buffing	None accepted (following electropolishing)
Cloudiness	None accepted
End grain effect	Acceptable if R_a max. is met
Fixture marks	Acceptable if electropolished
Haze	None accepted
Orange peel	Acceptable if R_a max. is met
Stringer indication	Acceptable if R_a max. is met
Weld whitening	Acceptable if R_a max. is met

Table SF-2.4-1 R_a Readings for Metallic Product Contact Surfaces

Surface Designation	Mechanically Polished [Note (1)]	
	R_a Max.	
	$\mu\text{in.}$	μm
SF0	No finish requirement	No finish requirement
SF1	20	0.51
SF2	25	0.64
SF3	30	0.76
	Mechanically Polished [Note (1)] and Electropolished	
	R_a Max.	
	$\mu\text{in.}$	μm
SF4	15	0.38
SF5	20	0.51
SF6	25	0.64

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) All R_a readings are taken across the lay, wherever possible.
 (b) No single R_a reading shall exceed the R_a max. value in this table.
 (c) Other R_a readings are available if agreed upon between owner/user and supplier, not to exceed values in this table.

NOTE:

- (1) Or any other finishing method that meets the R_a max.

components. Passivation shall be performed in accordance with an approved quality assurance/control program. The passivation method(s) including procedures for initial water flushing, chemical cleaning and degreasing, passivation, and final rinse(s) shall be qualified in accordance with a written procedure and documentation package. This procedure shall specify the acceptable ranges of the passivation essential variables. Nonmandatory Appendix E, Passivation Procedure Qualification, has been provided as a guide to passivation practices and evaluation of passivated surfaces. Spot passivation is permitted. The pickling process shall not be accepted as a substitute for passivation. There is no universally accepted nondestructive test for the presence of a passive layer.

For passivated product contact surfaces, the acceptance criteria in Table SF-2.6-1 apply in addition to Table SF-2.2-1 and/or Table SF-2.2-2, as applicable. Tests to ensure the presence of a passive layer shall be agreed to between the owner/user and contractor.

SF-2.7 Normative References

The following standards contain provisions that, through reference, specify terms, definitions, and parameters for the determination of surface texture (roughness, waviness, and primary profile) by profiling methods.

ASME B46.1, Surface Texture (Surface Roughness, Waviness, and Lay)



Table SF-2.6-1 Acceptance Criteria for Metallic Passivated Product Contact Surface Finishes

Anomaly or Indication	Acceptance Criteria
Surface particles	No particles observed under visual inspection, without magnification, and using adequate room lighting.
Stains	None accepted (weld discoloration to comply with Part MJ, Tables MJ-8.2-1 through MJ-8.5-1).
Visible construction debris	None accepted
Visible oils or organic compounds	None accepted

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Surface condition must meet Tables SF-2.2-1 and/or SF-2.2-2, as applicable.
- (b) Additional tests/acceptance criteria may be selected from Table E-5-1, Test Matrix for Evaluation of Cleaned and/or Passivated Surfaces in Nonmandatory Appendix E, Passivation Procedure Qualification.

Publisher: The American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990; Order Department: 22 Law Drive, P.O. Box 2900, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2900 (www.asme.org)

ISO 3274, Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method — Nominal characteristics of contact (stylus) instruments

ISO 4287, Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method — Terms, definitions and surface texture parameters

ISO 4288, Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method — Rules and procedures for the assessment of surface texture

ISO 11562, Geometrical Product Specifications (GPS) — Surface texture: Profile method — Metrological characteristics of phase correct filters

Publisher: International Organization for Standardization (ISO) Central Secretariat, 1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse, Case postale 56, CH-1211, Genève 20, Switzerland/Suisse (www.iso.org)

SF-2.8 Rouge and Stainless Steel

Rouge is a naturally occurring phenomenon in existing stainless steel high purity process systems (including water or pure steam). The degree to which it forms depends upon

(a) the stainless steel material used for each component within the system

(b) how the system was fabricated (e.g., welding, surface finish, passivation treatment)

(c) what process service conditions the system is exposed to (e.g., water purity, process chemicals, temperatures, pressures, mechanical stresses, flow velocities, and oxygen exposure)

(d) how the system is maintained

The presence of rouge in a system needs to be evaluated against its potential to affect the product, process, and/or long-term operation of the system. Nonmandatory Appendix D, Rouge and Stainless Steel,

provides the methods to measure rouge in a system in both the process solution and on the actual product contact surface. It also suggests various fabrication and operation practices to minimize rouge formation and methods/techniques for its remediation.

For more information, refer to the ISPE Water and Steam Systems Baseline® Pharmaceutical Engineering Guide.

SF-3 POLYMERIC APPLICATIONS**SF-3.1 Applicable Systems**

This section shall be applicable to all systems designated by the owner/user or representative thereof.

Product contact surface requirements shall apply to all accessible and inaccessible areas of the systems that directly or indirectly come in contact with the designated product.

These systems shall include process systems and clean utilities.

SF-3.2 Materials

The preferred materials of construction for these systems shall be as described in PM-2, Materials.

SF-3.3 Inspection and Techniques Employed in the Classification of Product Contact Surface Finishes

Product contact surface finish inspections shall be made by one or more of the following methods:

(a) visual inspection

(1) direct visual inspection (e.g., illumination through pipe/tube wall)

(2) indirect visual inspection (e.g., borescopes, mirrors)

(b) surface roughness measurement device: profilometer or other surface measurement devices

Acceptance criteria of polymeric product contact surface finishes are shown in Table SF-3.3-1.



Table SF-3.3-1 Acceptance Criteria for Polymeric Product Contact Surface Finishes

Anomaly or Indication	Acceptance Criteria
Scratches	For rigid tubing/piping, if cumulative length is <12.0 in. (305 mm) per 20 ft (6.1 m) tube/pipe length or prorated and if depth <0.003 in. (0.08 mm). For other process components, surface finish must be agreed upon by supplier and owner/user.
Surface cracks	None accepted
Surface inclusions	None accepted
Surface roughness, R_a	See Table SF-3.4-1.

GENERAL NOTE: All product contact surface finishes shall be defined by the owner/user and supplier using the criteria described in SF-1, Purpose and Scope.

Table SF-3.4-1 R_a Readings for Polymeric Product Contact Surfaces

Surface Designation	R_a max.	
	μ in.	μ m
SFP0	No finish requirement	No finish requirement
SFP1	15	0.38
SFP2	25	0.64
SFP3	30	0.76
SFP4	40	1.01
SFP5	50	1.27
SFP6	60	1.52

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) No single R_a reading shall exceed the R_a max. value in this table.
- (b) Other R_a readings are available if agreed upon between owner/user and supplier, not to exceed values in this table.

Visual inspection shall be performed under adequate room lighting. Additional lighting shall be used when appropriate to illuminate blind or darkened areas and to clarify questionable areas.

SF-3.4 Surface Condition

The following surface finishes of polymeric materials are available:

- (a) piping/tubing and fittings
 - (1) as molded

- (2) as extruded
- (3) as machined
- (4) as fabricated from molded, extruded, or machined components
- (b) sheet, rod, and block
 - (1) as molded
 - (2) as extruded
 - (3) as machined after molding or extrusion

These are generally utilized terms and may not be applicable in all cases. The final criteria shall be determined by the R_a values shown in Table SF-3.4-1.



(12)

Part SG

Sealing Components

SG-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide the requirements for the sealing components of seals, valves, and fittings used in the bioprocessing industry. These sealing components create or maintain process boundaries between system components and/or subassemblies to ensure process system integrity. This Part defines the design of seals, valves, and fittings. This Part also enables equipment manufacturers, system designers, and owners/users to specify the required seal, valve, and fitting type and performance for specific applications. It is not the intent of this Part to inhibit the development or use of new technologies.

SG-2 SEALING COMPONENT TYPES

SG-2.1 General

Sealing components used in bioprocessing equipment take a variety of forms based on their function within the system and the process boundaries to the atmosphere and other systems, which they must maintain. The following sections define the main types of sealing components and their acceptability for use in the bioprocessing industry. For this section, seals are divided into static and dynamic seals. All acceptable seals shall meet the design criteria, materials, and performance characteristics contained in this Standard.

SG-2.2 Static Seals

SG-2.2.1 General. A static seal is characterized by the absence of relative motion between sealing surfaces, or between the sealing surface and a mating surface, after initial installation. Small amounts of movement that might be caused by thermal expansion, vibration, bolt stretch, or seal response to fluid pressure, do not alter the static definition.

SG-2.2.2 Hygienic Unions. Hygienic unions provide connections between process components (e.g., pipe fittings, tank fittings, instruments, and hoses) to ensure the process integrity is maintained. They include seals between two ferrules.

The geometry of the most common hygienic union is governed by Table DT-7-1, and is shown in Figs. SG-2.2.2-1 and SG-2.2.2-2 of this Standard. Other geometries for the opposing ferrules are also used in the industry, and are controlled by relevant industry

standards [e.g., ISO 2852, DIN 11864 (-1, -2, -3, O-rings)]. (See Figs. SG-2.2.2-3 and SG-2.2.2-4.)

Other hygienic unions and cross-sectional geometries shall meet all of the requirements of this Standard, except for the ferrule dimensions.

Nonhygienic connections shown in Fig. SG-2.2.2-5 are not recommended (e.g., threaded fittings exposed to process fluid).

SG-2.2.3 O-Ring Seals. An O-ring is a ring seal with a circular cross section (a toroid), designed to be seated in a groove and compressed during assembly. O-rings are most often used as static seals. These are used extensively in hygienic applications and can seal both radially and axially opposed faces. Common static O-ring applications include sealing fasteners, shaft couplings, and pump and filtration components.

Other ring seal geometries of varying cross sections (e.g., manway gaskets) may be used in hygienic applications. However, significant differences may exist in their performance (e.g., pressure and cleanability) and should be evaluated accordingly.

Examples of O-ring industry standards include SAE AS568, Aerospace Size Standard for O-Rings and ISO 3601, Fluid Power Systems — O-Rings.

For use in bioprocessing applications, O-rings and their mating surfaces shall meet the requirements of this Standard.

SG-2.2.4 Other Static Seals. Other static seals used in bioprocessing applications shall meet the requirements of this Standard (e.g., flat gaskets, L-cups, U-cups, stoppers, septums, and bioseals).

Inflatable static seals are static seals where gas is supplied to the inner part of the seal, providing a pillow barrier between the process and the atmosphere. They are commonly used in large process components, and in connections, to support structures.

SG-2.3 Dynamic Seals

A dynamic seal is characterized by the movement of the seal surface and a mating surface, after initial installation.

SG-2.3.1 Valves

SG-2.3.1.1 General. Valves are process components that provide dynamic seals within the process. They also provide seals between the process and the atmosphere.



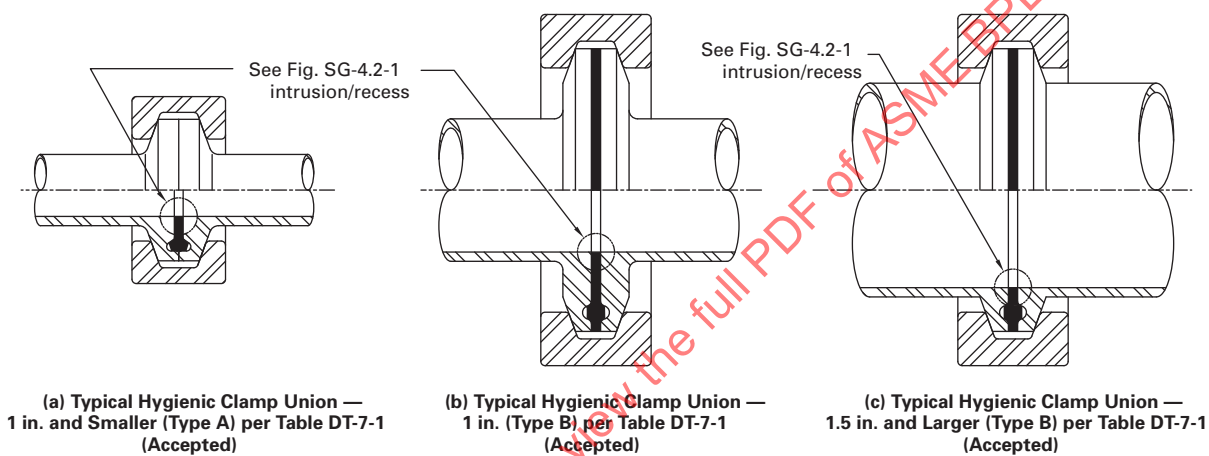
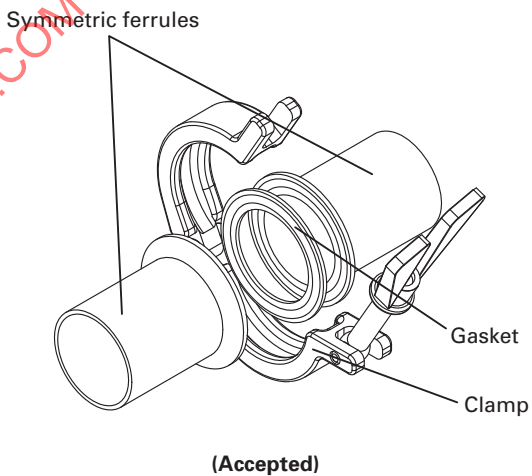
Fig. SG-2.2.2-1 Hygienic Union per Table DT-7-1**Fig. SG-2.2.2-2 Hygienic Clamp Union per Table DT-7-1**

Fig. SG-2.2.2-3 Hygienic Union per DIN 11864

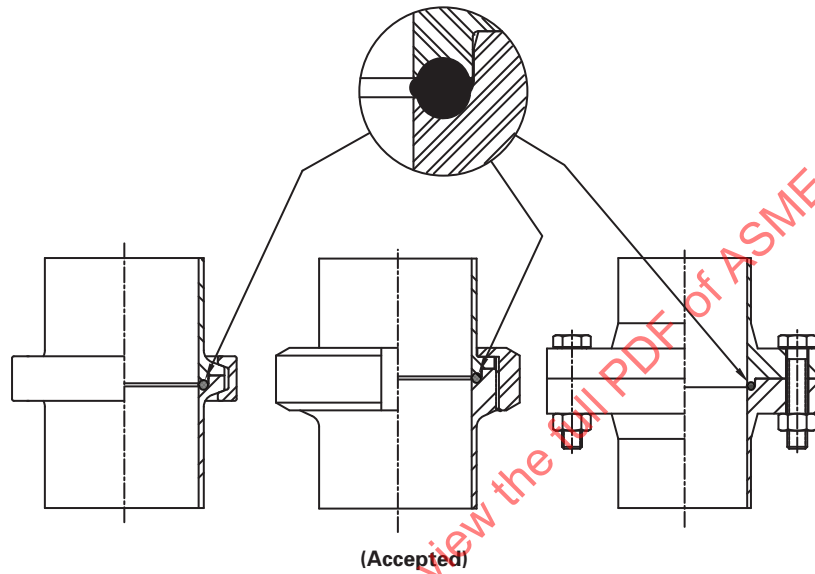


Fig. SG-2.2.2-4 Hygienic Clamp Union per DIN 11864

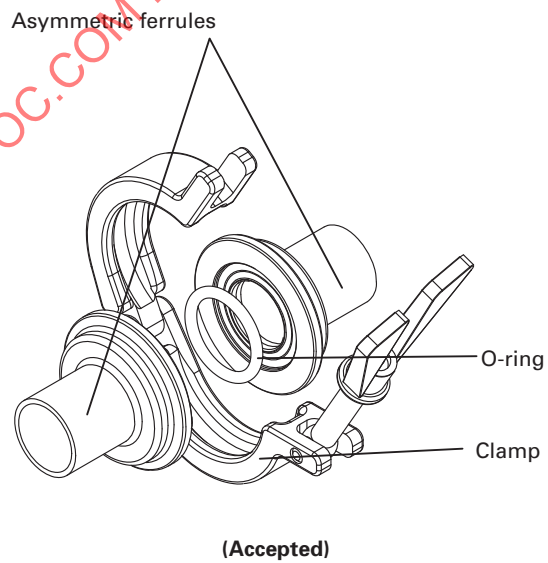


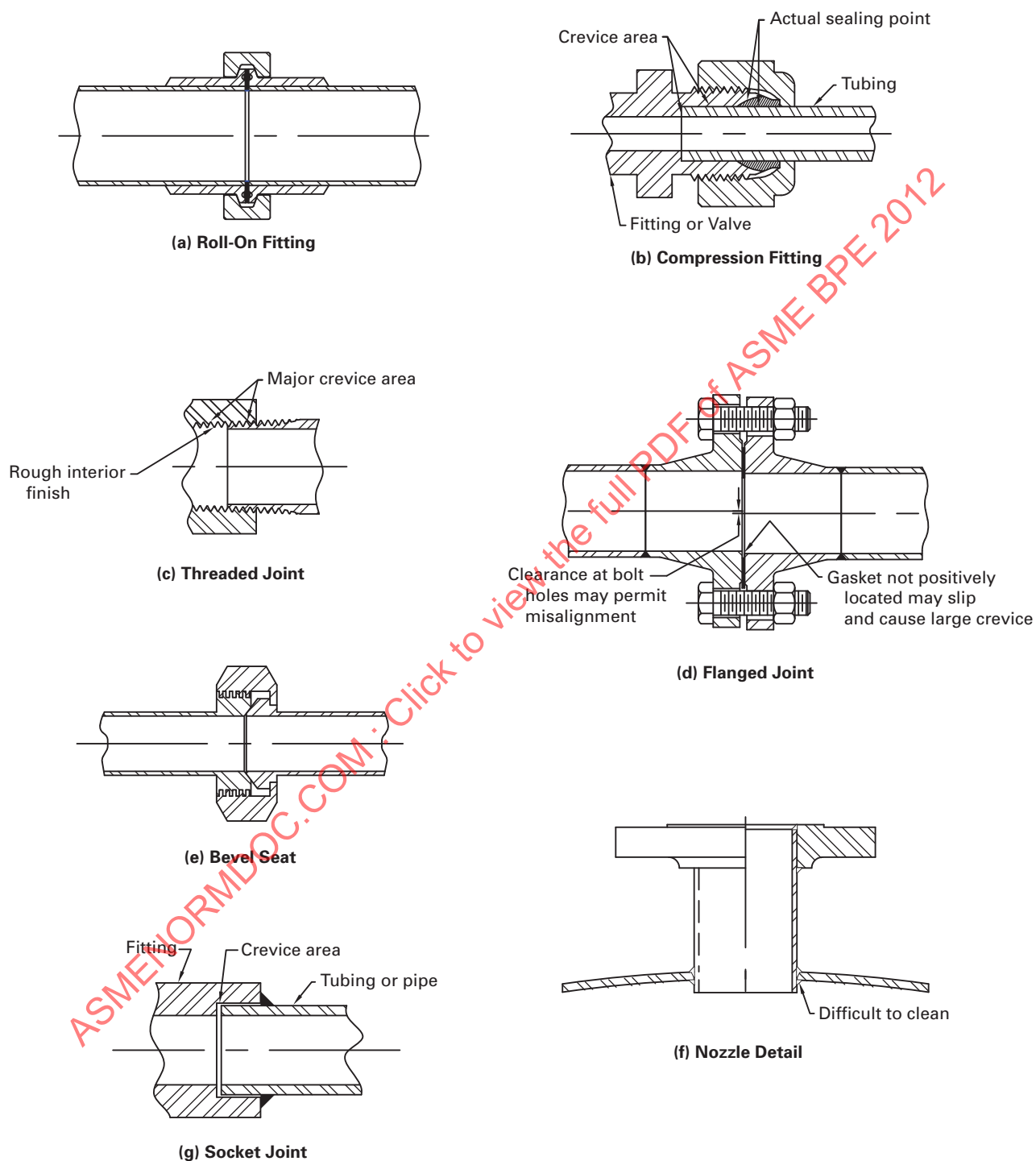
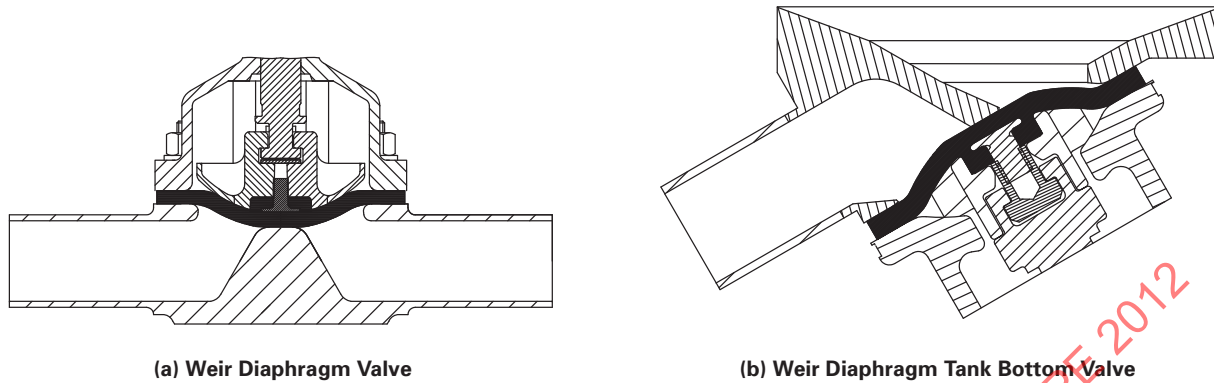
Fig. SG-2.2.2-5 Nonhygienic Connections**(Not Accepted For Hygienic Service)**

Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-1 Weir Valves



SG-2.3.1.2 Diaphragm Valves

(a) *Weir Diaphragm Valve, Weir Diaphragm Tank Bottom Valve.* The diaphragm seal is a flexible membrane that forms positive closure when compressed against the weir (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-1). The diaphragm is a product contact seal creating both static (atmospheric) and dynamic (differential) seals.

(b) *Radial Diaphragm Valve, Radial Diaphragm Tank Bottom Valve.* The diaphragm seal is a flexible membrane that forms positive closure when compressed against a radial seat (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-2). The diaphragm is typically a product contact seal creating both static (atmospheric) and dynamic (differential) seals. However, in some designs static seals may be used between body components.

(c) *Weirless Diaphragm Valve.* The diaphragm seal is a flexible membrane that modulates flow across a weirless valve body and also forms positive closure when compressed against the weirless valve body (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-3). The diaphragm is a product contact seal creating both atmospheric and differential seals.

(d) *Linear Control Valve.* A sliding seal (such as an O-ring) or non-sliding seal (such as a diaphragm) is used to seal a linear stem (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-4). For closure, the linear control valve may use a soft seal such as an O-ring or diaphragm, or a metal-to-metal seal/seat.

(e) *Regulator Valve.* A control diaphragm is a flexible membrane that typically is used as a pressure barrier and also forms a static seal to the atmosphere. A plug type dynamic seal may be used for closure. Static seals are used between body components. To regulate the flow, the operating diaphragm responds to pressure to control the regulating plug and functions as a static seal around its perimeter (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-5).

SG-2.3.1.3 Ball Valve, Ball Tank Bottom Valve. The seat/seal functions as a dynamic seal against the rotating ball. Static seals are used between body components.

A dynamic seal is used on a rotary stem (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.3-1).

SG-2.3.1.4 Rising Stem Single, Double Seat Mix Proof, Needle Valves. Plug(s) are used to close flow against seat(s). Dynamic seal(s) are used on linear stem(s). Static seals are used between body components (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.4-1).

SG-2.3.1.5 Butterfly Valves. The seat/seal creates a dynamic seal when the disc is rotated into the closed position (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.5-1). The seat/seal also forms the primary stem seal to prevent leakage through stem journal.

SG-2.3.1.6 Thermostatic Steam Trap. The valve seat is closed by a plug attached to a dynamic bellows seal. The body cavity for a serviceable steam trap is typically sealed by a static seal (see Fig. SD-3.1.2-1).

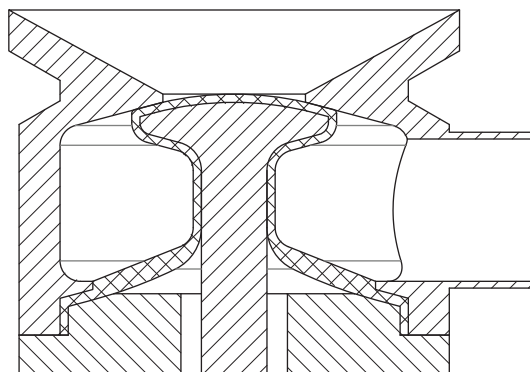
SG-2.3.1.7 Back Pressure Control Valve. A non-sliding seal (such as a diaphragm) is used to seal a linear stem. For closure, the valve may use a soft seal such as an O-ring or diaphragm, or a metal-to-metal seal/seat (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.7-1). To regulate the flow, the operating diaphragm responds to pressure to control the regulating plug and functions as a static seal around its perimeter.

SG-2.3.1.8 Pinch Valve. Pinch valves use a flexible tube or sleeve that forms a differential seal when closed (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.8-1).

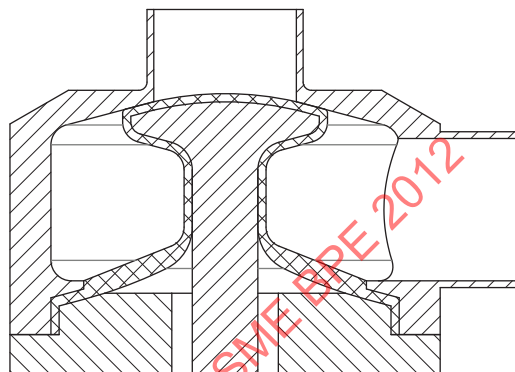
SG-2.3.1.9 Pressure Relief, Check Valves. The valve seat is closed either by mechanical means (e.g., spring) or by the process fluid such that the flow stream is blocked (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.9-1). The body cavity may be sealed by a static seal. The seat can be sealed with an O-ring seal.

SG-2.3.1.10 Plug Valves. The plug-body valve or plug-seal valve functions as a dynamic seal against the rotating plug (see Fig. SG-2.3.1.10-1).

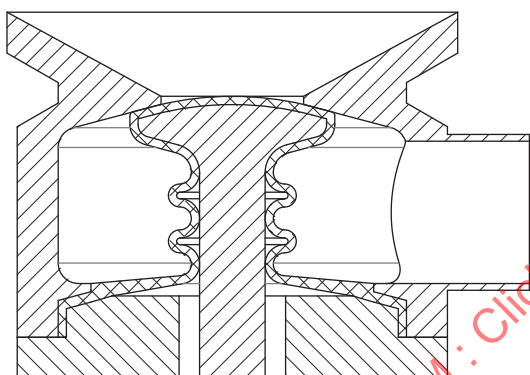
Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-2 Radial Valves



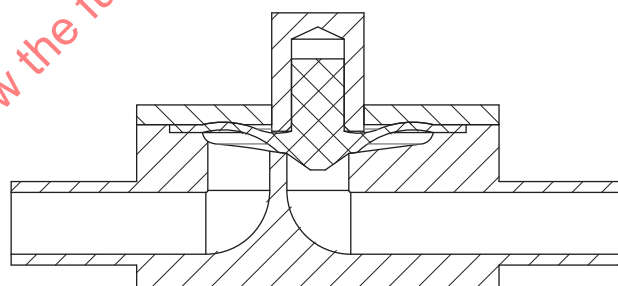
(a) Radial Diaphragm Tank Bottom Valve



(b) Radial Diaphragm Valve



(c) Bellows Radial Diaphragm Tank Bottom Valve



(d) In-Line Radial Diaphragm Valve

Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-3 Weirless Diaphragm Valve

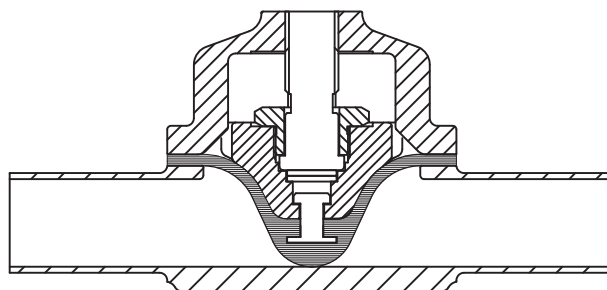
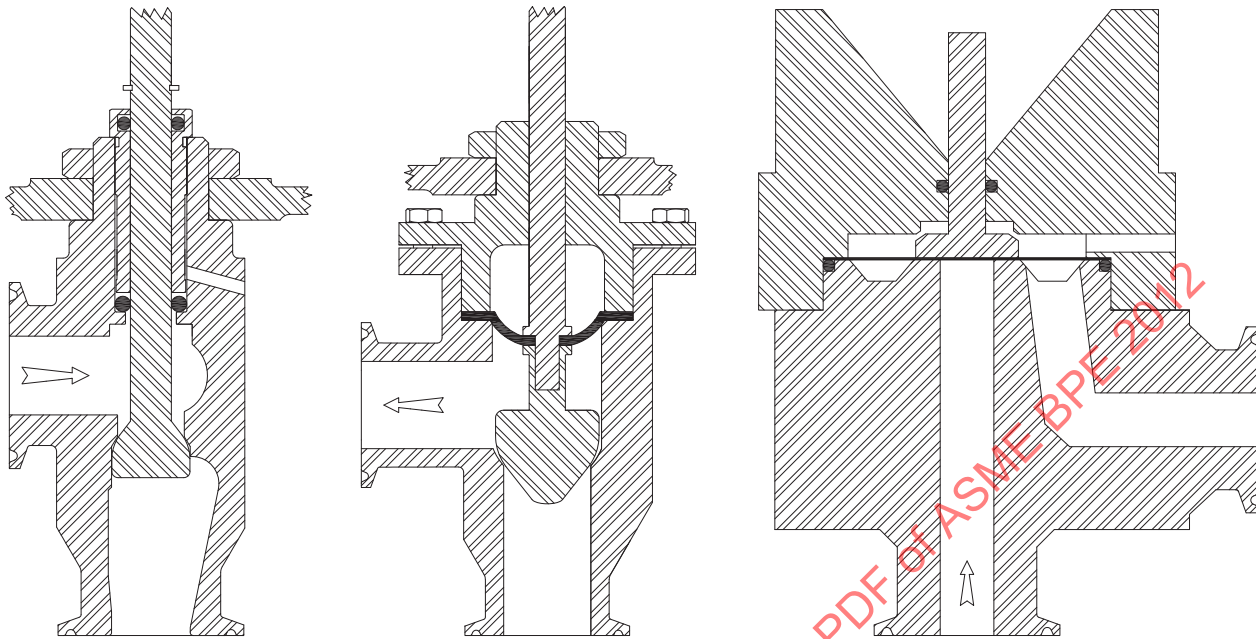


Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-4 Linear Control Valves



**(a) Linear Control Valve
With O-Ring Seal**

**(b) Linear Control Valve
With Elastomer Diaphragm Seal**

**(c) Linear Control Valve
With Metallic Diaphragm Seal**

Fig. SG-2.3.1.2-5 Regulator Valve

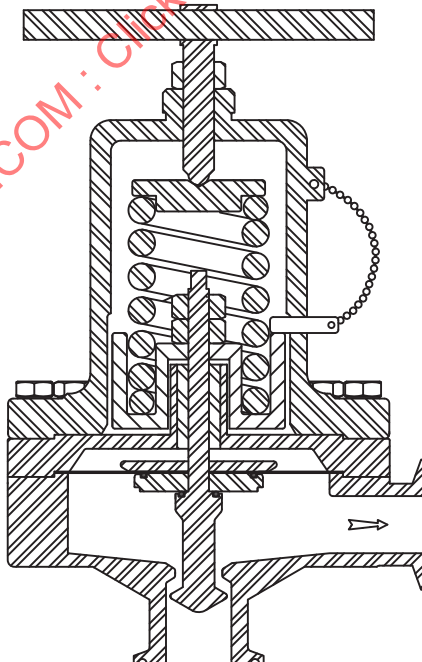


Fig. SG-2.3.1.3-1 Ball Valves

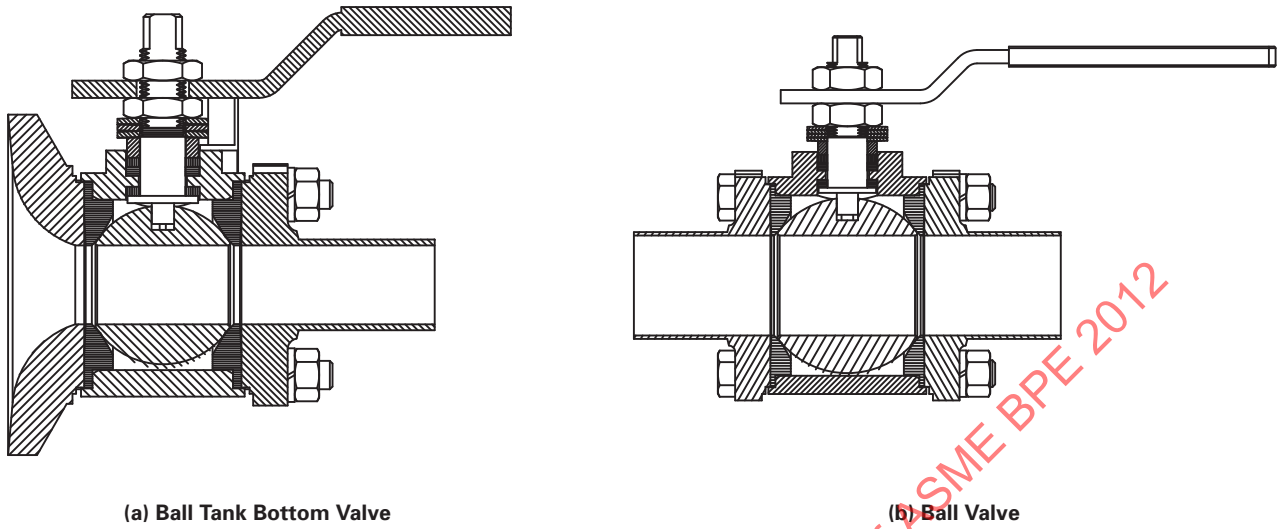


Fig. SG-2.3.1.4-1 Rising Stem Single Valve, Double Seat Mix Proof Valve, and Needle Valve

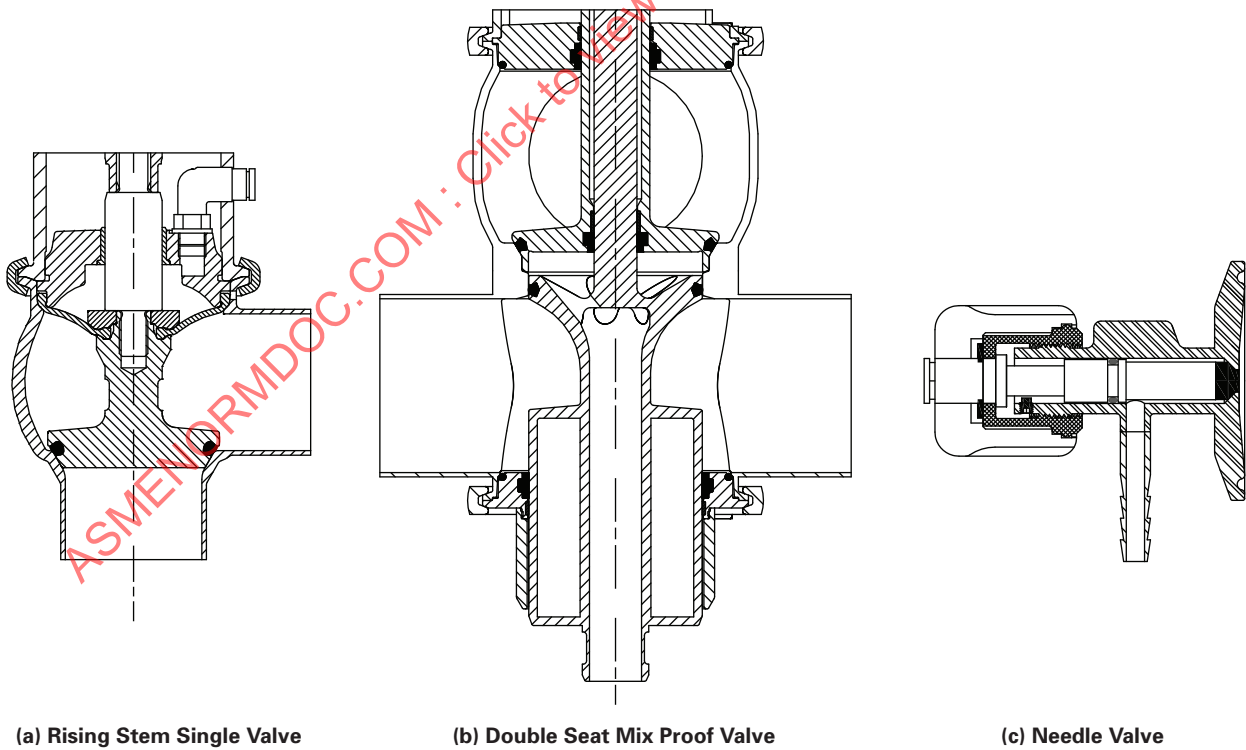


Fig. SG-2.3.1.5-1 Butterfly Valve

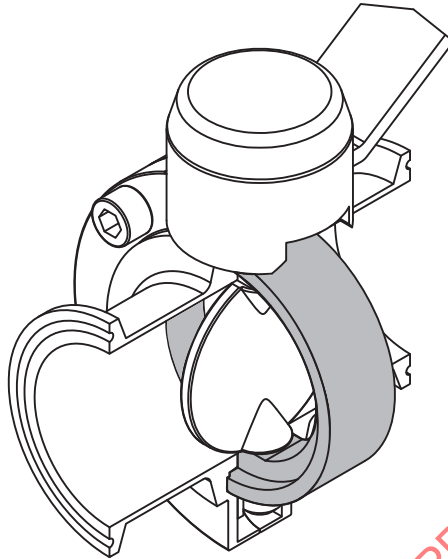


Fig. SG-2.3.1.7-1 Back Pressure Control Valve

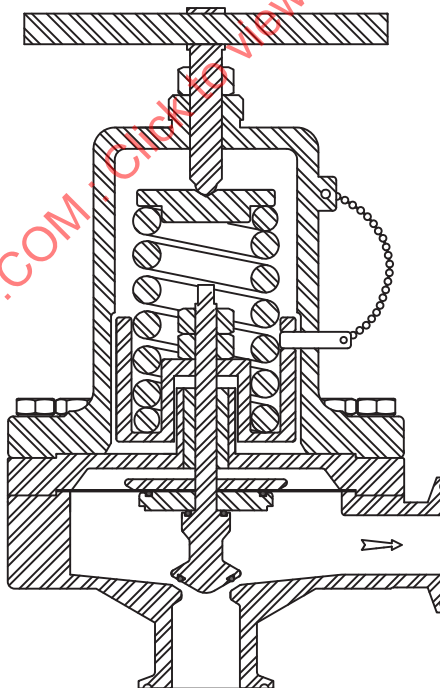


Fig. SG-2.3.1.8-1 Pinch Valve

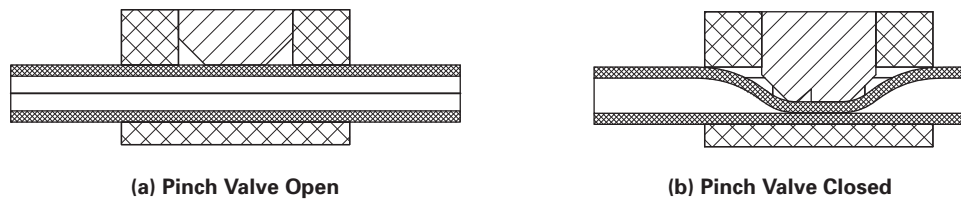


Fig. SG-2.3.1.9-1 Pressure Relief and Check Valves

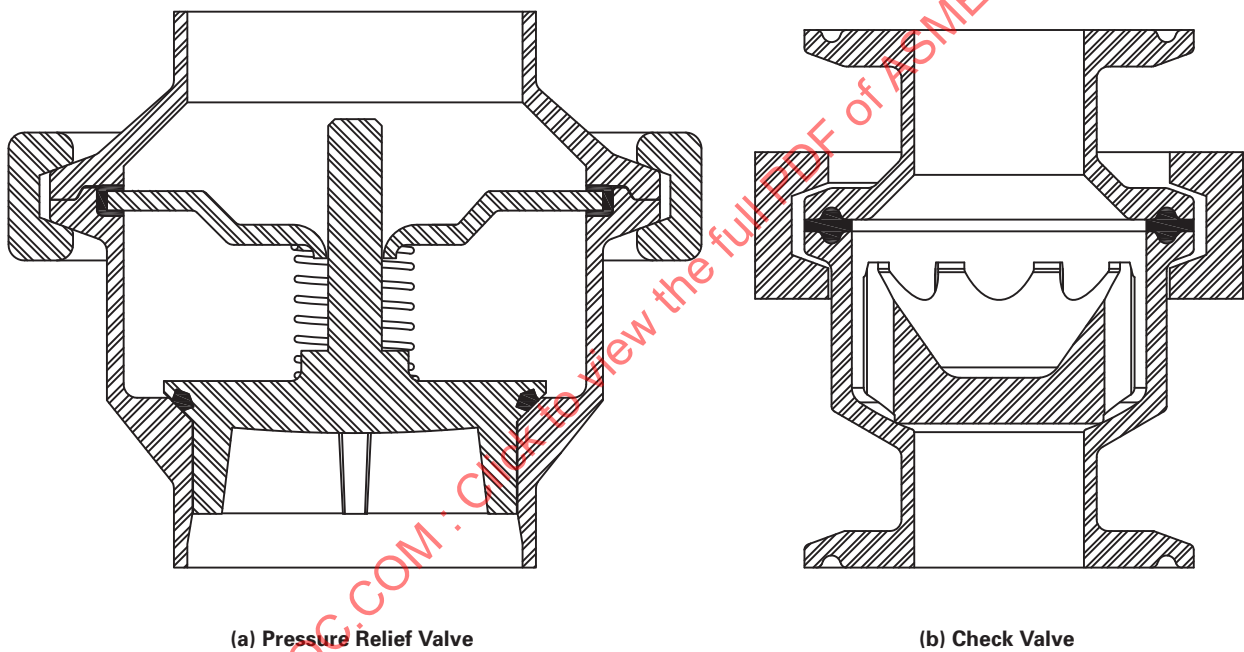


Fig. SG-2.3.1.10-1 Plug Valve

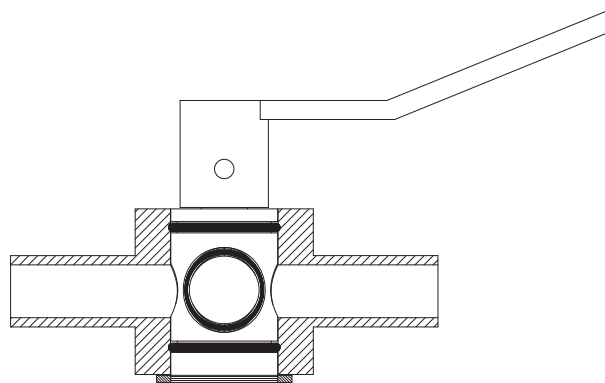
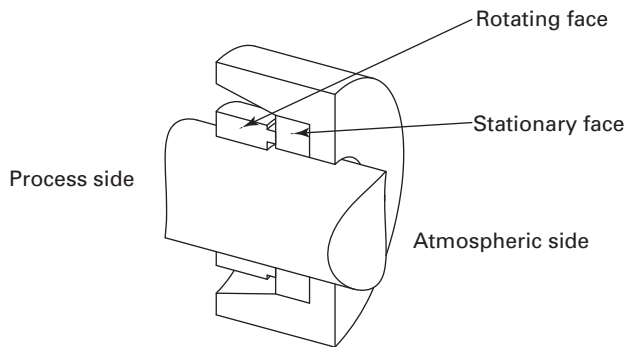


Fig. SG-2.3.2.2-1 Single Mechanical Seal**SG-2.3.2 Mechanical Seals****SG-2.3.2.1 General**

(a) An end face mechanical seal is a device that controls leakage of fluids along rotating shafts. Sealing is accomplished by a stationary face bearing against the face of a rotating ring mounted to the shaft. The sealing faces are perpendicular to the shaft axis. Axial mechanical force and fluid pressure maintain the contact between the wearing seal faces.

(b) Selection of the proper seal for the specific equipment and application is the responsibility of the owner/user. The owner/user shall consult the equipment supplier/manufacture.

SG-2.3.2.2 Single Mechanical Seals

(a) Single mechanical seals are seal arrangements in which there is only one mechanical seal per seal chamber.

(b) Single mechanical seals offer simplicity and an observable leakage path to the atmosphere.

(c) Single mechanical seals weep fluid across the face in the direction from high pressure to low pressure.

(d) Single Mechanical Seals for Pumps

(1) The process fluid provides lubrication and cooling for the faces. A single seal operating in dry or vacuum conditions will result in seal failure.

(2) Not all process fluids will provide adequate lubrication and cooling. In this case an alternative seal design or flush plan shall be considered.

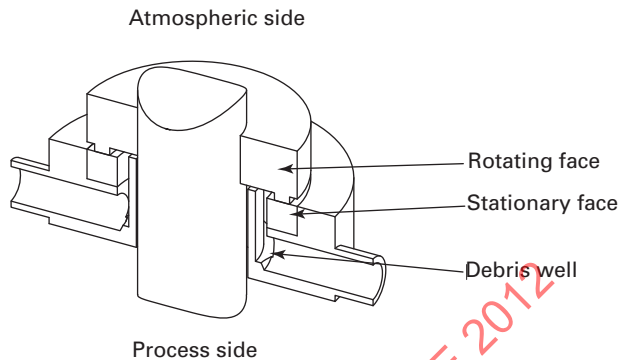
(3) A typical single seal for pumps is illustrated in Fig. SG-2.3.2.2-1.

(e) Single Mechanical Seals for Top Mounted Agitators

(1) Single mechanical seals for top mounted agitators operate in the head space of the vessel typically exposed to the gas phase of the process fluid.

(2) Top mounted agitator single seals may contain a debris well to catch wear material from dry contacting faces.

(3) A typical single seal design for top mounted agitators is illustrated in Fig. SG-2.3.2.2-2.

Fig. SG-2.3.2.2-2 Single Seal for Top Entry Agitator**SG-2.3.2.3 Dual Mechanical Seals****(a) Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seals**

(1) Dual pressurized mechanical seals consist of an inboard mechanical seal and an outboard mechanical seal. Pressurized barrier fluid is injected between these two seals. The inboard mechanical seal has process contact, and the outboard mechanical seal has atmospheric contact.

(2) Pressurized barrier fluid means the barrier fluid pressure is higher than the process pressure acting on the inboard mechanical seal.

(3) Dual pressurized mechanical seals offer absolute separation of process and atmosphere.

(4) The pressurized barrier fluid will weep into the process and will weep into the atmosphere.

(5) The owner/user shall arrange for a pressurized barrier fluid to be introduced between the inboard seal and the outboard seal to ensure a positive barrier exists between the process and the atmosphere. A liquid barrier fluid such as water also cools and lubricates the dual mechanical seal. Gas barrier fluid such as air provides a barrier between the atmosphere and process only and does not provide cooling or lubrication to the seal faces.

(6) Providing barrier fluid flow and pressure at an appropriate temperature is the responsibility of the owner/user and shall be based on the recommendation of the equipment manufacturer.

(7) A typical dual pressurized mechanical seal is illustrated in Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-1 for pumps and Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-2 for top entry agitators.

(b) Dual Unpressurized Mechanical Seals

(1) Dual unpressurized mechanical seals consist of an inboard mechanical seal and an outboard mechanical seal. Buffer fluid is injected between these two seals. The inboard mechanical seal has product contact, and the outboard mechanical seal has atmospheric contact.

(2) Unpressurized buffer fluid means the buffer fluid pressure is lower than the process pressure acting on the inboard mechanical seal. The highest pressure in the sealing system is the process pressure on the inboard side of the inboard seal. The lowest pressure of the system is the atmosphere pressure on the outboard seal.

Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-1 Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seal for Pumps

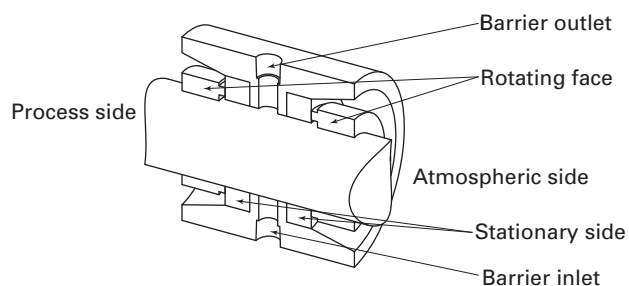


Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-2 Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seal for Top Entry Agitator

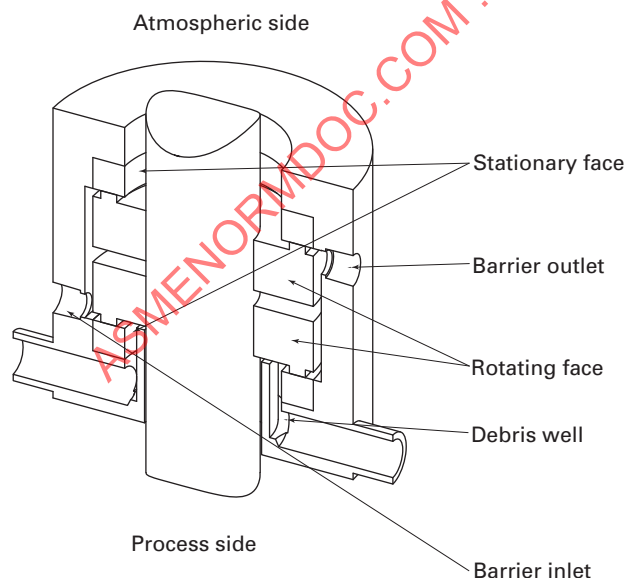
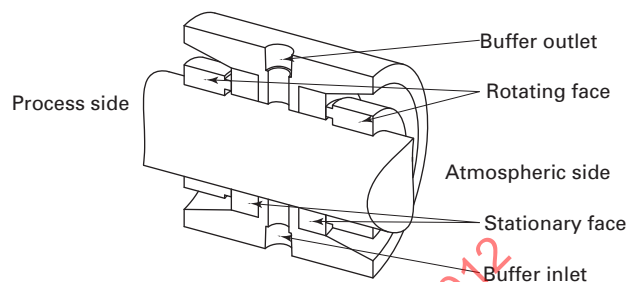


Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-3 Dual Unpressurized Mechanical Seal for Pumps



(3) Dual unpressurized mechanical seals offer absolute separation of the atmosphere from the process, but do not provide absolute separation of the process from the atmosphere.

(4) Process fluid will weep into the unpressurized buffer fluid, and the buffer fluid will in turn weep into the atmosphere along with dilute process fluid.

(5) The owner/user shall arrange for an unpressurized buffer fluid to be introduced between the inboard seal and the outboard seal to ensure a buffer between the product and the atmosphere. The process will penetrate between the inboard seal faces. The buffer fluid with traces of process fluid will penetrate the outboard seal faces.

(6) Providing buffer fluid flow and pressure at an appropriate temperature is the responsibility of the owner/user and shall be based on the recommendation of the equipment manufacturer.

(7) A typical dual unpressurized mechanical seal is illustrated in Fig. SG-2.3.2.3-3.

SG-2.3.2.4 Flush Plans. A flush plan describes how the end face mechanical seal is lubricated and cooled. The flush plan numbers directly reflect plans that were developed by The American Petroleum Institute (API 682), subsequently adopted by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI B73: Specifications for Centrifugal Pumps for Chemical Process), and are global standard shorthand for seal support systems. If properly implemented to the requirements of this Standard, all of the following flush plans are acceptable for use in the bioprocessing industry. The numbering system used below is also recognized and used by The Fluid Sealing Association (FSA) and the European Sealing Association (ESA as a group associated with FSA). ISO 21049, API 682, and ISO 13709 also contain important information about support systems for mechanical seals.

(a) *Flush Plan 01.* Internal seal chamber circulation for single seal from pump discharge. High pressure discharge product flows to the low pressure seal chamber. The flow of product cools and lubricates the seal faces. See Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-1.

Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-1 Flush Plan 01

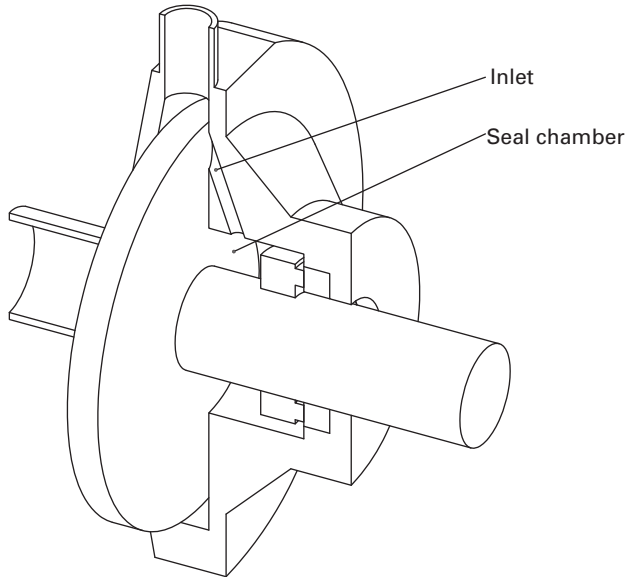


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-3 Flush Plan 11

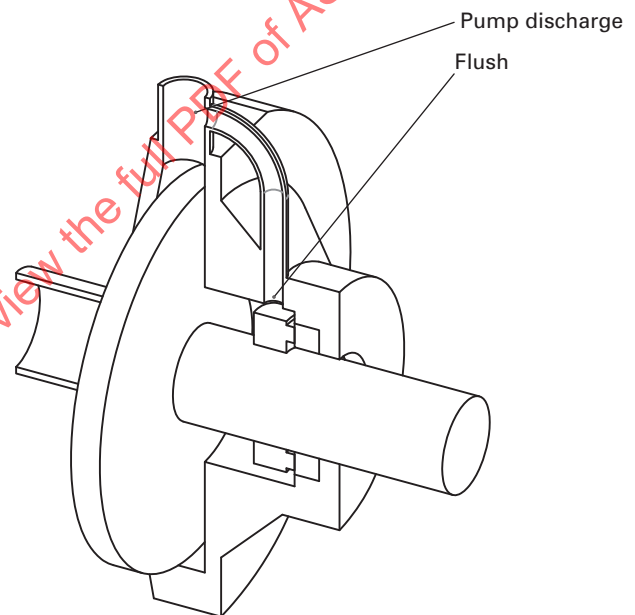
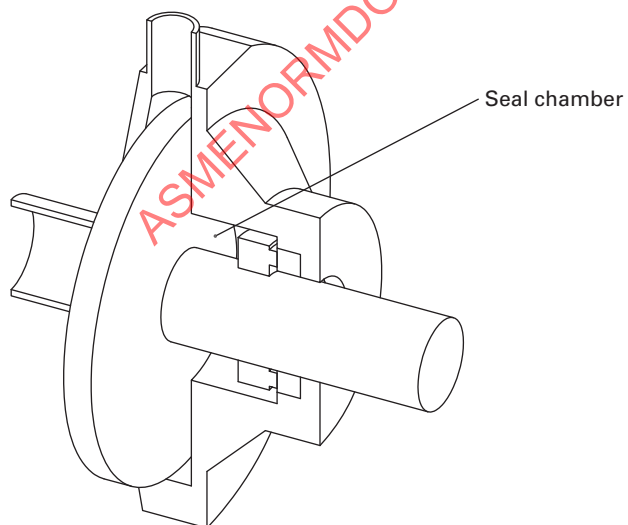


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-2 Flush Plan 02



(b) *Flush Plan 02*. Dead-ended seal chamber with no other sources of flush for single seal. The ambient conditions of the seal chamber are satisfactory for the product to remain a coolant and lubricant for the seal faces. See Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-2.

(c) *Flush Plan 11*. Seal flush from pump discharge for single seal. Often uses an orifice; but the flush line itself may be considered an orifice. High pressure discharge product flows to the low pressure seal chamber. The flow of product cools and lubricates the seal faces. See Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-3.

(d) *Flush Plan 32*. Seal flush from external source. This plan is used for single seals. A fluid that is compatible with the process is injected into the seal cavity to cool and lubricate the seal. Plan 32 flush fluid will go into the process. See Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-4.

(e) *Flush Plan 52*. This plan is for unpressurized dual seals only. Unpressurized buffer fluid circulates through a reservoir. The buffer fluid is at a pressure less than the product side of the inboard seal. This plan offers protection from product entering the atmosphere, and when used under vacuum conditions, from the atmosphere entering the seal chamber. See Figs. SG-2.3.2.4-5 and SG-2.3.2.4-6.

(f) *Flush Plan BPE52*. Flow and pressure is taken from the pump discharge and injected between the dual seals. The seal cavity is vented to a low pressure point. This flush plan is used exclusively for dual unpressurized seals. See Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-7.

(g) *Flush Plan 53*. This plan is for pressurized dual seals only. Pressurized barrier fluid is circulated through a reservoir where the barrier fluid is cooled then returned to the seal cavity. Circulation must be provided by a pumping device located in the dual seal design. This arrangement ensures that the atmosphere and pumped product cannot cross-contaminate. The barrier fluid shall be compatible with the product. See Figs. SG-2.3.2.4-8 and SG-2.3.2.4-9.

(h) *Flush Plan 54*. This plan is for dual pressurized seals only. Pressurized barrier fluid is circulated through the dual seal cavity from an external source. The source of flow and pressure is undefined in this flush plan. The barrier fluid pressure between the inboard and outboard seal shall be higher than the process pressure acting on the inboard seal. The barrier fluid shall be compatible with the product. See Figs. SG-2.3.2.4-10 and SG-2.3.2.4-11.

(i) *Flush Plan 74*. This plan is for gas pressurized dual seals only. The barrier fluid pressure between the inboard and outboard seal shall be higher than the process pressure acting on the inboard seal. The barrier fluid must be compatible with the product. See Figs. SG-2.3.2.4-12 and SG-2.3.2.4-13.

Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-4 Flush Plan 32

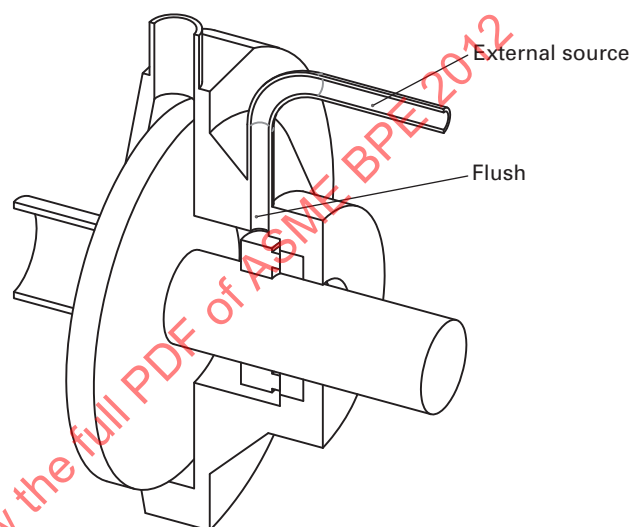


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-5 Flush Plan 52 for Pump

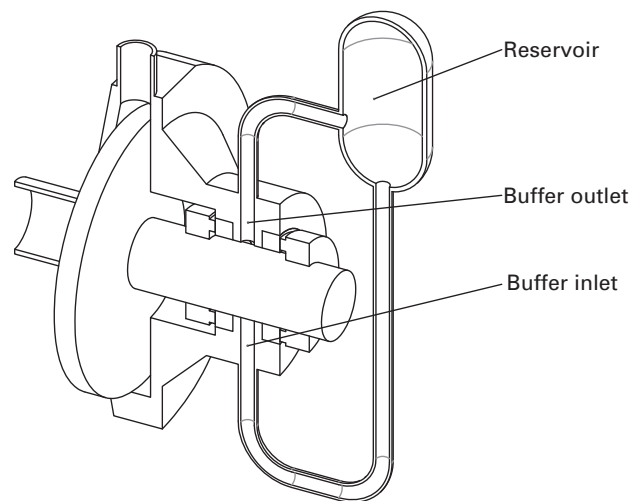


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-6 Flush Plan 52 for Top Entry Agitator

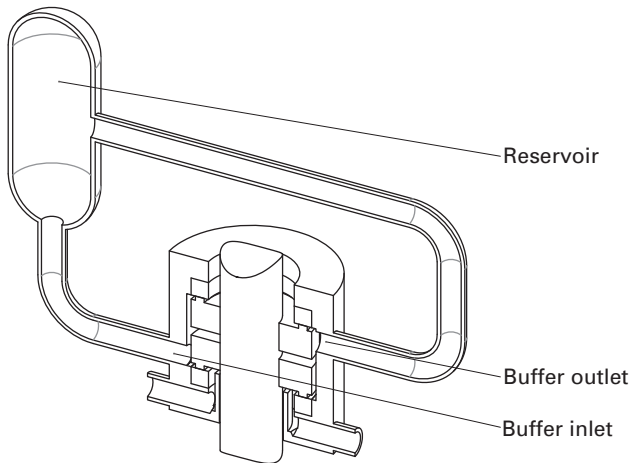


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-8 Flush Plan 53 for Pump

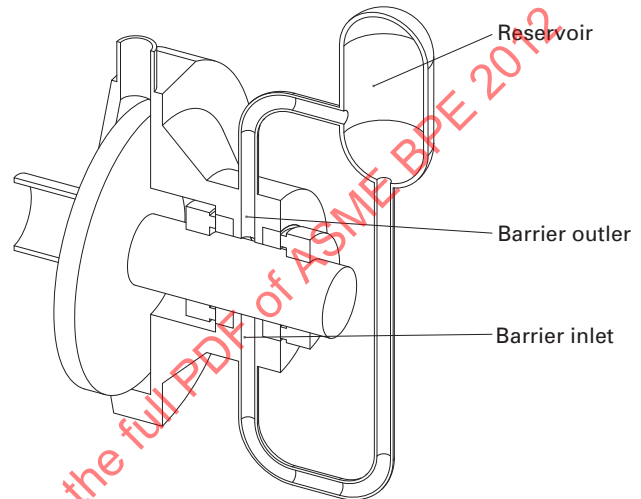


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-7 Flush Plan BPE52 for Pump

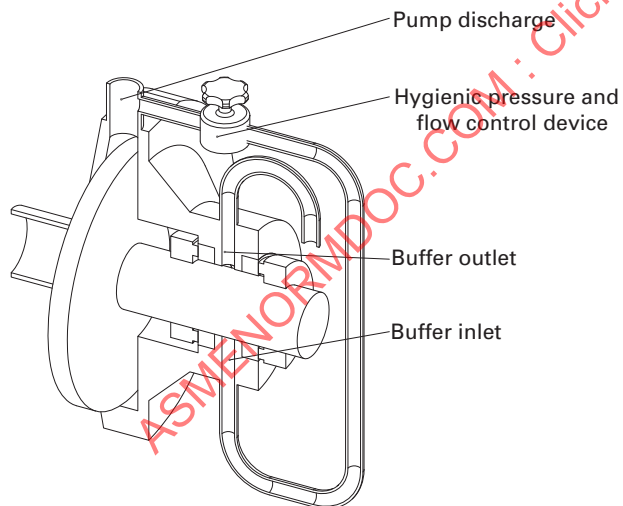


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-9 Flush Plan 53 for Top Entry Agitator

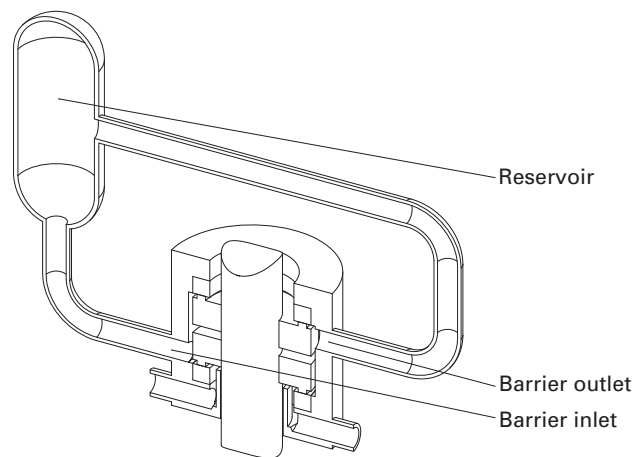


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-10 Flush Plan 54 for Pump

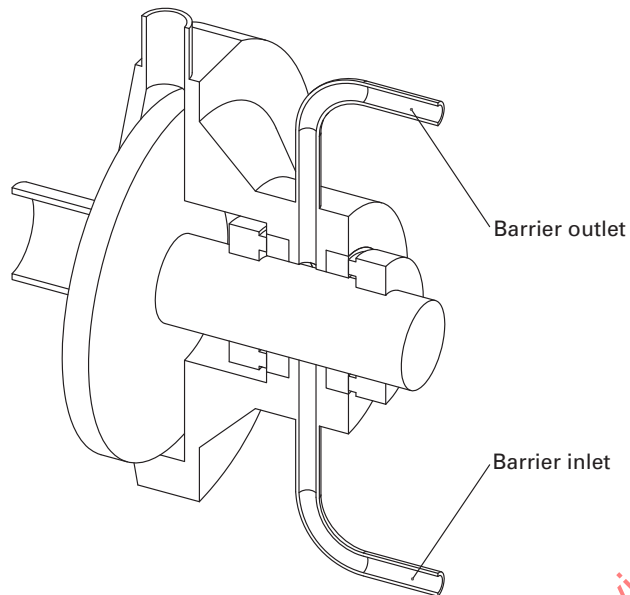


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-12 Flush Plan 74 for Pump

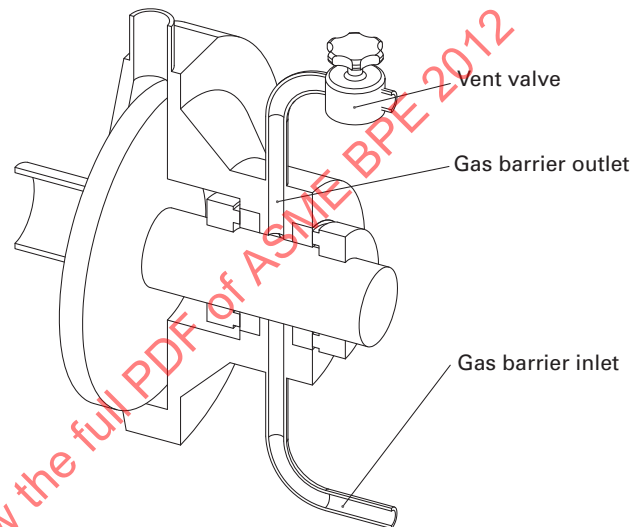


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-11 Flush Plan 54 for Top Entry Agitator

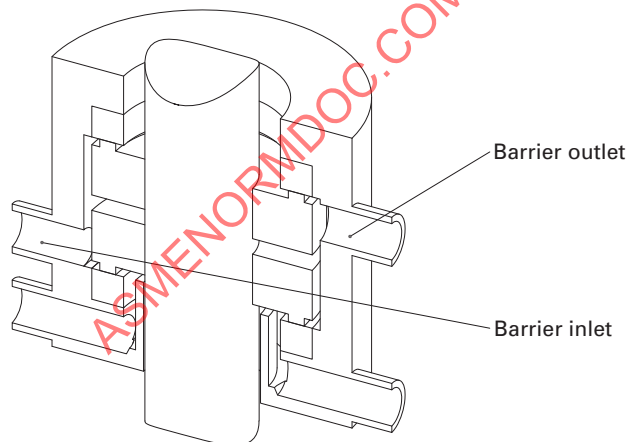
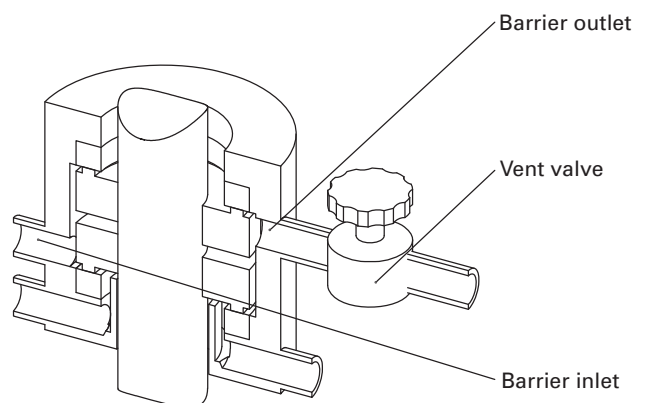


Fig. SG-2.3.2.4-13 Flush Plan 74 for Top Entry Agitator



SG-2.3.3 Other Dynamic Seals

SG-2.3.3.1 Reciprocating Seals. Reciprocating seals have axial movement between the inner and outer elements, as in a plunger or a piston and a cylinder. The seal, usually an O-ring, slides along the sealing surface.

SG-2.3.3.2 Oscillating Seals. Oscillating seals have angular movement around an arc, as in a valve handle. The seal, usually an O-ring, slides between the inner and outer elements, and has limited or no longitudinal movement.

SG-3 SEALING COMPONENTS GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS (GENERAL PROVISIONS)

SG-3.1 Seal Design Conditions

The equipment supplier/manufacturer shall be informed of all the conditions under which the seal may be expected to operate. These shall include, in addition to the service temperature and pressure, any parameters that may affect the seal performance (reference Form R-1, Application Data Sheet). It is up to the equipment supplier/manufacturer to inform the owner/user of the service life expectancy and the methods that will ensure that the seal operates within its design specification.

SG-3.1.1 Service Temperature. Seals shall be capable of preventing unacceptable leakage when thermally cycled between the rated upper and lower temperature limits. The number of allowable thermal cycles shall be stated by the manufacturer.

SG-3.1.2 Service Pressure. The service pressure is the maximum permissible usage pressure for which the seal meets the maximum permissible leakage rate. The service pressure and acceptance level for pressure rating shall be furnished by the seal supplier/manufacturer.

SG-3.1.3 Bioburden. Bioburden is the concentration of microbial matter per unit volume. Microbial matter includes viruses, bacteria, yeast, mold, and parts thereof.

SG-3.1.4 Cavitation Resistance. The seal shall be placed so as to minimize damage by cavitation.

SG-3.1.5 Sterilization. The complete sterilization procedure shall be supplied by the owner/user. This shall include the methods, frequency, and length of operation.

SG-3.1.6 Cleaning. The complete cleaning procedure shall be supplied by the owner/user to the supplier/manufacturer for evaluation and selection of compatible material. This shall include the methods, frequency, and length of operation.

SG-3.1.7 Passivation. The complete passivation procedure shall be supplied by the owner/user. The equipment supplier/manufacturer shall inform the owner/user whether the seal will be able to perform as

specified after passivation, or whether a new seal is required before the start of operation.

SG-3.2 System Requirements

All systems require cleaning and sterilization of seals on a regular basis. This is necessary to ensure elimination of any bacterial growth, which could harm the seal, future products, or the environment. The methods of cleaning are listed in SG-3.2.1 through SG-3.2.3.

SG-3.2.1 Cleaning Systems

(a) *Clean-in-Place (CIP).* The product contact surface(s) part of a seal shall be designed so that accumulation of system media can be removed through the action of a cleaning solution. The seal should be placed to allow for best drainability.

(b) *Clean-out-of-Place (COP).* Disassembly for cleaning.

SG-3.2.2 Sterilizing Systems. Seal requirements shall be based on the sterilization method utilized. All product contact seal surfaces shall be designed to minimize cracks and crevices. When cracks and crevices cannot be avoided, sterilization testing shall be performed to validate sterility within the system boundaries. All seals and seal contact surfaces shall be designed to accommodate expansion and contraction during sterilization and cooling-down stages. Seal materials that are corrosion-resistant to saturated steam and pure steam shall be used. The seal should be placed to allow for drainage of fluid. The following are typical sterilizing systems:

(a) *Steam-in-Place (SIP).* All seals and their assemblies shall have a minimum temperature rating meeting the requirements of SD-2.3.1.1.

(b) Chemical sterilization.

(c) Hot air sterilization at 160°C.

(d) Irradiation.

SG-3.2.3 Passivation Systems. The following are typical passivation and derouging systems:

(a) acid treatments

(b) proprietary trade formulations

Full information shall be provided by supplier/manufacturer as to the corrosive or erosive effect on the seal. See Nonmandatory Appendix D: Rouge and Stainless Steel; and Nonmandatory Appendix E: Passivation Procedure Qualification.

SG-3.3 Seal Construction

SG-3.3.1 Materials

(a) *Biocompatibility.* Biocompatibility testing shall be performed per PM-3.1. Qualification testing of final manufactured seals can be performed on any given size seal (or combination thereof) within a product group as long as the materials used and the manufacturing process are representative of the entire group. Biocompatibility testing must be repeated for significant changes



in raw materials or processes used to fabricate seals. Otherwise, biocompatibility testing is used upon initial qualification of the material and process by the seal supplier/manufacturer.

(b) *Process Compatibility.* Seal materials shall be resistant to corrosion from process, cleaning, and sterilization fluids. Selection shall be based on all media that could come in contact with the seal, including cleaning and sterilization media. Special consideration shall be made when the exposure is at elevated temperature. Material selection shall be governed by Part PM and reference Form R-1, Application Data Sheet. It is unlikely that any single seal material can withstand all conditions present in the facility. Material selection should be done in concert with the seal supplier/manufacturer to ensure that seal performance is maximized for each location within a process. However, material selection remains the responsibility of the owner/user.

(c) *Permeation Resistance.* Seal permeation shall be included in seal leakage criteria and not addressed as an individual topic.

(d) *Surface Finish*

(1) Seals shall be free of molding imperfections or burrs within the system boundary and on sealing surfaces.

(2) Seals shall be free of foreign matter on surfaces within the system boundary and on sealing surfaces.

(3) Surfaces to be sealed shall meet specifications provided by seal supplier/manufacturer based on performance and the requirements in Part SF.

(4) Molded seals and components shall have molding flash removed to prevent contact with the product stream.

(e) *Particle Generation.* Seal designs should minimize wear that generates particles that could enter the product.

(f) *Lubrication.* When required to facilitate installation, seals may be lubricated with an acceptable lubricant that is compatible with the seal material and process. The supplier/manufacturer shall advise the owner/user of special lubrication requirements. The selection of accepted lubricant is the responsibility of the owner/user.

SG-3.3.2 Design

SG-3.3.2.1 General

(a) *Crevices.* A smooth, contoured, pocketless interior surface shall be created when seals are placed between the seal contact surfaces. All recessed seal contact surfaces shall avoid sharp corners, and be easily cleanable with seal removed. All seal and seal contact surfaces shall be designed to minimize cracks or crevices that might harbor system media.

(b) *Dead Spaces.* Dead spaces are defined here as a void in the product contact surface(s) portion of the structure not completely occupied by a seal, and are

usually required to allow for thermal expansion of the seal material. These should be avoided. All seal and seal contact surfaces shall be designed so that the system is self-draining when seals are properly installed.

SG-3.3.2.2 Static Seals

(a) *Static Seal General Design Requirements.* SG-2.2 lists some standards describing the design of hygienic unions, O-rings, and other static seals. Figures SG-2.2.2-1 through SG-2.2.2-4 illustrate typical static hygienic and O-ring connections. Figure SG-2.2.2-5 illustrates not accepted connections. In addition, the following general requirements apply to all hygienic static seals:

(1) Gaskets and O-ring seals shall seal and shall be cleanable. Fittings should be selected or designed to consider the gasket or O-ring geometry, materials of construction, and seal performance under operating conditions.

(2) Static seals should be self-aligning and self-positioning.

(b) *Hygienic Unions.* Most common hygienic union geometries used in bioprocessing are listed in SG-2.2.2. All hygienic unions shall comply with general design requirements in this Part, material requirements of Part PM and Part MM, and surface finish requirements of Part SF. Intrusion categories of hygienic seals are defined in SG-4.2 and illustrated in Fig. SG-4.2-1.

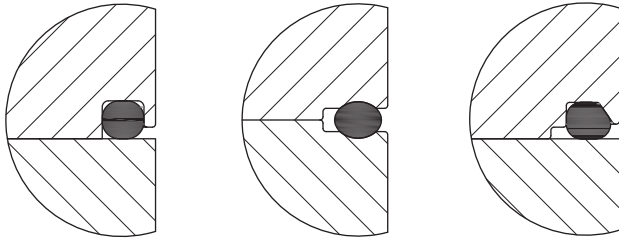
(c) *O-Ring Seals*

(1) *General O-Ring and Gland Design Criteria.* An O-ring is a seal with a circular cross section (a toroid), designed to be seated in a groove and compressed during assembly. These are most often used in static seals. O-rings are used extensively in hygienic applications and can seal by applying compression (squeeze) on the radially and/or axially opposed faces. The seal equipment supplier/manufacturer should discuss with the owner/user the application and verify that the groove design and selected material will meet the application parameters.

(2) *O-Ring/Gland Sizing (Fill).* Proper gland design and appropriate O-ring selection are critical for proper sealing. O-ring selection includes the proper sizing and proper material selection for the process environment. An O-ring gland shall include sufficient room for thermal expansion and chemical swell to prevent seal material extrusion, and sufficient gland fill to allow for proper cleanability of the sealing element. Seal designs that compress in multiple directions require extra caution.

(3) *O-Ring Stretch (Elastomeric O-Rings).* It is suggested that O-ring stretch during installation be limited. The designer should consider the maximum amount of allowable stretch to prevent O-ring breakage during part assembly. When located in position for use, the O-ring stretch should not exceed 5%. Similarly, the O-ring diameter should not be too large for a groove, which would cause the ring to buckle. Overstretching or oversizing an O-ring can lead to premature seal failure.



Fig. SG-3.3.2.2-1 Static O-Ring

(4) *O-Ring Compression (Squeeze)*. Proper O-ring compression is critical to proper sealing. At ambient temperature, O-ring compression is frequently in the range of 10% to 25%; however, this can vary greatly depending on materials, conditions, and applications (e.g., static vs. dynamic). O-ring compressions over 30% should generally be avoided. Relative O-ring compression can increase during heating due to thermal expansion. Factors to consider for O-ring compression include chemical swell, temperature change, elastomer hardness, etc. Caution should be taken when substituting elastomeric seals for non-elastomeric seals or vice versa. A non-elastomeric seal may require a crush groove, and direct substitution of an elastomer into such a groove may result in premature seal failure.

(5) *O-Ring Thermal Expansion*. O-ring thermal expansion is dependent on the particular material and formulation. The O-ring supplier/manufacturer can provide information on the material's coefficient of thermal expansion (CTE) characteristics and dynamics of how the O-ring fits in the groove.

(6) O-ring groove designers should consult the O-ring supplier/manufacturer to ensure functionality in hygienic applications. O-ring grooves shall be designed with in situ cleaning in mind without diminishing their functionality (see Fig. SG-3.3.2.2-1).

(7) Hygienic O-ring connections are available (see Figs. SG-2.2.2-3 and SG-2.2.2-4) in threaded, flanged, or clamped styles. The O-ring connections shall be manufactured to a hygienic standard (e.g., DIN 11864 parts 1 to 3) or shall be accepted as a hygienic connection by a recognized independent organization (e.g., EHEDG: European Hygienic Engineering and Design Group). O-ring connections shall comply with SG-3.3.2.2(c)(6) and SD-3.1.1. The construction of the fitting shall be such that excessive deformation of the seal will not be caused as a result of over-tightening the connection.

(8) When O-ring seals are used, they shall be partially exposed in the groove for cleaning (see Fig. SG-3.3.2.2-1).

(9) *O-rings Fabricated From Molded or Extruded Section Using Vulcanized Molded Joints*

(-a) *O-Rings*. Fully molded O-rings should be used, wherever possible.

(-b) *Vulcanized Bonded Joints*. When the fully molded seal diameters are not available, O-rings fabricated from molded section using molded vulcanized joints can be fitted as long as the following parameters are kept.

(-1) *Materials*. All bonded joint seal materials shall be compliant with SG-3.3.1 and any additional requirements specified by the owner/user. The vulcanized bonded joint should consist of either an unvulcanized portion of the seal material or a compatible material where this gives an improved joint. In both cases, the joining material shall meet the same requirements as the seal material.

(-2) *Joint Integrity*. The joint integrity shall meet the strength requirements of the application. A vulcanized O-ring should only contain one joint. Where tooling availability limits seal diameter, extra joints can be included by prior arrangement with the owner/user.

(-3) *Excessive Material and Toolmarks*. All excessive joint material shall be removed. The surface finish and any residual material, tool marks, or reductions in cross-sectional tolerances should not be at a level that compromises seal performance and cleanability.

(-c) *Adhesive-Bonded Joints*. Adhesive-bonded joints should be avoided and their use must be agreed to between the supplier/manufacturer and the owner/user.

(d) *Other Static Seals*

(1) *Flat Gaskets*. All flat gaskets shall comply with general design requirements in this Part, material requirements of Part PM, and surface finish requirements of Parts SF and SD.

(2) *Inflatable Seals*. Inflatable seals shall comply with general design requirements of this document.

SG-3.3.2.3 Valves

(a) *General*

(1) Process flow valves should optimize drainability and prevent pooling when installed in their proper drain orientation.

(2) When possible, welding valves into the process line is the preferred method of installation to minimize the use of seals.

(3) All product contact surfaces shall be easily accessible by CIP fluids and SIP steam.

(4) Valve surfaces that may become product contact surfaces if a component (e.g., diaphragm) fails in service shall be readily accessible for examination, maintenance, and cleaning.

(5) Cavity fillers shall not be used.

(6) The metallic fluid-contact surfaces of the valve, including the body cavity, shall comply with the applicable requirements in Part SF.

(7) Cluster, block, and multiport valves should be designed and installed to minimize dead legs and optimize drainability.



(8) The internal volume of the valve should be kept to a minimum while meeting other requirements of the process design.

(9) Any crevices (e.g., between mating parts of a valve) should be minimized in areas in contact with the process.

(10) Any guiding of valve trim and operating mechanisms should be minimized in areas in contact with the process.

(11) Valves intended for CIP/SIP/sanitization shall be capable of opening as required during those processes.

(12) Valves not capable of CIP shall be able to be disassembled for cleaning/steaming.

(13) The valve design should enable immediate leakage detection between product side and environment at any seal when possible. The area between a primary and secondary stem seal should be fitted with a leakage detection port to indicate primary seal leakage.

(14) Pneumatically controlled valves shall be designed to prevent air transfer from actuator to the process.

(15) All seats and seals shall comply with the requirements of this Standard, or as agreed upon between the supplier/manufacturer and owner/user.

(16) The owner/user should refer to Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, when communicating process conditions to the supplier/manufacturer. The valve supplier/manufacturer shall recommend material for the intended service and pressure, and comply with the URS (User Requirement Specification), but material selection is the responsibility of the owner/user.

(b) Diaphragm Valves

(1) Diaphragm valves utilize non-sliding seals and are the preferred valve for bioprocessing fluid applications.

(2) Two-way, weir-style diaphragm valve bodies shall be permanently marked on both sides of the body to show optimum drain position. Orientation of welded and machined multiple port bodies shall be included on submittal drawings. Other type diaphragm valves should be installed to the manufacturer's recommendations.

(3) Point-of-use (POU) valves should be designed with the seal at or below the lowest point in the tube to facilitate draining.

(4) Diaphragms should be marked in accordance with Section 12.3 of MSS-SP-88.

(5) Weirless diaphragm valves utilize non-sliding seals. The installation angle is not critical due to the elimination of the weir in the body design; however, the valve should be installed to the manufacturer's recommendations.

(c) *Rising Stem Seal Valves.* Rising stem seal valves utilize sliding and non-sliding seals (see Fig. SG-3.3.2.3-1). Suitable designs are available for fluid

utility applications such as clean steam and CIP as well as for product. The owner/user shall define degree of suitability of the design for the application.

(1) Seals for rising stem valves are classified as follows:

(-a) *Primary Rising Stem Seals.* Primary rising stem seals serve as pressure barriers for process fluids. Such seals shall be exposed for cleaning, meet the pressure and temperature requirements of the specified materials as outlined in this Standard and the aseptic and bioburden control requirements specified by the owner/user. In addition, they shall meet all of the general requirements for seals outlined in this section. Primary sealing can be provided in different ways.

(-1) Non-sliding seals such as bellows and diaphragms eliminate contamination risk by preventing the product contact surface(s) portion of the stem from contacting the atmosphere. When the primary stem seal is a non-sliding seal, a secondary stem seal is not required.

(-2) Sliding seals such as lip-seals and O-rings can be used for the reciprocating stem between process fluid and atmosphere. Single sliding stem seals can be used for fluid utility applications such as clean steam and CIP. If sliding seals are to be used as the primary seal for product contact applications, there should be a secondary stem seal to facilitate cleaning and sanitization behind the primary sliding seal.

(-b) *Secondary Rising Stem Seals.* Secondary seals serve as the sealing between atmosphere and a stem disinfection chamber (e.g., steam barrier or disinfection means barrier). These seals shall be designed to serve as pressure barriers for sanitizing fluid. Such seals shall meet the pressure and temperature requirements of the specified material outlined in Part SG of this Standard. Secondary stem seals are typically sliding seals (e.g., O-rings or lip-seals).

(2) Wherever elastomeric or polymeric seals are retained under static compression, adjoining metal surfaces shall be machined to a roughness specified by the seal manufacturer to ensure required performance, and shall meet the requirements of Part SF, if surface can become exposed to the system fluid under the normal course of system operation.

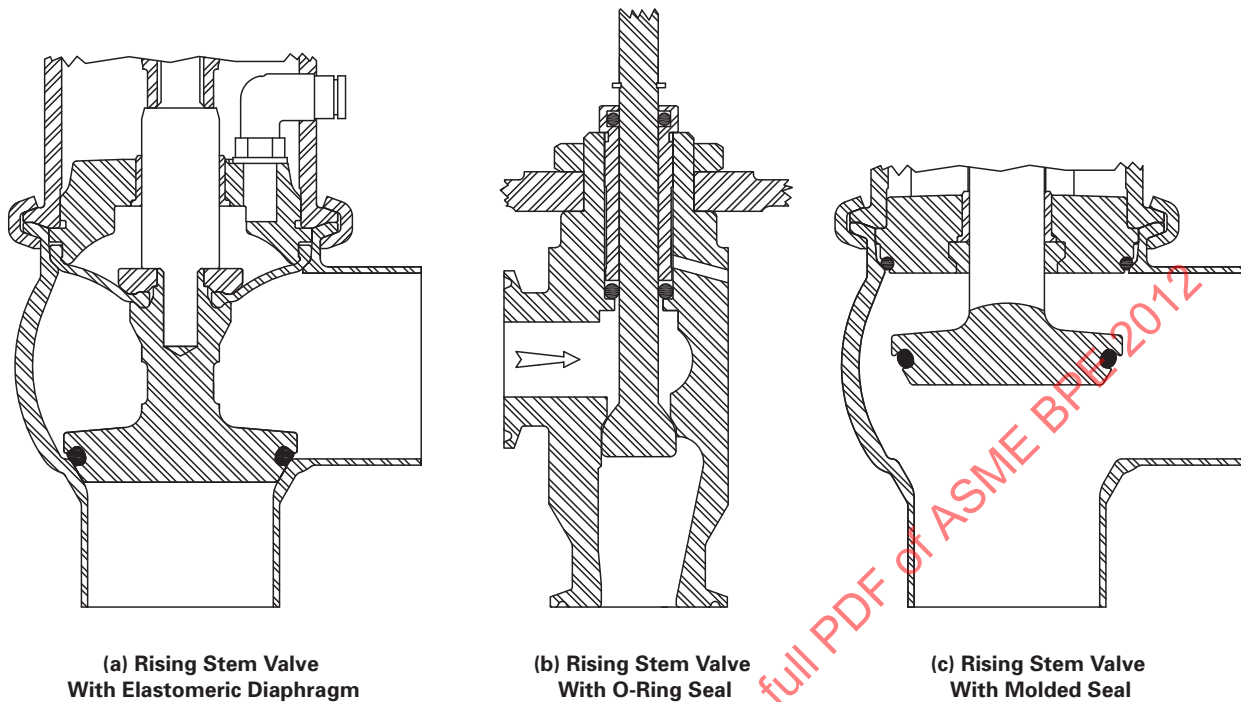
(3) Primary stem O-ring seals shall be fitted in grooves located as close to the valve body cavity as possible to meet bioburden control requirements.

(4) When made from metal, static seals shall meet the surface finish requirements for the valve housing interior on the side facing the process fluid.

(d) *Regulator Valves.* When using regulator valves, a means of override is normally required to allow cleanability and drainability of the valve.

(e) *Ball Valves.* Ball valves (Fig. SG-2.3.1.3-1) utilize sliding seals and are not preferred in product contact applications. Ball valves are suitable for liquid and gas utility and process support applications such as clean



Fig. SG-3.3.2.3-1 Seals for Rising Stem Valves

steam and CIP. The valve bore I.D., including ball and body, shall match the I.D. of the connecting tubing to allow self-draining. Cavity fillers shall not be used.

(f) *Butterfly Valves*. Butterfly valves utilize sliding seals. Butterfly valves are commonly used for powder and vacuum applications. The valve should be installed per manufacturer's recommendations to allow self-draining.

(g) *Steam Traps (Thermostatic)*. A thermostatic steam trap shall be designed to minimize the risk of soil attachment to the process fluid surfaces. The bellows should have a low sub-cool to prevent the backup of condensate into the process equipment and clean steam system. Steam traps shall be installed with an uninsulated section upstream of the trap to facilitate proper steam trap function (see Fig. SD-3.12-1).

(h) *Back Pressure Control Valves*. Back pressure control valves shall be designed to allow free draining through the outlet or inlet port. Crevices created by a pierced diaphragm or soft seat plug shall be minimized.

(i) *Pinch Valves*. When using pinch valves, care must be taken to prevent permanent deformation of the flexible tube or sleeve that restricts the flow or affects drainability.

(j) *Check Valves*. Check valves may utilize sliding and/or non-sliding seals. A check valve, clack valve, non-return valve or one-way valve is a valve that allows fluid flow in one direction. Check valves utilizing an exposed coil spring shall be of a design to prevent the coil spring from full compression creating an enclosure.

(k) *Plug Valves*. Rotating plug valves utilize sliding seals and are not preferred in product contact applications. Plug valves are suitable for liquid and gas utility applications such as clean steam and CIP. The plug valve uses a $\frac{1}{4}$ -turn cylindrical plug with O-ring seals to provide straight-through flow. The plug I.D. does not always match the I.D. of the tubing; therefore, self-drainability of the valve is limited.

SG-3.3.2.4 End Face Mechanical Seal General Design Requirements

(a) General

(1) Mechanical seal hardware used to mount the mechanical seal to equipment shall be consistent with non-pooling and drainability requirements of Part SD.

(2) Springs and drive mechanisms (e.g., pins) shall not be located in the process fluid.

(3) When applicable, the seal should be designed in accordance with this Standard for CIP and/or SIP.

(4) Surface requirements for the process side of the mechanical seal shall be consistent with the requirements of Part SF.

(5) Process side hardware radii shall meet requirements of SD-2.4.2(g).

(6) Secondary seals are used in static and dynamic positions. The dynamic position in a typical mechanical seal is where the secondary seal is in contact with the spring-loaded seal face. The dynamic secondary seal accommodates motion during operation and face movement as the primary faces wear. Secondary seal cavities

shall be located and designed so that the process side is accessible to fluid flow and is drainable consistent with requirements of Part SD.

(7) Secondary seal material should be selected to minimize compression set on all phases of operation which may include CIP and/or SIP.

(8) Materials of construction shall meet Part PM for polymers or other nonmetallics and Part MM for metal components. The owner/user is responsible for selection of appropriate materials in consultation with the equipment supplier/manufacture.

(9) Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, should be filled out with appropriate information to make a correct seal selection.

(10) Assembly lubrication will be specified by the owner/user in consultation with the equipment manufacturer. The owner/user will determine compatibility of the lubricant with the process. The equipment supplier/manufacture will determine the compatibility of the lubricant with the seal components.

(b) Single Mechanical Seal

(1) Single mechanical seals are applied for their simplicity, observable leakage path to the atmosphere, and no requirement for a seal support system.

(2) Single mechanical seals protect the process boundary at the seal's secondary seals and at the seal's primary face.

(3) When operating in pressurized process fluid, single mechanical seals will weep process fluid to atmosphere. If a process upset occurs that creates a temporary vacuum in the equipment, the seal will weep atmosphere into process fluid.

(4) Single liquid mechanical seals are applied when the process fluid has desirable lubricating characteristics to support the rubbing of the primary seal faces.

(-a) Fluids that have desirable lubricating characteristics do NOT include fluids that change state, are in gaseous phase, precipitate solids, and cause thin film bonding, congealing, solidification, or crystallization between the seal faces.

(-b) An example of a possible desirable lubricant is pure steam condensate at 100°F (38°C).

(5) Single dry contacting gas seals will operate in a gaseous phase environment.

(c) Dual Pressurized Mechanical Seal

(1) Dual pressurized mechanical seals are preferred to prevent process fluid from weeping to atmosphere and to prevent atmosphere from weeping into the process.

(2) Dual pressurized mechanical seals protect the process boundary with a pressurized barrier fluid.

(3) Dual pressurized seals are used when process fluid does not have desirable lubricating characteristics.

(4) Dual pressurized seals shall be designed for liquid or gas barrier fluid. Dual pressurized seals cannot be designed for gas and liquid lubrication.

(5) Dual pressurized gas barrier seals can be contacting or non-contacting face design.

(6) A barrier fluid compatible with the process fluid and atmosphere shall be specified by the owner/user. The owner/user should consult with the equipment supplier/manufacture to determine suitability of the barrier fluid for the dual pressurized mechanical seal.

(7) The owner/user should provide Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, so the supplier/manufacture can recommend pressure, flow rate, and temperature of the barrier fluid.

(d) Dual Unpressurized Mechanical Seal

(1) Dual unpressurized mechanical seals are preferred to prevent dilution of the process fluid by the buffer fluid weeping across the inboard faces. The buffer fluid will prevent atmosphere from entering the process fluid. The process fluid will weep into the buffer fluid that may weep to the atmosphere.

(2) Dual unpressurized mechanical seals protect the process boundary with an unpressurized buffer fluid.

(3) Dual unpressurized seals are used when process fluid has desirable lubricating characteristics.

(4) Dual unpressurized seals shall be designed for liquid or gas buffer fluid. Dual unpressurized seals cannot be designed for gas and liquid lubrication.

(5) Dual unpressurized gas buffer seals can be contacting or non-contacting face design.

(6) A buffer fluid compatible with the process fluid and atmosphere should be specified by the owner/user. The owner/user should consult with the equipment vendor to determine suitability of the buffer fluid for the dual unpressurized mechanical seal.

(7) The owner/user should provide Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, so the supplier/manufacture can recommend pressure, flow rate, and temperature of the buffer fluid.

SG-3.4 Compliance Requirements for Sealing Elements

SG-3.4.1 General Requirements. A Certificate of Compliance shall be issued by the seal manufacturer to certify compliance to this Standard when required by the owner/user. Additional agreements may be required; refer to SD-2.4.1. At a minimum, seals exposed to process contact fluids and/or that have a high probability of exposure will comply to the United States Pharmacopeia (USP) directive with regard to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP <88> Class VI (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11) on biological reactivity (see Part PM for additional details). Examples of seals coming in direct contact with a process stream include gaskets, O-rings, diaphragms, pinch tubes, and valve stem seals.

SG-3.4.2 Certificate of Compliance. See PM-2.2.1.



SG-3.4.3 Test Requirements. Conformance testing is done upon initial qualification of the hygienic union. Testing is intended to show design conformance and is not required on every seal. Testing must be repeated for significant changes in raw materials or processes used to fabricate seals. The seal manufacturer shall provide, upon request of the owner/user, a certificate of design conformance that the sealed union meets the intrusion requirements of SG-4.2. The intrusion value is defined as the measured quantity that provides the maximum radial distance from the fitting I.D. to the point of maximum intrusion under the manufacturer's specified conditions (e.g., torque, fitting design, clamp design, etc.). The point of maximum intrusion/recess shall be measured using a method that does not cause deformation of the components being measured.

SG-3.4.4 Additional Requirements. [Reserved for future content]

SG-3.5 Seal Identification

Marking on the seal package should include all items listed in SG-3.4.2.

Manufacturer's name and lot number shall be marked on either the seal itself or the seal package containing the seal. The lot number should enable the manufacturer to identify the raw material and processing conditions used to fabricate the article. Manufacturers are encouraged to mark the seal itself to avoid potential loss of traceability and to aid in positive identification of seals after removal from a process stream. When marking diaphragms, any marking shall be done on those portions of the diaphragm that are not exposed beyond the sealing portion of the housing.

SG-3.6 Other Seal Requirements

[Reserved for future content]

SG-4 SEAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SG-4.1 General Requirements

Seals form an integral part of process systems and maintain static and/or dynamic system boundaries while being exposed to chemical, thermal, and mechanical (hydraulic and pneumatic) conditions in both cyclic and continuous modes of operation. Upon exposure to operating conditions, the seal shall not swell, shed, crack, erode, or otherwise deteriorate to an extent that it impacts the product or process during its expected lifetime. The seal shall not add to nor remove from the process or product to which it is exposed beyond an acceptable level (see section PM-3). Following exposure to the process conditions, the seal shall be capable of being inspected, serviced, and/or replaced. Specific seal performance criteria shall be established by the owner/user in consultation with the seal supplier/manufacturer. Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, may be used

to communicate expected process conditions.

Any given seal is not designed to perform in all possible operating conditions.

Parameters for evaluating the performance of a seal include leak rate, sealing location, dimensional stability, material stability (including shedding), and serviceability. The requirements for each of the parameters depend on the seal type and application. To predict how a seal will perform in service it shall be evaluated (e.g., testing, past performance). Standardized performance test conditions and methods permit a consistent approach to gathering data used to evaluate seal performance. When evaluating performance test data, the owner/user should consider if the test parameters are relevant to the conditions expected in the application. Performance data should be considered when determining the appropriate service interval for the desired application.

SG-4.2 Static Seal Performance

Static seals shall meet the general performance requirements of SG-4.1.

Upon initial installation, a hygienic static seal shall provide a substantially flush interface with the hygienic clamp ferrules. Hygienic seals shall meet and be designated by one of the following intrusion categories when tested by the seal manufacturers:

(a) *Intrusion Category I.* Seals having a maximum intrusion/recess of 0.025 in. (0.6 mm).

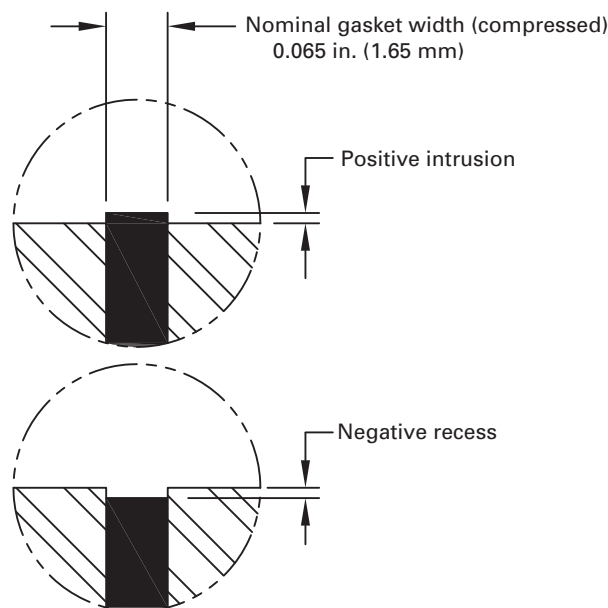
(b) *Intrusion Category II.* Seals having a maximum intrusion/recess of 0.008 in. (0.2 mm).

The purpose of a flush interface is to minimize the entrapment of the material in a dead space that can lead to microbial growth and contamination (see Fig. SG-4.2-1). Excessive intrusion into the process stream may lead to erosion of elastomeric seals, thereby contaminating the process stream. The amount of intrusion depends upon the dimensional control of the seal, the hygienic clamp ferrule dimensions [see Table DT-7-1 and Fig. SG-2.2.2-1, illustrations (a) through (c)], the amount of torque applied to the flange, the material properties of the seal, the application of steam, and the surface of the seal (wet or dry) during installation.

Testing parameters used to identify the desired performance should be based on the intended operating conditions. Nonmandatory Appendix J identifies Standard Process Test Conditions (SPTC) and a method for performing testing to gather data used to evaluate the appropriate level (e.g., 10, 100, or 500) of the seal for the given service life. Performance data are collected at 10, 100, and/or 500 cycle intervals. The 10 cycle interval is intended to provide data for short duration (e.g., single use or inspect between use applications). The 100 and 500 cycle intervals are intended to provide data for service life (e.g., multiple use applications) that are not routinely inspected.



Fig. SG-4.2-1 Typical Hygienic Clamp Union: Allowable Gasket Intrusion



SG-4.3 Dynamic Seal Performance

SG-4.3.1 Valve Seal Performance. Valve seal performance is acceptable when the seal maintains the system boundaries and design flow characteristics for which it was intended (e.g., static and/or dynamic). A valve seal shall operate through the desired range of motion against differential pressure. It shall be hygienic and meet the cleanability requirements stated in SG-3.3.2.3. A valve seal shall meet these performance conditions following exposure to operating conditions in both cyclic and continuous modes of operation.

Performance data shall be collected at intervals that reflect the use mode (e.g., discrete/open/closed or modulating), operation (e.g., continuous or cyclic), and intended service life (e.g., continuous hours of exposure or number of cycles) of the valve seal.

Testing parameters shall be based on the operating conditions of the intended application. Nonmandatory Appendix J identifies Standard Process Test Conditions (SPTC) and a method for conducting performance tests of seals in simulated process conditions. For valve seal testing, the method identified in Nonmandatory Appendix J requires modification to reflect a specific use mode and intended operation of a valve seal. Form R-1, Application Data Sheet, identifies a number of operational conditions (e.g., chemistry, temperature, pressure) to consider when developing non-standard performance tests.

SG-4.3.2 Mechanical Seal Performance. Mechanical seal performance may be characterized by leakage rate, service life, cleanability, particle shedding, suitability for

application, and heat generation. Acceptable values for each of these characteristics may vary widely, so it is strongly advised that the mechanical seal's various characteristics and the ramifications of each to the service are understood.

Nonmandatory Appendix J, J-2.1 provides important information about mechanical seal performance. It provides exceptions to normal seal performance that are commonly found in the industry. Familiarity with these items will help the reader understand the impact that design, installation, and operation can have on mechanical seal performance. Also included in Nonmandatory Appendix J, J-2.1 are outlines for various methods of testing seal integrity.

SG-4.3.2.1 New Mechanical Seal Performance.

There are four key points between procurement and operation of a new mechanical seal where the seal might be evaluated for performance. The four key points are manufacturing, installation, assembly, and use.

(a) *Point of Manufacture.* Mechanical seal manufacturers have performance requirements for new seals. The manufacturer's tests should be accepted. If special performance requirements are necessary, those special requirements shall be specified.

If the mechanical seal manufacturer alters the design, material, or manufacturing technique of a mechanical seal in service, it is the responsibility of the mechanical seal manufacturer to inform all relevant parties that changes have occurred. Specific information may be requested from the seal manufacturer to support the premise that seal performance has not been altered.

(b) *Point of Seal Installation.* The mechanical seal will be installed in a piece of equipment. An Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) will typically have its own test to verify the performance of the mechanical seal. The test of the OEM should be accepted. A review of the OEM test procedure may be requested. The OEM should consult with their seal supplier/manufacturer for seal performance issues and questions.

Contractors may install a new seal in a piece of equipment. The seal performance test may be reviewed with the installation contractor.

If unique conditions exist where special performance requirements are necessary, it is the customer's responsibility to specify the additional requirements. An acceptable performance test may be developed.

If the OEM alters the design, material, or manufacturing technique of a mechanical seal in service, or is informed by the seal manufacturer that the design, material, or manufacturing technique has been altered, it is the responsibility of the OEM to inform all relevant parties that changes have occurred.

(c) *Point of Systems Assembly.* The equipment that contains the seal is installed in a system. The systems supplier/manufacturer will have standard test procedures for testing the system integrity. The test procedures of

the system's supplier/manufacturer should be accepted. A review of the test procedure may be requested. The system assembler should consult with their OEM supplier/manufacturer for seal performance issues and questions.

If the System Assembler alters the design, material, or manufacturing technique of a mechanical seal in service, or is informed by the OEM that the design, material, or manufacturing technique has been altered, it is the responsibility of the System Assembler to inform all relevant parties that changes have occurred.

(d) *Point-of-Use.* Once the system is delivered to the owner/user, it is the owner's/user's responsibility to determine if the mechanical seals meet performance requirements. The owner/user should consult with their system designer/manufacturer vendor for seal performance issues and questions.

SG-4.3.2.2 Installed Seals. Original point-of-use performance requirements shall be used to determine if the seal is suitable for continued use. Refurbished seals shall be held to the original point-of-use performance requirements. It is the owner's/user's responsibility to monitor equipment for failure.

SG-5 SEAL APPLICATIONS

SG-5.1 General Considerations

[Reserved for future content]

SG-5.2 Process Systems

[Reserved for future content]

SG-5.3 Compensial Water Systems

SG-5.3.1 Seals for Centrifugal Compensial Water Pumps

(a) *Mechanical Seal Configuration.* Single mechanical seals are preferred for their simplicity, observable leakage path to the atmosphere, and lack of need for an additional seal support system. When applicable, the seal should be designed in accordance with this Standard to withstand CIP and/or SIP.

(b) *Process Contact of Primary Faces and Secondary Seals.* Springs and pins shall be located on the atmospheric side of the seal faces and secondary seals.

(c) *Secondary Seals Shall be Drainable.* Secondary seal cavities shall be located and designed so that the process side is accessible to fluid flow and it is drainable. Figure SG-3.3.2.2-1 illustrates possible designs used for an O-ring secondary seal in a groove.

(d) *Mechanical Seal Mounting Hardware Drainability.* Auxiliary components used to mount the mechanical seal to the pump shall be consistent with non-pooling and drainability requirements of Part SD.

(e) *Materials of Construction.* Materials of construction shall meet this Standard for polymers and for seal face materials.

SG-5.4 Clean/USP Pure Steam

[Reserved for future content]

SG-5.5 CIP

[Reserved for future content]



Part PM

Polymeric and Other Nonmetallic Materials

(12)

PM-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide the basis for selecting and using polymer and other nonmetallic materials.

This Part describes the types of polymers and other nonmetallic materials, identifies different ways to characterize materials, and describes various applications and their requirements. This Part includes requirements for both single-use and multi-use components.

PM-2 MATERIALS

Polymer and nonmetallic materials have found widespread use in bioprocessing equipment because of their broad range of physical and chemical properties, their ability to be formed into complex shapes, and their biocompatibility. Polymers may be used in a range of applications including static and dynamic seals, hoses, pumps, tubing, barrier coatings, diaphragms, valves, filters, etc. The choice of material class depends upon the design requirements and material performance, both as installed and during use.

For in-depth discussion and guidance on polymers and nonmetallic materials, see Nonmandatory Appendix N.

PM-2.1 Materials of Construction

Materials of construction shall be selected to maintain the purity and integrity of the product/process fluid. It is the owner/user's responsibility to select the appropriate materials of construction for the conditions of use. Materials should be compatible with the stated processing conditions, cleaning solutions (where appropriate), and sterilizing conditions (where appropriate), etc., as specified by the owner/user. The sections below outline the major classes of polymers and nonmetallic materials and their requirements for use in bioprocessing equipment.

PM-2.1.1 Thermoplastic Polymers. Thermoplastic polymers will melt and flow to form desired shapes when sufficiently heated. They can be melt-processed into a wide variety of shapes by molding, extruding, thermoforming, etc., and can be reformed and shaped with heat and/or pressure.

Thermoplastic materials are often used for fittings, tubing, piping, diaphragms, seals, liners for vessels, column tubes, filter media and capsules, etc. Examples of thermoplastic polymers are shown in Table PM-2.1.1-1.

Some thermoplastics, such as thermoplastic elastomers, combine an elastomer such as EPDM with a plastic such as polypropylene giving the resulting thermoplastic compound properties of flex endurance and sealability and can be used for tubing, seals, diaphragms, etc. Thermoplastic elastomers (TPE) combine the features of melt processability and flexibility.

Many polymers are described in ASTM standards that detail their composition and mechanical properties. It is the owner/user's responsibility to select materials that are appropriate for their applications.

Filler materials may be used to enhance the properties of thermoplastic polymers. Fillers may be carbon based, inorganic, metallic, organometallic, etc., as needed for performance.

Additives for thermoplastic polymers may be used to aid in thermal stability, flexibility, gamma stability, extrudate performance, crystallization control, oxidative stability, mold release, plasticization, and adhesion. Additives may be used in the bulk of the polymer as well as the surface, as required.

PM-2.1.2 Thermoset Polymers. Thermosets are polymers that, in their final state after processing, are rendered substantially insoluble and infusible. Fully processed thermosets cannot be re-softened or re-formed by exposure to heat. Exposure to excessive heat will cause polymer degradation.

Thermoset polymers are processed from a liquid or malleable state and are converted to the solid state by irreversible curing with heat, catalysis, or other means. Chemical cross-links are formed between polymer chains during the curing process. This results in an interconnected polymer network with the crosslink junctions restricting flow of the polymer when exposed to thermal or mechanical stresses.

Thermoset polymers can be classified into either thermoset elastomers or thermoset resins, with the elastomers being more common. Thermoset elastomers are often elastic, and soft materials are used for seals, gaskets, tubing, diaphragms, hoses, etc. Examples of thermoset polymers are shown in Table PM-2.1.2-1.

Most thermoset polymers contain reinforcing fillers and other additives to meet required use conditions. Fillers may be carbon based, inorganic, metallic, organometallic, etc., as needed for performance. Elastomer formulations typically contain 5% to 50% filler to achieve optimum properties.



Table PM-2.1.1-1 Common Thermoplastic Polymers and Applications

Type of Polymer	Example Polymers	Example Applications
General thermoplastics	Polyester (PET) Polyamide (nylon) Polycarbonate Polysulfones Polyether ether ketone (PEEK)	Fittings, connectors, filter housings, piping and rigid tubing, column tubes, filter media
Thermoplastic polyolefins	Polypropylene (PP) Ultra-low-density polyethylene (ULDPE) Low density polyethylene (LDPE) High-density polyethylene (HDPE) Ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene (UHMW)	Fittings, connectors, piping and rigid tubing, filter media and capsules, bags
Thermoplastic fluoropolymers	Fluorinated ethylene propylene (FEP) Perfluoroalkoxy (PFA) Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) Ethylene tetrafluoroethylene (ETFE) Polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF)	Fittings, piping and tubing, flexible hose, filter media, capsules, diaphragms, pumps, vessel liners
Thermoplastic elastomers (TPE)	Blends with EPDM with polypropylene Styrene-isobutylene-styrene block polymers Copolymers of ethylene and octane Ethylene-vinyl acetate copolymer (EVA)	Tubing, bags

Table PM-2.1.2-1 Common Thermoset Polymers and Applications

Type of Polymer	Example Polymers	Example Applications
Thermoset elastomers	Ethylene propylene diene (EPDM) Ethylene propylene rubber (EPR) Silicone (VMQ) Fluoroelastomers (FKM) Perfluoroelastomer (FFKM)	Tubing, seals, gaskets, diaphragms, and hoses
Rigid thermosets	Fiber reinforced polymer (FRP/GRP) composites	Tanks and pipes

PM-2.1.3 Other Nonmetallic Materials. Solid single phase nonmetallic materials can be divided into amorphous nonmetallic materials (e.g., glass, amorphous carbon) and crystalline nonmetallic materials (e.g., sintered silicon carbide, graphite).

If manufactured by heating and subsequent cooling, these materials are often referred to as ceramics. Materials may consist of a mixture of an amorphous and a crystalline phase (e.g., glass-ceramics). To improve performance, nonmetallic materials may be combined with other materials such as metals or organic polymers to form multiphase mixtures. Examples of such materials are metal matrix composites such as cemented tungsten carbide with an alloyed nickel binder matrix, and resin impregnated carbon-graphites. Some of the more commonly used nonmetallic materials are listed in Table PM-2.1.3-1.

PM-2.2 General Requirements

Materials shall be selected to not affect the purity or integrity of the drug product. The owner/user is

responsible for the qualification of materials for the intended use. The requirements for compliance are summarized in PM-2.2.1. The requirements relate to identification, traceability, biocompatibility, and marking. Methods for characterizing material performance are discussed in PM-3. Application-specific performance requirements are detailed within section PM-4.

Polymeric materials exposed to product fluids and/or that have a high probability of exposure shall comply to the USP directive with regard to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP <88> Class VI (or ISO 10993-6, -10, and -11) on biological reactivity (see PM-3.1). Examples of materials that may come into direct contact with product or process fluids include tubing, pipe, fittings, filters, bags, gaskets, O-rings, diaphragms, pinch tubes, and valve stem seals.

PM-2.2.1 Certificate of Compliance. A Certificate of Compliance shall be issued by the manufacturer to certify compliance to this Standard when required by the end-user. Additional certification documentation may



Table PM-2.1.3-1 Examples of Nonmetallics

Examples of Nonmetallics	Types of Nonmetallic	Example Applications
Glass Borosilicate Soda-lime	Amorphous inorganic nonmetallic material	Sight glasses, vessel lights, optical sensors, glass electrodes
Sintered materials Aluminum oxide Silicon carbide Silicon nitride Tungsten carbide Zirconium dioxide	Crystalline inorganic nonmetallic material	Mechanical seals, bearings, process sensors
Reaction bonded materials Silicon carbide Silicon nitride	Multiphase mixture of crystalline silicon carbide or nitride and silicon	Mechanical seals
Siliconized carbon graphite	Multiphase mixture of crystalline silicon carbide, carbon, and graphite	
Resin impregnated carbon-graphite	Multiphase mixture of carbon, graphite, organic resin, and potential inorganic nonmetallic additives	Mechanical seals
Cemented materials Tungsten carbide with alloyed binder Tungsten carbide with nickel binder Tungsten carbide with cobalt binder	Crystalline inorganic nonmetallic in a metallic matrix	Mechanical seals, bearings

be required. The Certificate of Compliance shall contain the information summarized in Table PM-2.2.1-1.

PM-2.2.2 Labeling and Marking. Manufacturers shall mark the package containing polymer components or assemblies with the manufacturer's name, part number, and lot number or unique identifier (See Table PM-2.2.1-1) to enable the manufacturer to trace back to the raw material(s) and processing conditions used to fabricate the component/assembly. Manufacturers should mark the component/assembly itself to avoid potential loss of traceability and to aid in positive identification of components/assemblies after use.

PM-3 PROPERTIES AND PERFORMANCE

Materials should be selected to retain their functional properties and to minimize their impact on the process fluid. Materials should be selected to not affect the purity and integrity of the drug product. This section outlines the requirements for biocompatibility, extractables/leachables, physical properties, and chemical compatibility. Each of the sections below should be considered for the application.

PM-3.1 Biocompatibility

Biocompatibility is defined here as the ability of a substance or material to be in contact with living matter

such as bacteria or mammalian cells without interfering in any way with its metabolism or ability to live and procreate. Polymer materials shall be biocompatible with the system fluid to ensure that the system fluid is not adversely affected by the polymer material. The biocompatibility and the proper material selection shall be the responsibility of the system user.

Biocompatibility testing of candidate components for qualification requires both in vivo (animal testing) and in vitro (testing in glass) tests. In vivo testing is described in the United States Pharmacopeia (USP) in Chapter <88> and involves intramuscular implantation, intracutaneous injection, and systemic toxicity testing. In vitro testing is described in the United States Pharmacopeia in Chapter <87> and is used to place extract from candidate polymers in direct contact with living cells (typically mouse cells) for a prescribed period of time. The amount of cell lysing (death) shall be recorded and reported for the particular polymer material.

Material manufacturers shall provide, upon customer request, documentation (test report) of the in vivo USP Class VI <88> and in vitro USP <87> testing on final manufactured parts. Failure of either test indicates unacceptable biocompatibility of candidate material. Such failures are often attributed to leachables from cured elastomeric seals extractables and may include



Table PM-2.2.1-1 Information of Certificate of Compliance

Label/Mark	Applications								
	Polymeric Seals	Hygienic Union Seals	Diaphragms	Hoses	Tubing	Single-Use Components and Assemblies	Filters	Columns	Other Nonmetallics
Compliance to ASME BPE	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Manufacturer's name	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Manufacturer's contact information	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Part number	X	X	X	X	X	X	...	...	X
Lot number or unique identifier or serial number	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Material(s) of construction (process contact)	X	X	X	X	X	...	...	X	X
Compound number or unique identifier	X	X	X	...	X	...	...	...	X
Cure date or date of manufacture	X	X	X	...	X	X	X	...	...
USP <87> or ISO 10993-5	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
USP <88> or ISO 10993-6, -10, -11	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	...
Intrusion category (SG-2.4.1)	...	X	...	...	...	...	...	...	...

catalyst residues, cross-linking agents, process aids, plasticizers, etc.

PM-3.2 Extractables and Leachables

PM-3.2.1 General. Extractable testing of process equipment/components that come into contact with the process fluids should be done to identify (and quantify, if necessary) potential leachables that could alter the product. Examples of potential leachables include polymer oligomers, curing agents, metal components, antioxidants, initiators, dyes, pigments, plasticizers, and mold release agents.

PM-3.2.2 Terminology. Extractables are chemicals that can be removed from final articles using appropriate solvents (e.g., polar and non-polar) for identification and quantification of potential leachables.

Leachables are chemicals that migrate from the final article into the process fluid of interest under normal and/or accelerated conditions (typically exposure time and/or temperature). Leachables are typically a subset of extractables but can also be created as a result of chemical reactions with other leachables and/or components.

PM-3.2.3 Extractables

PM-3.2.3.1 Sample Preparation. Extraction studies shall include careful sample preparation based on knowledge of analytical techniques to be used.

The size of the sample should be determined in consideration of the material, test equipment, analytical test sensitivity, and the sample available for testing.

Any tool used for sample preparation shall not adulterate the sample.

Prior to extraction, test samples should be exposed to the same pretreatment process as intended for the process equipment. For example, test articles that are intended to be sterilized (e.g., gamma irradiation, electron-beam, and steam) and/or cleaned (e.g., WFI flush and CIP), should be sterilized and/or cleaned prior to testing.

PM-3.2.3.2 Extract Analysis. Extraction fluid testing may include the analysis of non-volatile, semi-volatile, and volatile organic compounds. It may also include inorganic compounds.

The extent of characterization required should be determined by the intended use of the material/component.



Examples of analytical techniques include gas chromatography, liquid chromatography, and mass spectroscopy.

Documentation of results shall include the extraction method(s), analytical technique(s), and extraction time and temperature.

PM-3.2.3.3 Risk Assessment. The owner/user should consider relevant standards, regulatory guidance, and industry recommendations as listed in Nonmandatory Appendix O, when performing a risk assessment.

The results of the risk assessment should determine if further leachable testing is required and probable compounds to look for.

PM-3.2.4 Leachables

PM-3.2.4.1 Sample Preparation. Samples for leachable testing should be prepared as described in the relevant sections of PM-3.2.3.1.

PM-3.2.4.2 Leachable Fluid Analysis. When leachable fluid analysis is necessary to identify and quantify leachable compounds, it should be conducted using the same analytical methods used for the extraction analysis.

Additional process or product-specific testing may be required (e.g., cell growth testing, drug-product stability).

PM-3.2.4.3 Risk Assessment. The owner/user should consider relevant standards, regulatory guidance, and industry recommendations as listed in Nonmandatory Appendix O, when performing a risk assessment.

The results of the risk assessment should determine the appropriateness of the material for its intended use.

PM-3.3 Physical and Mechanical Properties of Thermoplastic Polymers

The physical and mechanical properties of thermoplastics are important to better understand how fluid exposure could affect the polymer's strength, stiffness, inertness, durability, barrier properties, etc. Physical and mechanical properties can be characterized using many different standards (e.g., ASTM, ISO, DIN, and JIS). Typical properties include tensile strength, elongation to break, modulus, and in some cases, seam strength, weld strength, coefficient of friction, compression set, tensile set, hardness, specific gravity, transparency, etc.

Common useful tests for evaluating thermoplastic performance are listed in Nonmandatory Appendix K.

The interpretation of immersion test results is dependent on the specific application. In such cases, a different material may be more suitable for the application. The overall life of the equipment may be shortened significantly if the correct polymer is not selected. The end-user must ultimately interpret the relevance of the test results for the applicable process.

PM-3.4 Chemical Compatibility of Thermoplastic Polymers

Chemical concentration, temperature, and duration of exposure can all affect the property retention of thermoplastic polymers. When selecting a thermoplastic polymer for chemical contact, the user should consult the supplier for case histories and test data, where available.

If further testing is required, specific fluids should be used to expose test samples for the necessary time and temperature.

PM-3.5 Physical and Mechanical Properties of Thermoset Polymers

Physical and mechanical properties can be characterized using many different standards (e.g., ASTM, ISO, DIN, and JIS). Typical properties include hardness, tensile strength, elongation to break, modulus, and tear strength. In some cases, abrasion resistance, compression set, specific gravity, transparency, etc., may be important. Properties may be affected by manufacturing and use conditions (e.g., temperature, pressure, physical stress). Common tests for evaluating physical and mechanical properties are listed in Nonmandatory Appendix K. Property requirements should be discussed between the owner/user and the supplier, and the owner/user shall be responsible for determining the suitability of the material for the application.

PM-3.6 Chemical Compatibility of Thermoset Elastomers

Chemical concentration, temperature, and duration of exposure can all affect the property retention of thermoset elastomers. When selecting a thermoset elastomer for chemical contact, the user should consult the supplier for case histories and test data, where available. If further testing is required, specific fluids should be used to expose test samples for the necessary time and temperature. Chemical compatibility is particularly important for materials that are re-used. Chemical compatibility testing should be done to screen candidate materials for applications involving cleaning, storage, or exposure to potentially harsh chemicals.

PM-3.7 Polymeric Surface Finish

Polymer material contact surface classifications are found in Part SF, Product Contact Surface Finishes.

PM-4 APPLICATIONS

PM-4.1 Single-Use Components and Assemblies

This subsection defines the requirements that are applicable and unique to the use and manufacturing of single-use components and assemblies. These products are intended for one-time use and may be referred to as disposables. In this subsection, "component" is defined as an individual unit, and "assembly" is defined



as the combination of two or more individual components. This subsection will address the methods for identifying, inspecting, packaging, joining, biocompatibility, and sterilization applicable to single-use polymers, components, and assemblies.

PM-4.1.1 Identification. Single-use components and assemblies shall be designed and packaged to provide lot traceability. The traceability shall enable the end-user to identify the raw material(s), processing conditions critical to support the manufacturer's specifications, and the date of manufacture.

PM-4.1.1.1 Labeling. The primary packaging of single-use components and assemblies shall be labeled with the following information:

- (a) manufacturer
- (b) part identifier
- (c) lot identifier

Additional information can be included on the label upon agreement between manufacturer and end-user.

PM-4.1.1.2 Certificate of Compliance. The single-use component or assembly manufacturer shall issue a Certificate of Compliance that contains the following information:

- (a) manufacturer
- (b) part identifier
- (c) lot identifier
- (d) date of manufacturing and/or expiration date
- (e) compliance information

Additional information can be included in the Certificate of Compliance upon agreement between manufacturer and end-user.

PM-4.1.2 Inspection and Packaging. The packaging of single-use components and assemblies shall be performed to help control the potential introduction of bioburden, particulate, or other contaminants to the component, assembly, or the end-user's system. Inspection shall be performed to confirm the quality of the packaging and that the contents meet the specified criteria between supplier and end-user.

PM-4.1.2.1 Inspection. Single-use components and assemblies shall be inspected for the presence of particulates or other contaminants before primary packaging as agreed upon by manufacturer and end-user. This inspection shall take place in a controlled environment in accordance with the intended use of the final component or assembly.

PM-4.1.2.2 Packaging. The purpose of packaging of single-use components and assemblies is to control the potential introduction of bioburden, particulates, or other contaminants. The packaging shall not adulterate the component and assembly. Primary packaging shall take place in a controlled environment at a level suitable for the final use of the component or assembly. The

packaging of single-use components and assemblies shall be labeled according to PM-4.1.1.1.

PM-4.1.3 Joining Methods. The joining of polymers may be performed in many ways for single-use applications. Examples of these joining techniques include, but are not limited to, welding, heat sealing, over-molding, solvent bonding, mechanical connections, and adhesives. With any of these methods, the procedure for the joining of polymers, components, or assemblies shall be controlled to ensure repeatable results. The joint shall not leak, shall meet the pressure requirements for the intended use, and shall maintain the integrity of the component or assembly's contact surface.

PM-4.1.4 Biocompatibility. The biocompatibility of single-use components and assemblies must be considered carefully due to the potential for large product contact areas and long contact times. Many of these components and assemblies are composed of multiple materials or multilayer structures, and the primary concern is how the product interacts with the contact surfaces. The design of the component and assembly shall not compromise the integrity, safety, or efficacy of the process fluid. The focus of evaluations should be on the material of construction of the product contact surface, but it is preferred to evaluate the complete component and assembly. At a minimum, the product contact surface shall comply with the following tests:

- (a) biological reactivity, in vitro (cytotoxicity, i.e., USP <87>)
- (b) biological reactivity, in vivo (i.e., USP <88>) or equivalent per recognized compendia agreed to by end-user and manufacturer.

Additionally, the user should consider protein adsorption, preservative absorption, leaching of low molecular weight compounds, endotoxins, and presence of animal-derived compounds in single-use components and assemblies.

PM-4.1.5 Sterilization (Bioburden Control). Single-use assemblies and components shall be compatible with the intended sterilization method. Common sterilization methods include autoclaving and gamma irradiation. Autoclaving is generally performed by the end-user. Gamma irradiation is generally contracted to a third party by the manufacturer. The end-user shall determine the appropriate method and level of documentation required for the given application.

PM-4.1.5.1 Gamma Irradiation. Single-use assemblies that will be gamma irradiated shall be manufactured in a controlled environment. The supplier shall provide lot specific certification of processing to the end-user. The validation categories are defined below.

- (a) *Category 1:* validated sterility assurance level per a recognized standard (e.g., ISO 11137).
- (b) *Category 2:* gamma irradiated to the specified dose range. No validation of the effectiveness is conducted.



PM-4.2 Piping

Design consideration for polymeric rigid piping and rigid tubing

PM-4.2.1 Sizing Comparisons. Thermoplastic piping systems are available in a variety of sizing standards. Tube/pipe (e.g., Schedule 40, Schedule 80), Standard Dimensional Ratio (SDR) 11, and SDR 21 are some of the most common standards used. Table PM-4.2.1-1 is a reference that compares the outside and inside dimensions of these standards. It is important to consider these standards when performing system sizing calculations to enhance dimensional alignment of pipe/tube inner diameters to allow for sterility, cleanability, and drainability. Tube-inside dimensions are critical for alignment to stainless steel systems.

PM-4.2.2 Pressure Ratings. Polymer piping systems have varying pressure ratings depending on material and sizing standards. Valves and mechanical connections such as sanitary adapters, flanges, or threads may carry pressure ratings independent of pipe and fittings. Elevated operating temperatures will decrease overall system rating. Consult material manufacturers for specific details.

PM-4.2.3 Thermal Expansion. Polymer materials will expand and contract with changing temperature conditions. The effect of thermal expansion must be considered and designed for in each and every thermoplastic system.

To compensate for thermal expansion, it is recommended to use loops, offsets, and changes in direction. By using the pipe itself to relieve the stress, the integrity of the pipe system is maintained. The use of bellows or pistons is not recommended due to the formation of pockets and gaps where liquids may be held up. The amount of thermal expansion growth in a pipe system is generally calculated by the following formula:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\Delta L = 12 \times L \times \alpha \times \Delta T$$

where

L = length of the pipe run, ft

α = coefficient of thermal expansion, in./in./°F
material and temperature dependent

ΔL = change in length, in.

ΔT = temperature change, ΔF

(SI Units)

$$\Delta L = L \times \alpha \times \Delta T$$

where

L = length of the pipe run, mm

α = coefficient of thermal expansion, mm/m/°C
material and temperature dependent

ΔL = change in length, mm

ΔT = temperature change, °C

Typical coefficients of thermal expansion at room temperature by material type are found below. Consult manufacturer for exact coefficient values.

(U.S. Customary Units)

PVDF 6.6×10^{-5} , in./in./°F

PFA 7.0×10^{-5} , in./in./°F

PP 8.33×10^{-5} , in./in./°F

(SI Units)

PVDF 1.2×10^{-5} , mm/m/°C

PFA 1.2×10^{-5} , mm/m/°C

PP 1.5×10^{-5} , mm/m/°C

ΔT is the maximum (or minimum) temperature minus the installation temperature. If the installation temperature or time of year is unknown, it is practical to increase the ΔT by 15% for safety. It is not necessary or practical to use the maximum temperature minus the minimum temperature unless it will truly be installed in one of those conditions.

PM-4.2.4 System Support Criteria

PM-4.2.4.1 Support Distances. Supports shall be placed based on the spacing requirements provided by system manufacturers. Hanging distances are based on system material as well as the specific gravity and temperature of the process media. Operating conditions of all applicable processes, including CIP and SIP, must also be considered. Hanging criteria generally increase with system operating temperatures. The placement of hangers, guides, and anchors is critical in systems exposed to thermal cycling. Hanger locations should be identified by the system engineer and laid out to allow for expansion and contraction of the pipe over its life of operation.

PM-4.2.4.2 Hanger and Clamp Types. Avoid using hangers that place a pinpoint load on the pipe when tightened. A U-bolt hanger is not recommended for thermoplastic piping. Hangers that secure the pipe 360 deg around the pipe are preferred. Thermoplastic clamps are also recommended over metal clamps, as they are less likely to scratch the pipe in the event of movement. Clamps should be evaluated to avoid rough edges that could damage the pipe. Ideally, if a metal clamp is being used, an elastomer material should be used in between the pipe and the clamp. Refer to Part SD for exterior cleanability.

PM-4.2.5 Connections and Fittings. Design of equipment should minimize the number of mechanical connections. Fusion welded connections should be used wherever practical. Hygienic design of connections shall comply with SD-3.1, Connections, Fittings, and Piping.

PM-4.2.6 Joining Processes and Procedures. Polymer tube and pipe systems are joined by a variety of heat



Table PM-4.2.1.1-1 Size Comparison of Common Thermoplastic Sizing Standards

Nominal Size System	SS Tube				Sch 40				Sch 80				SDR 11				SDR 21			
	O.D.		I.D.		O.D.		I.D.		O.D.		I.D.		O.D.		I.D.		O.D.		I.D.	
	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm	in.	mm
1/2	0.5	12.7	0.37	9.4	0.84	21.3	0.61	15.4	0.84	21.3	0.53	13.4	0.79	20	0.59	16.2	0.79	20	0.64	16.2
3/4	0.75	19.1	0.62	15.7	1.05	26.7	0.81	20.6	1.05	26.7	0.74	18.8	0.98	25	0.77	20.4	0.98	25	0.83	21.2
1	1	25.4	0.87	22.1	1.32	33.4	1.03	26.2	1.32	33.4	0.94	23.7	1.26	32	1.02	24.2	1.26	32	1.07	27.2
1 1/4	1 1/4	38.1	1.37	34.8	1.66	42.2	1.36	34.6	1.66	42.2	1.26	31.9	1.57	40	1.28	32.6	1.57	40	1.38	35.2
1 1/2	1 1/2	41.3	1.5	38.1	1.9	48.3	1.59	40.4	1.9	48.3	1.48	37.5	1.97	50	1.61	40.8	1.97	50	1.73	44
2	2	50.8	1.87	47.5	2.38	60.3	2.05	52	2.38	60.3	1.91	48.6	2.48	63	2.02	51.4	2.48	63	2.24	57
2 1/2	2 1/2	63.5	2.37	60.2	2.88	73	2.45	62.1	2.88	73	2.29	58.1	2.95	75	2.41	61.4	2.95	75	2.67	67.8
3	3	76.2	2.87	72.9	3.5	88.9	3.04	77.3	3.5	88.9	2.86	72.7	3.54	90	2.9	73.6	3.54	90	3.07	81.4
4	4	102	3.84	97.5	4.5	114	3	76.1	4.5	114	3.79	96.2	4.33	110	3.54	90	4.33	110	3.8	99.4
6	6	152	5.78	147	6.63	168	6.03	153	6.63	168	5.71	145	6.3	160	5.14	131	6.3	160	5.69	145



fusion welding methods. Available techniques include various beadless technologies, noncontact infrared (IR) fusion, butt fusion, and socket fusion.

NOTE: All joining techniques may not be available for all materials, nor are all methods acceptable for all processes. Care should be taken in selecting material of construction and joining technique based upon application requirement. A brief description of some available joining techniques is presented in PM-4.2.6.1 through PM-4.2.6.3.

PM-4.2.6.1 Beadless Welding. Beadless welding (material-dependent) is compatible with SIP systems and must be used where system, in-place drainage is required. Beadless welding may be used in the process stream or where CIP requirements are defined. Beadless welding is the preferred method for system joining.

A variety of beadless welding techniques exists in which resultant joints are free from internal beads and crevices. The primary method of beadless welding involves careful diffusion of heat through the external surfaces while maintaining internal support of material as it becomes molten. Once heated to desired temperature and duration, the molten material flows and readily joins as a single piece. An internal support device is inserted in the weld area to prevent the formation on an internal bead. Refer to manufacturers' written procedures for the complete beadless welding process.

PM-4.2.6.2 Noncontact Infrared (IR) Butt Fusion. IR fusion is not suitable for SIP systems, for it is not considered in-line drainable as required by accepted current Good Manufacturing Practices (cGMP).

IR welding is similar to butt fusion with the significant difference being the joining material does not come into direct contact with the heating element. Instead, the material is held close to the heating element and is heated by radial heat. IR welding uses the same critical welding parameters of heat soak time, changeover time, and joining force as found with butt fusion. However, by avoiding direct contact with the heating element, IR fusion produces a cleaner weld with more repeatable and smaller bead sizes. Refer to manufacturers' written procedures for the complete noncontact IR fusion welding process.

PM-4.2.6.3 Contact Butt Fusion. Butt fusion is not suitable for SIP systems, for it is not considered in-line drainable as required by accepted cGMP.

The principle of butt fusion, as described in ASTM D2657, "Standard Practice for Heat Fusion Joining of Polyolefin Pipe and Fittings," is to heat two surfaces at the melt temperature, then make contact between the two surfaces and allow the two surfaces to fuse by application of force. The force causes flow of the melted materials to join. Upon cooling, the two parts are united. Nothing is added or changed chemically between the two components being joined. Butt fusion does not require solvents or glue to join material. Butt

fusion joints result in external and internal beads, which may assist with weld quality and inspection criteria.

Refer to manufacturers' written procedures and ASTM D2657, DVS 2207-11, "Welding of Thermoplastics — Heated Tool Welding of Pipes, Pipeline Components and Sheets Made of PP," and DVS 2207-15, "Welding of Thermoplastics — Heated Tool Welding of Pipes, Pipeline Components and Sheets Made of PVDF."

PM-4.2.6.4 Socket Fusion. Socket fusion is not suitable for SIP systems for it is not considered in-line drainable as required by accepted cGMP.

In socket welding, as described in ASTM D2657, the pipe end and socket fittings are heated to the welding temperature by means of a socket and spigot heater inserts. Socket welding may be manually performed on pipe diameters up to 2.0 in. (50 mm). Sizes above that require a bench socket tool due to the required joining forces. In sizes greater than 1 in. (25 mm), a bench-style machine may be preferred for ease of operation.

Refer to manufacturers' written procedures and ASTM D2657, DVS 2207-11, and DVS 2207-15.

PM-4.2.7 Joint Design and Preparation. The quality of polymeric weld joints depends on the qualification of the welders, the suitability of the equipment used, environmental influences, and adherence to applicable weld standards. Every welder must be trained and possess a valid qualification certificate. The welding zone must be protected against adverse environmental influences including excessive moisture, extreme temperature conditions, excessive drafts, and contamination sources (i.e., dirt, dust, oil, foreign material shavings). Environmental condition recommendations shall be included in the bonding procedure specification (BPS) provided by the material/equipment manufacturer and approved by the owner/user.

PM-4.2.7.1 Tubing and Pipe. Joint designs for tubing, pipe, and fittings shall be square butt joints. Joining surfaces shall have ends prepared by molding, cutting, machining, or facing to provide a square end that meets requirements of Table DT-3-1 for applicable squareness. The butt weld joints must be completed in accordance with the BPS. The owner/user and contractor shall agree that the welding process selected will provide the desired results.

PM-4.2.8 Weld Acceptance Criteria. Inspection criteria and methods are dictated by material type and joining method. Common visual inspection criteria includes complete bonding of joining surface, straight and aligned joints, and exclusion of dirt and foreign substances in weld zone.

PM-4.2.8.1 Weld Acceptance for Beadless Welds. Visual weld acceptance (including borescopic and light illumination at 1× magnification) for beadless polymer



hygienic pipe, tubing, valves, and fittings that are internally and externally inspected shall be in accordance with the weld acceptance criteria of this section. This Part does not require radiography for polymer materials. Preproduction sample welds, when required, shall be submitted by the contractor to the owner/user to establish weld quality. The owner/user, contractor, and inspection contractor shall agree to the number and type of sample welds. During construction, sample welds shall be made on a regular basis to verify that the equipment is operating properly and that the setup is adequate to prevent discoloration beyond the level agreed upon by the owner/user and contractor. The owner/user and contractor shall agree to the frequency of sample welds. It is strongly recommended that these sample welds be made at the beginning of each work shift and when changing the operator or welding equipment.

(a) *Cracks and Crevices.* Any crack or crevice would generally indicate lack of full penetration welds. No internal or external cracks or crevices shall be permitted in the weld zone. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (b).

(b) *Pits and Pores.* Pits and pores shall not be present in the weld zone on the interior surface. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (c).

(c) *Voids.* Voids or microbubbles in the weld zone are the result of molten material shrinking as it cools leaving small voids, usually in the center of the weld, due to volume displacement. They are not uncommon in beadless welding, and their presence alone is not reason for rejection. Large voids [limited by PM-4.2.8.1.3(a)] or excessive voids [limited by PM-4.2.8.1.3(b)] are not acceptable according to the following guidelines:

(1) Any single void larger in diameter than 10% of nominal pipe wall thickness is not acceptable.

(2) The total for all void diameters in a given cross-sectional inspection shall not exceed 10% of nominal pipe wall thickness. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (d).

(d) *Fit-Up and Mismatch.* Components shall be aligned so as to prevent hold-up volume areas that would contribute to contamination of the product. The maximum misalignment is 10% of nominal wall thickness [see Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (e)]. It is not recommended to join two polymer components of different wall thicknesses.

(e) *Inclusions.* Any dark, visible inclusion or specks on the product contact surface of the weld zone are considered foreign materials and are not acceptable. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (f).

(f) *Discoloration.* Slight discoloration in the weld zone is not uncommon in beadless welding. Slight discoloration would include up to a light "straw" color in the weld zone. Dark color change on the surface or at weld interface could indicate improper cleaning or joint preparation and should be rejected. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (g).

(g) *Concavity.* Maximum inside diameter (I.D.) concavity shall be limited to 10% of the nominal pipe wall thickness. See Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1, illustration (h).

PM-4.2.8.2 Examination Procedures for Non-beadless Welds. Weld acceptance criteria for piping shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, A341.3.2 through A341.3.4; DVS 2202-1, "Imperfections in Welded Joints of Thermoplastic Materials — Features, Description, Evaluation"; and American Welding Society (AWS) G1.10M, "Guide for the Evaluation of Hot Gas, Hot Gas Extrusion, and Heated Tool Butt Thermoplastic Welds" criteria. These standards contain detailed, nondestructive inspection requirements for fabrication of sheets and piping systems by heat welding, socket, and butt fusion. Refer to manufacturers' inspection criteria for noncontact IR and beadless welding techniques. Borescoping of product contact surface weld areas on polymer systems is not an absolute requirement although it may be preferred by owner and inspector.

PM-4.2.8.3 Testing. Hydrostatic testing of piping and rigid tubing systems shall be performed in accordance with ASME B31.3, Chapter VI, Section 345. Pneumatic testing shall not be used for polymer systems.

PM-4.2.8.4 Records. Weld equipment should monitor and record critical weld parameters such as heat, cool time, and temperature. If the equipment does not have monitoring or recording capabilities, weld data shall be recorded in welding protocols or on data carriers. Additional requirements of records and retention of records associated with piping and tubing shall be in accordance with ASME B31.3, Chapter VI, Section 346.

PM-4.2.9 Documentation Requirements. The following documentation shall be presented to the owner/user or his/her designee, as a minimum:

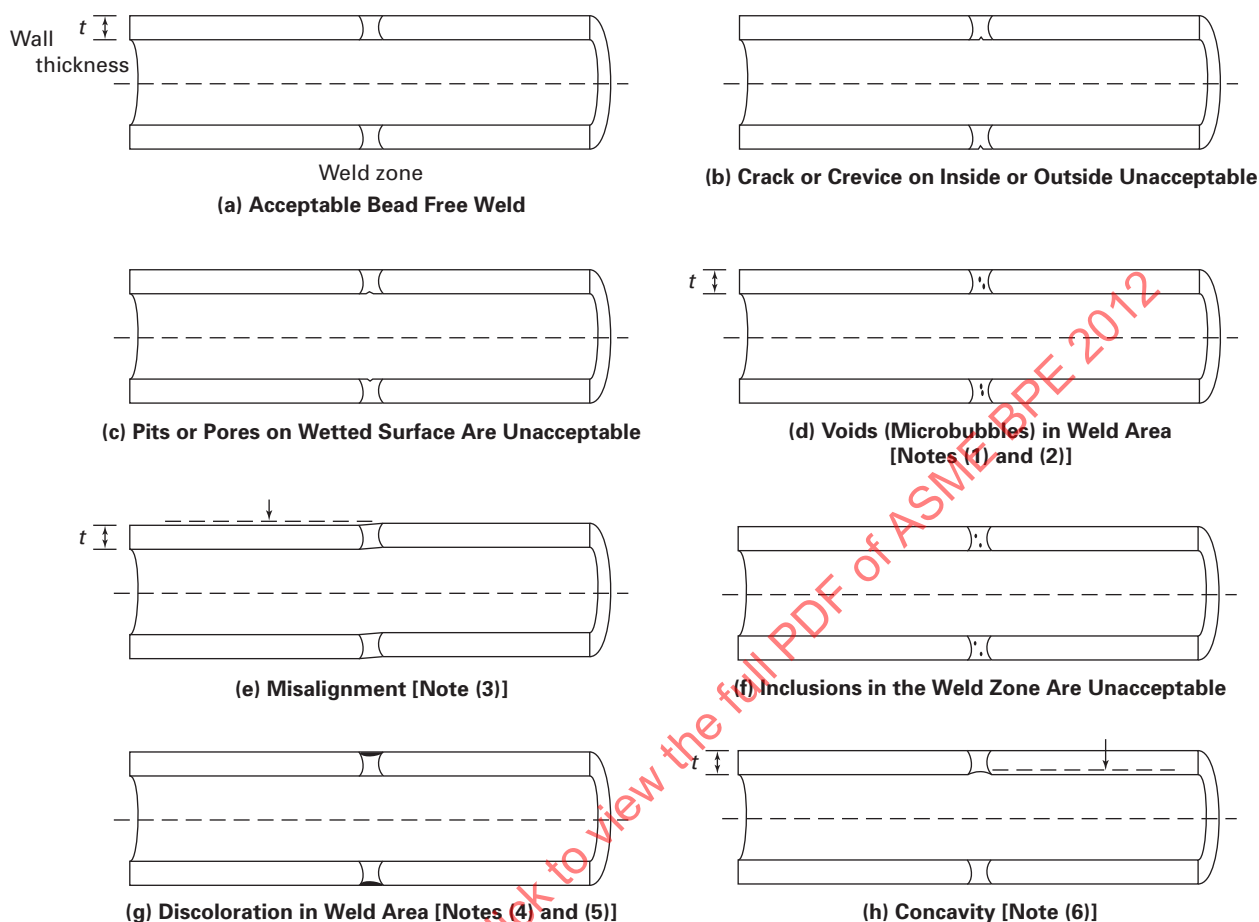
(a) *Welding Documentation.* Welding Procedure Specifications/Parameters (WPS/P) used, their Procedure Qualification Records (PQR), and Welder Performance Qualifications/Certification (WPQ/C) or Welding Operator Performance Qualifications/Certifications (WOPQ/C).

(b) *Weld Maps.* When required by the owner/user, weld maps of bioprocessing components, weld inspection logs of bioprocessing components (including type and date of inspection), and welder identification of each weld shall be provided either on the weld map or on the inspection log.

It is recommended to utilize fusion equipment that electronically stores welding histories and serializes welds. Welding history shall be turned over, in printed or electronic format, to the owner/user upon completion of work and as part of the Installation Qualification (IQ) process.

(c) *Materials.* All molded fittings, molded valves, and extruded pipe shall be intrinsically identified to provide,



Fig. PM-4.2.8.1-1 Acceptable and Unacceptable Weld Profiles for Beadless Welds**NOTES:**

- (1) Unacceptable if
 - (a) any single void diameter is $> 10\%$ wall thickness, t
 - (b) or the total for all void diameters in a cross-sectional view is $> 10\%$ wall thickness, t
- (2) A few small voids are acceptable and are usually localized in the center of the weld zone.
- (3) Unacceptable if wall offset is $> 10\%$ wall thickness, t .
- (4) Slight discoloration is normal and acceptable (straw color).
- (5) Dark color is unacceptable (brownish).
- (6) Unacceptable if $> 10\%$ wall thickness, t .

as a minimum, material of construction, lot number, and date of production to ensure traceability. Certificate of Compliance shall be provided for molded/extruded components not properly labeled.

(d) *Testing Records.* Other records (e.g., pressure test, surface finish) shall be provided as required by the owner/user.

PM-4.3 Hose Assemblies

PM-4.3.1 General. This section defines the requirements for flexible hose assemblies intended for repeated use. Hose assemblies are defined here as a length of a

flexible, polymeric element with at least one end connection securely affixed and capable of containing fluids under specified conditions (e.g., pressure and temperature).

PM-4.3.2 Hose Construction

PM-4.3.2.1 Flexible Elements. Elements may be constructed from a single, homogeneous material or multiple layers. Multilayer elements may consist of an inner contact layer surrounded by one or more additional reinforcement layers and an outer cover. Reinforcement layers may include fabric braiding, metal wire

braiding, and various elastomeric materials. The liner design shall allow for drainability and cleanability as required by the end-user.

PM-4.3.2.2 Mechanically Affixed and Reusable End Connections. Metallic and nonmetallic end connections are attached to the flexible element by mechanical compression. The design shall ensure a seal is maintained at the end of the barb [see Fig. SD-3.2.1-1, illustration (d)]. Band style hose clamps are not recommended [see Fig. SD-3.2.1-1, illustration (c)]. The fitting should be designed to minimize entrapment of liquid in the hose assembly. Dimensions and tolerances of the process connection shall be consistent with Table DT-7-1.

PM-4.3.2.3 Flare-Through End Connections. Flare-through end connections are connections in which the inner contact layer of the flexible element extends through the fitting and is formed into the end connector. Flare-through end connections may have integral gaskets or provisions for standard gaskets.

PM-4.3.2.4 Molded-in-Place End Connections. Molded-in-place end connections are secured to the flexible element by a thermal or chemical bond. Molded-in-place end connections utilizing non-rigid materials may require additional stiffening reinforcement to achieve an adequate process connection seal. Molded-in-place end connections may include an integral gasket.

PM-4.3.2.5 Hose Materials. Hose assembly materials shall conform to applicable sections of SD-2.4.1.2 and PM-2.1.

(a) *Biocompatibility.* The biocompatibility and proper material selection shall be the responsibility of the end-user. Biocompatibility testing of candidate hose assemblies for qualification requires USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP Class VI USP <88> (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11) tests on all polymeric process contact materials. End-users may request similar testing on noncontact layers that may come in contact with the process fluid if the inner liner fails. Hose assembly suppliers shall provide, upon customer request, documentation of the biocompatibility testing on final manufactured hose assembly materials. Failure of either test indicates unacceptable biocompatibility of the candidate hose assembly.

(b) *Surface Finish.* Surface finish of metallic end fittings shall comply with the requirements of Part SF.

(c) *Particle Generation.* Hose assembly designs should minimize wear that generates particles that could enter the product.

(d) *Extractables.* Hose assembly materials shall conform to the requirements of PM-3.2.

PM-4.3.3 Hose Assembly Performance. The equipment supplier should be informed of all the conditions under which the hose assembly may be expected to operate. This should include the methods, frequency,

and length of cleaning and sterilization procedures. In addition to the service temperature and pressure, any parameters that may affect the hose assembly performance should be provided. The equipment supplier should inform the end-user of the life cycle expectancy and the methods that will ensure that the hose assembly operates within its design specification (e.g., routine maintenance).

PM-4.3.3.1 Service Temperatures and Pressures.

Hose assemblies shall be capable of withstanding thermal and pressure cycling between the rated upper and lower temperature and pressure limits.

PM-4.3.3.2 Non-Routine Events. The complete procedure for non-routine events such as passivation, derouging, and post construction cleaning should be supplied by the end-user. The supplier should inform the end-user whether the hose assembly will perform as specified during these events. The end-user should perform a risk assessment to determine if a new hose assembly is required after non-routine events.

PM-4.3.3.3 Cleaning Systems

(a) *Clean-in-Place (CIP).* Hose assemblies shall be designed in accordance with SD-3.1. The hose assembly shall be installed to allow for drainability (see SD-3.2).

(b) *Clean-out-of-Place (COP).* External surfaces of hose assemblies subject to COP shall be compatible with cleaning agents and be nonabsorbent. Hose assemblies shall be designed to allow effective removal of cleaning agents from external surfaces.

PM-4.3.3.4 Sterilizing Systems. Hose assembly requirements shall be based on the sterilization method utilized. All process contact surfaces should be designed to minimize crevices. When crevices cannot be avoided, sterilization testing shall be performed to validate sterility within the system boundaries. All hose assemblies and hose assembly process contact surfaces shall be designed to accommodate expansion and contraction during sterilization and cool-down stage.

PM-4.3.4 Hose Assembly Installation. Hose assemblies shall be installed per SD-3.2 and used in accordance with the supplier's guidelines (e.g., bend radius). Change in hose assembly length due to pressure and temperature cycling and the potential effect on drainability should be considered by the end-user.

PM-4.3.5 Compliance Requirements

PM-4.3.5.1 General Requirements. A Certificate of Compliance shall be issued by the hose assembly supplier to certify compliance to this Standard when required by the end-user.

PM-4.3.5.2 Certificate of Compliance. The Certificate of Compliance shall contain the following information:

(a) manufacturer's name



- (b) part number
- (c) unique identifier of the hose assembly
- (d) material of construction of process contact items
- (e) compliance to USP <87> (or ISO 10993-5) and USP Class VI <88> (or ISO 10993-6, ISO 10993-10, and ISO 10993-11)

(f) packaging and storage recommendations (this may be in another document)

Supplier's name and unique identifier shall be marked on either the hose assembly itself or the package containing the hose assembly. The unique identifier shall enable the supplier to identify the raw material and processing conditions used to fabricate the article. Suppliers shall mark the hose assembly itself to avoid potential loss of traceability and to aid in positive identification of hose assemblies.

PM-4.3.5.3 Test Requirements. Conformance testing is done upon initial qualification of the hose assembly. Testing is intended to show design conformance and is not required on every hose assembly. Testing shall be repeated for significant changes in raw materials or processes used to fabricate hose assemblies.

PM-4.4 Chromatography Columns

[Reserved for future content]

PM-4.5 Filtration Elements and Components

[Reserved for future content]

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012

Part CR Certification

CR-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

Part CR provides requirements for the certification of organizations providing components in accordance with this Standard. It also provides requirements for the authorization of organizations to mark product and/or documentation with the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator.

In Part CR, the term “components” shall be limited to tubing and fittings.

CR-2 GENERAL

ASME BPE certification means that the capability to fulfill requirements of this Standard by the organization has been reviewed and accepted by ASME. The organization is responsible for ensuring that the products stamped with the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator meet the requirements on which the certification is based.

Certificate Holders are organizations that meet all of the requirements of this Standard and have been issued valid Certificates as described in this Part.

A Certificate Holder that is authorized to mark components with the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator is issued a Certificate of Authorization.

Certificate Holders are issued a certificate number to be used to attest to the validity of their certification. Written references indicating that an organization is a Certificate Holder are not valid without reference to the certificate number.

A current list of Certificate Holders is available from ASME upon request.

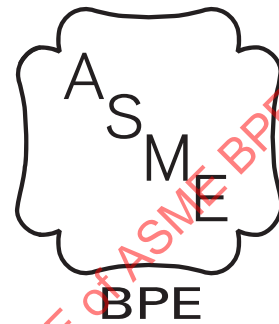
CR-2.1 ASME Procedures and Policies

ASME has procedures and policies for the issuance, withholding, withdrawing, suspension, and renewal of Certificates, and the conduct of surveys, investigations, and audits. They include provisions for confidentiality, conflict of interest, and due process. Relevant procedures and policies are available from ASME upon request.

CR-2.2 ASME BPE Certificate Holders

The ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization Holder is the provider of components that certifies that each component complies with all applicable requirements of this Standard and is authorized to apply the official

Fig. CR-2.3.1-1 ASME Mark With BPE Designator (12)



ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator to covered products. This can include the final manufacturer, assembler, or supplier.

A Certificate Holder is issued a Certificate of Authorization and the ASME Certification Mark upon successful completion of a survey and approval by ASME.

CR-2.3 ASME BPE Certificate Holder's Responsibilities

When certification is granted, each applicant agrees to the requirements specified in CR-2.3.1 through CR-2.3.6.

CR-2.3.1 Use of the Certificate and ASME Certification Mark

(a) The Certificate and the ASME Certification Mark are at all times the property of ASME.

(b) The Certificate and the ASME Certification Mark shall be used according to the requirements of this Standard. The BPE Designator shall be the responsibility of the Certificate Holder. The Designator shall consist of the uppercase letters “BPE” and shall be of a design having similar proportions to that shown in Fig. CR-2.3.1-1. The Designator shall be located immediately underneath the ASME Certification Mark.

(c) The Certificate and ASME Certification Mark, as appropriate, shall be promptly returned to ASME, and usage of the ASME Certification Mark shall cease upon demand by ASME or when the applicant discontinues the scope of work covered by the Certificate.

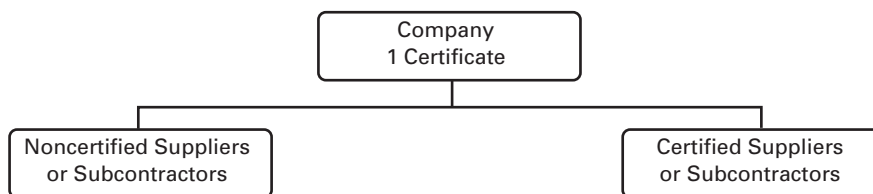
(d) The holder of a Certificate shall not permit any other party, including subcontractors, to use the Certificate or ASME Certification Mark.

(e) A Certificate of Authorization Holder shall mark the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator (or a

Fig. CR-2.3.2-1 Options for Certification of Organizations

(12)

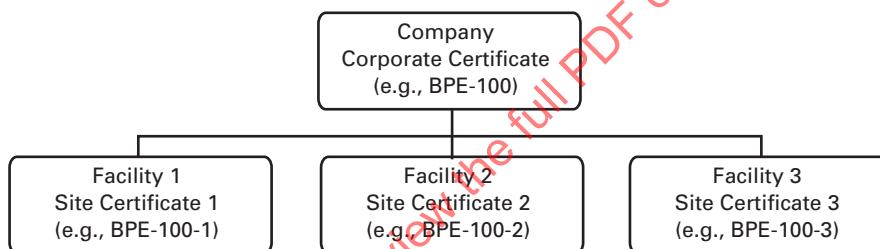
1. One company that purchases raw materials or products from either certified suppliers or subcontractors or noncertified subcontractors (where only the final company is certified).



2. One company with only one facility.



3. One company with numerous facilities — one certificate covering all facilities.



facsimile of it) on their components and documentation (as applicable).

When a Certificate Holder indicates on any written documentation that they are an ASME BPE Certificate Holder, they shall include their valid certificate number on that documentation.

CR-2.3.2 Compliance With This Standard. The ASME BPE Certificate Holder shall ensure that all components and related documentation are properly marked. The Certificate Holder shall retain a valid copy of the current revision of the ASME BPE Standard. Figure CR-2.3.2-1 provides a graphic of several acceptable certification methodologies for companies with one or more facilities.

- (12) **CR-2.3.3 Subcontracting.** The ASME BPE Certificate Holder providing any component with the proper ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator compliant with the ASME BPE Standard has the responsibility of ensuring that any work provided on or in the component by others complies with all the requirements of this Standard. "Work provided by others" shall mean work provided by other corporate affiliates or work provided by nonaffiliated independent contractors. Figure CR-2.3.2-1 provides a graphic of several acceptable certification methodologies for subcontracting.

Work provided by others who are not in possession of a valid BPE Certificate of Authorization shall be verified as meeting the requirements of the Standard by the Certificate Holder through surveys and audits. The experience and knowledge requirements of auditors shall be documented in the Quality Management System (QMS) Manual. The BPE Certificate Holder shall have objective evidence that qualified auditors meet the experience and knowledge requirements as specified in their program. The BPE Certificate Holder shall have objective evidence of the surveys and audits performed. As a minimum, the frequency of surveys and audits shall be commensurate with surveys and audits performed by ASME.

A Certificate Holder is not required to conduct surveys or audits of subcontractors holding a valid ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization.

CR-2.3.4 Quality Management System. The Applicant shall establish and maintain an effective QMS that addresses all of their processes to ensure that all applicable requirements of the current ASME BPE Standard are met. The current Standard shall be adopted and conformed to by the applicant within 6 mo of the date of issuance.

- CR-2.3.4.1 Quality Management System Control.** (12)
A Quality Management System is a formalized set of



quality assurance guidelines, procedures, forms, and other discretionary documentation specific to each applicant, compiled into a manual providing guidance, structure, and authority to an applicant's Quality Assurance Program.

CR-2.3.4.1.1 In complying with the ASME BPE Standard it shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- (a) a means to verify proper documentation and traceability of finished product and raw material.
- (b) a means to verify compliance of outsourced goods and services such as electropolishing or passivation.
- (c) the control of quality during manufacture or fabrication including that of testing, examination, repair, and handling of the product.
- (d) evaluation, auditing, qualification, and monitoring of suppliers of raw material, finished goods, and unfinished goods. This is not required of those suppliers and service providers holding a valid ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization.
- (e) the control and proper segregation of outsourced product from receipt through final integration of finished product.
- (f) company organization chart identifying the chain of management with regard to internal audit and quality control personnel.
- (g) the further requirements of CR-3.2.2 and CR-3.2.3.

CR-2.3.4.1.2 The QMS shall include provisions to ensure compliance of the product with

- (a) the general and design requirements of Parts GR and SD
- (b) the physical attributes requirements of Parts DT, SF, SG, PM, MM, and PI as appropriate to the product
- (c) materials requirements of Part MM for metals, Part PM for polymeric materials, and Part SG for seals and gaskets
- (d) material joining requirements of Part MJ for metals, or Part PM for polymeric materials in both component manufacture and assembly/installation

Unless otherwise specified in this Standard, examination/testing shall be conducted at the frequencies specified in the applicable referenced product specification(s), or else at a minimum of 10%. Such examination/testing may be performed by the Certificate Holder's quality department or by a qualified third party.

CR-2.3.5 Quality Management System Manual. The ASME BPE Certificate Holder shall maintain a copy of the ASME accepted QMS Manual. If the Certificate Holder wishes to change the program to a degree requiring changes to the manual, the Certificate Holder shall submit to and obtain approval of the proposed changes from ASME in writing prior to implementation. In response to the submitted proposed changes ASME may require an audit of the Certificate Holder at its discretion.

The Certificate Holder shall provide a copy of their QMS Manual to ASME as part of the document submission package.

CR-2.3.5.1 Multiple Sites. A corporate QMS Manual may be used at various facilities, or each facility may operate under its own QMS Manual. Should a corporate program be developed and used at various facilities, a corporate Certificate of Authorization will be issued to the location where the corporate QMS is controlled, established, maintained, and approved for issuance and use. For each facility where the corporate QMS is being implemented, a site Certificate of Authorization will be issued (commonly referred to as a "dash certificate" or an "extension certificate"). The corporate Certificate of Authorization will be issued a certificate number. The site Certificate will have the same certificate number as the corporate Certificate; however, it will be followed by a dash number. Each site Certificate will be issued in numerical order.

EXAMPLE:

Corporate Certificate of Authorization number: BPE-100

Certificate of Authorization, Facility #1: BPE-100-1

Certificate of Authorization, Facility #2: BPE-100-2

Certificate of Authorization, Facility #3: BPE-100-3

A Certificate of Authorization (site Certificate) authorizes the use of the ASME Certification Mark. A corporate Certificate of Authorization does not authorize the use of the Certification Mark and BPE Designator; therefore, the ASME Certification Mark will not be issued with a corporate Certificate of Authorization.

CR-2.3.6 Requirements for Designated Oversight.

The use of the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator shall be documented with data reports or certificates of conformance, or both, that are signed by a responsible representative of the Certificate Holder who is authorized to perform the designated oversight activities (i.e., Certified Individual). The data reports or certificates of conformance, or both, shall be retained for a period of not less than 5 yr.

CR-2.3.6.1 Duties of the Certified Individual. The Certified Individual shall

(a) verify that each item, or lot of items, to which the ASME Certification Mark and BPE Designator is to be applied conforms with the applicable requirements of the ASME BPE Standard

(b) sign the appropriate data report or certificate of conformance or both prior to release of control of the item

CR-2.3.6.2 Requirements for the Certified Individual

(a) The Certified Individual shall be an employee of the Certificate Holder and shall be qualified and certified



by the Certificate Holder. Qualifications shall include the following as a minimum:

(1) knowledge of the applicable requirements of the ASME BPE Standard for the application of the ASME Certification Mark

(2) knowledge of the Certificate Holder's QMS

(3) training commensurate with the scope, complexity, or special nature of the activities to which oversight is to be provided

(b) The Certificate Holder shall maintain a record of the qualifications and training of the Certified Individual.

CR-3 ACQUIRING AN ASME BPE CERTIFICATE

CR-3.1 Application for Certification

Each Applicant shall identify the specific facility(s) covered and state the scope and limits of any activities for which certification is requested. At its discretion, ASME may limit or extend the scope of certification. Figure CR-2.3.2-1 provides a graphic of several acceptable certification methodologies for companies with one or more facilities.

Application for BPE Certification shall be made to ASME.¹

CR-3.2 Verification of Qualification

An organization requesting certification shall be surveyed by an ASME assigned survey team to ensure that the requirements of this Standard are met. After issuance of the Certificate, follow-up audits will be conducted to ensure continued compliance.

(12) **CR-3.2.1 Evaluation of the Quality Management System.** The Applicant's QMS Manual and related procedures shall be submitted to ASME in conjunction with their application for certification. The QMS documents shall be reviewed for conformance with the requirements of this Standard.

The QMS Manual shall provide a detailed description of the items and services that are being provided under the company's ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization.

The QMS Manual shall include provisions for a system performance review and evaluation by management at least annually. This review may be conducted by internal personnel or by a qualified third party (e.g., an ANAB or CROC recognized organization) with evaluation by and improvements/corrections implemented by management.

All changes made to the QMS Manual are to be submitted to ASME for acceptance. In evaluating the manual revisions an announced audit may be determined to be necessary. Should an audit be determined to be

necessary the Certificate Holder will have the option of an early renewal survey in lieu of an announced audit.

CR-3.2.2 Applicant's Facilities and Equipment. All (12) locations identified in the QMS Manual where activities are performed by the Applicant are required to be surveyed. An on-site survey shall be conducted to verify compliance with the Applicant's QMS Manual and this Standard.

The Applicant shall have, as appropriate to the scope of work performed by the organization, demonstrated controls of, or procedures for

(a) design

(b) effective material control, including

(1) segregation of noncompatible materials

(2) segregation of nonconforming material

(3) product marking identification

(4) packaging

(5) finished product storage

(c) manufacturing processes

(d) procedures requiring special environmental conditions

(e) maintenance of equipment and tooling

(f) safe storage of nonactive equipment and tooling

(g) examination/inspection

(h) document control and storage

The Applicant's organization shall have, use, and maintain in good working order, the appropriate equipment, fixtures, machinery, and tooling that will ensure compliance of final product with this Standard.

The Applicant shall provide examples, appropriate to the scope of work to be certified, of product(s) for evaluation by the survey or audit team. Such product(s) may be either work in process or finished product as applicable. Such product(s) must be satisfactorily tested/inspected, and the results of such tests/inspections shall be reviewed and documented by the survey or audit team.

Families of similar products being of the same or similar design and function, as designated in the Applicant's scope of work, shall be audited based on tests and inspections of a representative sample of that family.

A corporate Certificate of Authorization does not authorize the use of the ASME Certification Mark. A Certificate of Authorization (in the case of a corporate Certificate of Authorization, a site Certificate) is the only authorization for use of the ASME Certification Mark. Therefore, the ASME Certification Mark will not be issued with a corporate Certificate of Authorization, but will be issued with each site Certificate (Certificate of Authorization).

CR-3.2.3 Personnel. The Applicant's organization shall include specific personnel designated for each of

¹ The applications and related forms and information may be obtained from ASME Conformity Assessment Department, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990 and www.asme.org.



the following functions as appropriate to the scope of work performed by the organization:

(a) *Design*. As an alternative or as an extension of in-house staff, this function may be performed by outside qualified engineering personnel.

(b) *Purchasing*

(c) *Contract Review*

(d) *Document Control*

(e) *Material Control*. Management of incoming, in process, finished, and discrepant materials must be provided for.

(f) *Manufacturing*

(g) *Quality Control*. Quality control personnel shall be independent of all other departments responsible for production or service processes.

(h) *Examination/Inspection*. An Applicant may perform either examination functions or examination and inspection functions. In any case, the individuals performing the final product assessment must be independent of all other departments responsible for production or service processes. Examination personnel may be responsible to production management, only if an independent inspection department is operating within the facility.

(i) *Maintenance of Equipment*

(12) **CR-3.2.4 Monitoring of Quality Control Measuring and Testing Devices**

(a) Procedures shall be in effect to ensure that tools, gages, instruments, and other measuring and testing devices used to verify compliance with the appropriate requirements are calibrated and properly adjusted at specific periods or use intervals to maintain accuracy within necessary limits. Periodic checks on these devices shall be performed to determine that calibration is maintained.

(b) Calibration shall be made against certified samples having known valid relationships and documented traceability to nationally recognized standards, where such standards exist. If no known nationally recognized standard exists, the basis for calibration shall be documented.

(c) Control measures shall include provisions for measuring and testing equipment identification and for determining calibration status by equipment marking or on records traceable to the equipment.

(12) **CR-3.2.5 Discrepancies With Measuring and Testing Devices**

(a) When discrepancies beyond an acceptable tolerance range for measuring and testing devices are found during calibration, appropriate corrective action shall be taken, and material shall be measured or tested since the previous calibration shall be reviewed to determine that all applicable requirements have been met.

(b) When periodic checks on equipment are performed to determine that calibration is maintained,

potential product or source material discrepancies need only be resolved to the previous check, provided

(1) the methods used and frequency of periodic checking are described in calibration procedures

(2) the calibration discrepancy was found by periodic check

CR-3.2.6 Internal Audits. Internal audits shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements: (12)

(a) Audits shall be performed at least annually in accordance with written procedures or checklists by personnel not having direct responsibility in the areas being audited.

(b) Audit results shall be documented by auditing personnel for review by management having responsibility in the area being audited.

(c) Procedures shall include provisions for documentation of corrective action taken in response to deficiencies.

Follow-up action, including re-audit of deficient areas where indicated, shall be taken to verify implementation of such corrective actions.

In addition to ASME audits of the applicant or Certificate Holder, a comprehensive system of planned and periodic internal audits shall be carried out to ensure ongoing compliance with all aspects of the QMS and to reaffirm the effectiveness of the program.

CR-3.2.7 Corrective Action. Measures shall be established to ensure that conditions not meeting quality requirements such as failures, malfunctions, deviations, defective material and equipment, non-conformances, and quality system deficiencies, are promptly identified and reported to appropriate levels of management. These measures shall also assure that the cause of conditions adverse to established quality levels be determined and corrected. (12)

The identification of significant or recurring conditions not meeting quality requirements, the cause of these conditions, and the corrective action taken shall be documented and reported to appropriate levels of management.

These requirements shall also extend to the performance of the approved supplier's corrective action measures.

CR-3.3 Issuance of ASME BPE Certificate

(a) The Certificate may be granted or withheld by ASME at its discretion. ASME BPE Certificates of Authorization are not transferable from one entity to another.

(b) Upon satisfactory completion of the survey and survey review, recommendation of the ASME BPE Certification Subcommittee, and payment of the proper administrative fee, ASME shall issue an ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization.



The 5-yr certificate is issued to an Applicant for a specific location(s) as defined in the application and accepted by ASME, and it shall describe the scope and limits of work for which the Applicant is certified.

(c) After initial certification, ASME shall institute a continuing audit program of the Certificate Holder's Quality Management System and compliance with this Standard.

(d) Each Certificate shall be signed by duly authorized ASME personnel.

(e) Should continued certification be sought, 6 mo prior to the date of expiration of any such Certificate, the Applicant shall apply for a renewal of certification.

(f) Renewal is based upon 5-yr intervals with a minimum of two audits during each 5-yr period.

(g) Failure to apply for renewal of the Certificate in time and with appropriate documentation may result in loss of certification until such time as all requirements for re-certification have been met.

(h) ASME reserves the right to withdraw or refuse to renew certification for cause.

CR-3.3.1 Changes of Applicant Information. ASME shall be informed in writing of any of the following changes:

- (a) change of company name
- (b) changes of the QMS Manual
- (c) change of location where activities addressed in the QMS Manual are performed

(d) change of the scope of activity performed by the Certificate Holder

The revised QMS Manual shall be submitted to ASME for acceptance. In evaluating the Manual revisions, an announced audit may be determined to be necessary. Should an audit be determined to be necessary the Certificate Holder will have the option of an early renewal survey in lieu of an announced audit.

CR-3.4 Denial or Loss of ASME BPE Certificate of Authorization

Upon notification of failure to provide satisfactory evidence of compliance with this Standard and the requirements for certification after a survey, investigation or audit, the Applicant or Certificate Holder shall have the right of appeal. A copy of the appeal procedures shall be provided to the Applicant or Certificate Holder upon notification of unsatisfactory evidence of compliance.

CR-4 REQUIREMENTS SUBJECT TO CHANGE

ASME may change requirements concerning the issuance and use of Certificates and use of the ASME Certification Mark as it deems appropriate. Such requirements shall become binding on the Certificate Holder upon notification by ASME.



(12)

Part MM

Metallic Materials

MM-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to identify metallic materials considered acceptable for use in hygienic service. It identifies material specifications, grades and alloys, matching filler metals, fabrication guidelines, and other attributes necessary for this service. It also specifies the data that must be submitted to the MM Subcommittee for any new or unlisted alloy that is proposed for inclusion into Part MM.

MM-2 ALLOY DESIGNATIONS

MM-2.1 General

This Part identifies for use those metallic materials of construction that have demonstrated the ability to meet welding and surface finish criteria as set forth in other parts of this Standard. It is the responsibility of the owner/user to ensure that any metallic materials selected for use from those listed in Tables MM-2.1-1 through MM-2.1-3 are appropriate for its intended application. The guidelines and criteria listed in this Part of the standard indicate a general acceptability for use and do not address the specifics of fabrication or requirements of any given service.

MM-3 USES OF SPECIFICATIONS

MM-3.1 General

The documents listed in MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, and MM-4.6 may contain references to codes, standards, or specifications not listed in this Part of this Standard. Such unlisted codes, standards, or specifications are to be used only in the context of the listed documents in which they are referenced. Where documents listed in MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, and MM-4.6 contain design rules that are in conflict with this Standard, the design rules of this Standard shall govern.

MM-3.2 Listed Specifications

Materials purchased to specifications listed in the appropriate sections of MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, and MM-4.6 may be used for applications governed by this Standard. Fittings must be purchased to the requirements of Part DT. Valves must meet the

requirements of SG-3.3.2.3. Materials used in applications governed by this Standard shall conform to a specification listed in the above paragraphs, except as provided in MM-3.3.

MM-3.3 Unlisted Specifications

Alloys in specifications not listed in MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, and MM-4.6 may be used for applications governed by this Standard provided they conform to a published specification covering composition, physical and mechanical properties, method and process of manufacture, heat treatment and quality control, and otherwise meet the chemical composition requirements of one of the specifications listed in MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, and MM-4.6. Alloys not listed in Tables MM-2.1-1 through MM-2.1-3 may be used for applications governed by this Standard provided the following requirements are met:

- (a) the applicable requirements of MM-8 are met
- (b) the specific written permission of the owner/user is obtained

MM-3.4 Unknown Materials

Materials of unknown origin or specification shall not be used in hygienic service.

MM-3.5 Reclaimed Materials

Reclaimed pipe/tube and other piping components may be used, provided they are properly identified as conforming to a published specification listed in MM-4.2, MM-4.3, MM-4.4, MM-4.5, or MM-4.6 or to a published specification not listed in those paragraphs and otherwise meeting the minimum requirements of MM-8. Sufficient cleaning and inspection shall be made to determine minimum wall thickness and freedom from imperfections that would be unacceptable in the intended service.

MM-3.6 Designation of Alloy and Fluid Service

The user is responsible for designating the specific alloy, from MM-2, to be used for each system having a product-contact or cleaning solution-contact surface. The user is also responsible for identifying the appropriate fluid service category for piping or tubing, in accordance with the definitions in the current edition of ASME B31.3, Process Piping Code.



Table MM-2.1-1 Wrought Stainless Steels: Nominal Compositions (wt. %)

(12)

UNS Number [Note (1)]	EN Designation	C	N	Cr	Ni	Mo	Cu
Common Austenitic Stainless Steels							
S30400	...	0.08	0.11	18.0–20.0	8.00–10.5	...	...
...	1.4301	0.07	0.11	17.5–19.5	8.0–10.5	...	...
S30403	...	0.03	0.11	18.0–20.0	8.00–12.0	...	...
...	1.4307	0.03	0.11	17.5–19.5	8.0–10.5	...	...
S31600	...	0.08	0.11	16.0–18.0	10.0–14.0	2.00–3.00	...
...	1.4401	0.07	0.11	16.5–18.5	10.0–13.0	2.0–2.5	...
S31603	...	0.03	0.11	16.0–18.0	10.0–14.0	2.00–3.00	...
...	1.4404	0.03	0.11	16.5–18.5	10.0–14.0	2.0–2.5	...
...	1.4435	0.03	0.11	17.0–19.0	12.5–15.0	2.5–3.0	...
S31703	...	0.03	0.11	18.0–20.0	11.0–15.0	3.00–4.00	...
...	1.4438	0.03	0.11	17.5–19.5	13.0–17.0	3.0–4.0	...
N08904	...	0.020	0.10	19.0–23.0	23.0–28.0	4.0–5.0	1.0–2.0
...	1.4539	0.20	0.15	19.0–21.0	24.0–26.0	4.0–5.0	1.20–2.00
Superaustenitic Stainless Steels							
N08367	...	0.03	0.18–0.25	20.0–22.0	23.5–25.5	6.00–7.00	0.75
S31254	...	0.02	0.18–0.22	19.5–20.5	17.5–18.5	6.00–6.50	0.50–1.00
...	1.4547	0.02	0.18–0.25	19.5–20.5	17.5–18.5	6.0–7.0	0.50–1.00
N08926	...	0.02	0.15–0.25	19.0–21.0	24.0–26.0	6.00–7.00	0.50–1.50
...	1.4547	0.02	0.18–0.25	19.5–20.5	17.5–18.5	6.0–7.0	0.5–1.0
Duplex Stainless Steels							
S32205	...	0.03	0.14–0.20	22.0–23.0	4.50–6.50	3.00–3.50	...
...	1.4462	0.03	0.10–0.22	21.0–23.0	4.5–6.5	2.5–3.5	...

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Maximum, unless range or minimum is indicated.
- (b) Values listed in this Table are primary elements only and are not complete chemical compositions as listed in specific product type material specifications. Alloy composition is typically at the low end of the ranges indicated above. Refer to appropriate product type material specification for complete material composition requirements.

NOTE:

- (1) For cross-referencing of the UNS numbers listed above to common alloy names, refer to SAE Metals and Alloys in the Unified Numbering System, latest edition.

MM-4 REFERENCED SPECIFICATIONS**MM-4.1 General**

Standards and specifications adopted by reference in this Standard are listed by application category in this Part. It is not considered practical to identify the specific edition of each standard and specification listed in the following listing; therefore, the most current edition is implied.

Material manufactured in accordance with earlier editions of the referenced standards and that in all other respects conforms to this Standard will be considered to be in conformance with this Standard.

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code (BPVC) has adopted many of the listed ASTM material specifications. Materials furnished to the latest edition of these ASME specifications are also considered to be in conformance with this Standard.

MM-4.2 Tubing/Piping

Tubing and piping manufactured in accordance with the following specifications are acceptable.

ASTM A213/A213M, Specification for Seamless Ferritic and Austenitic Alloy — Steel Boiler Superheater, and Heat-Exchanger Tubes

ASTM A249/A249M, Specification for Welded Austenitic Steel Boiler, Superheater, Heat-Exchanger, and Condenser Tubes

ASTM A269, Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

ASTM A270/A270M, Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic and Ferritic/Austenitic Stainless Steel Sanitary Tubing

ASTM A312/312M, Specification for Seamless, Welded, and Heavily Cold Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipes



(12) **Table MM-2.1-2 Wrought Nickel Alloys: Nominal Compositions (wt. %)**

UNS Designation [Note (1)]	EN Number	C	Cr	Ni	Mo	Cu	Other
N06625	...	0.10	20.0–23.0	58.0 min	8.00–10.0	...	Fe: 5.0 max., (Nb + Ta): 3.15–4.15
...	2.4856	0.03–0.10	20.0–23.0	58.0 min	8.0–10.0	0.5	Fe: 5.0 max., (Nb + Ta): 3.15–4.15, Ti 0.40 max.
N10276	...	0.01	14.5–16.5	Balance	15.0–17.0	...	W: 3.0–4.5
...	2.4819	0.01	14.5–16.5	Balance	15.0–17.0	0.5	W: 3.0–4.5 Co 2.5 max., Mn 1.0 max.
N06022	...	0.015	20.0–22.5	Balance	12.5–14.5	...	W: 2.5–3.5
...	2.4602	0.01	20.0–22.5	Balance	12.5–14.5	...	W: 2.5–3.5 Fe 2.0–6.0, Co 2.5 max.

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Maximum, unless range or minimum is indicated
 (b) Values listed in this Table are primary elements only and are not complete chemical compositions as listed in specific product type material specifications. Alloy composition is typically at the low end of the ranges indicated above. Refer to appropriate product type material specification for complete material composition requirements.
 (c) Alloys listed between horizontal lines are not equivalent, but comparable.

NOTE:

- (1) For cross-referencing of the UNS numbers listed above to common alloy names, refer to SAE Metals and Alloys in the Unified Numbering System, latest edition.

ASTM A511, Standard Specification for Seamless Stainless Steel Mechanical Tubing

ASTM A789/A789M, Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic/Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service

ASTM A790/A790M, Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Ferritic/Austenitic Stainless Pipe

ASTM B619 Specification for Welded Nickel and Nickel-Cobalt Alloy Pipe

ASTM B622, Standard Specification for Seamless Nickel and Nickel-Cobalt Alloy Pipe and Tube

ASTM B626, Specification for Welded Nickel and Nickel-Cobalt Alloy Tube

ASTM B675, Specification for UNS N08367 Welded Pipe

ASTM B676, Specification for UNS N08367 Welded Tube

ASTM B690, Specification for Iron-Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum Alloys (UNS N08366 and UNS N08367) Seamless Pipe and Tube

Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)

DIN 17744, Wrought nickel alloys with molybdenum and chromium — Chemical composition

DIN 17751, Tubes of wrought nickel alloys — Properties

Publisher: DIN Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V., Burggrafenstraße 6, 10787 Berlin, Germany

EN 10216-5, Seamless Steel Tubes for Pressure Purposes — Technical Delivery Conditions — Part 5: Stainless Steel Tubes

EN 10217-7, Welded Steel Tubes for Pressure Purposes — Technical Delivery Conditions — Part 7: Stainless Steel Tubes

EN 10312, Welded Stainless Steel Tubes for the Conveyance of Water and Other Aqueous Liquids — Technical Delivery Conditions

Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium

MM-4.3 Castings

Castings manufactured in accordance with the following specifications are acceptable.

ASTM A351/A351M, Specification for Castings, Austenitic, for Pressure-Containing Parts

ASTM A494/A494M, Standard Specification for Castings, Nickel and Nickel Alloy

ASTM A743/A743M, Specification for Castings, Iron-Chromium, Iron-Chromium-Nickel, Corrosion Resistant, for General Application



(12) **Table MM-2.1-3 Stainless Steel and Nickel Alloy Cast Designations**

			Approximate Wrought Equivalent	
UNS Designation	ACI Designation	EN Designation	UNS Designation	EN Designation
Austenitic Stainless Steels				
J92600	CF8	...	S30400	...
...	...	1.4308	...	1.4301
J92500	CF3	...	S30403	...
...	...	1.4309	...	1.4307
				1.4306
J92900	CF8M	...	S31600	...
...	...	1.4408	...	1.4401
J92800	CF3M	...	S31603	...
...	...	1.4409	...	1.4404
				1.4435
J92999	CG3M	...	S31703	...
...	...	1.4412	...	1.4438
Superaustenitic Stainless Steels				
J94651	CN3MN	...	N08367	...
J93254	CK3MCuN	...	S31254	...
...	...	1.4557	...	1.4547
Duplex Stainless Steels				
J92205	CD3MN	...	S32205	...
...	...	1.4470	...	1.4462
Nickel-Based Alloys				
N26625	CW6MC	...	N06625	...
...	...	...	...	2.4856
N30002	CW12MW	...	N10276	...
...	...	...	...	2.4819
N26455	CW2M	...	N10276	...
...	...	...	...	2.4610
...	...	...	...	2.4819
N30107	CW6M	...	N10276	...
...	...	...	...	2.4819
N26002	CX2MW	...	N26022	...
...	...	...	...	2.4602

GENERAL NOTE: Alloys listed between horizontal lines are not equivalent, but comparable.

ASTM A744/A744M, Standard Specification for Castings, Iron–Chromium–Nickel, Corrosion Resistant, for Severe Service

ASTM A890/A890M, Specification for Castings, Iron–Chromium–Nickel–Molybdenum Corrosion-Resistant, Duplex (Austenitic/Ferritic) for General Application

ASTM A995/A995M, Standard Specification for Castings, Austenitic-Ferritic (Duplex) Stainless Steel, for Pressure-Containing Parts

Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)

EN 10213, Steel Castings for Pressure Purposes

EN 10283, Corrosion Resistant Steel Castings

Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium

MM-4.4 Forgings

Forgings manufactured in accordance with the following specifications are acceptable.

ASTM A182/A182M, Specification for Forged or Rolled Alloy and Stainless Steel Pipe Flanges, Forged Fittings, and Valves and Parts for High-Temperature Service

ASTM B462, Specification for Forged or Rolled UNS N06030, UNS N06022, UNS N06035, UNS N06200, UNS N06059, UNS N06686, UNS N08020, UNS N08024, UNS N08026, UNS N08367, UNS N10276, UNS N10665, UNS N10675, UNS N10629, UNS N08031, UNS N06045, UNS N06025, and UNS R20033 Alloy Pipe Flanges, Forged Fittings, and Valves and Parts for Corrosive High-Temperature Service

ASTM B564, Specification for Nickel Alloy Forgings

Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)

EN 10222-5, Steel Forgings for Pressure Purposes — Part 5: Martensitic, Austenitic, and Austenitic-Ferritic Stainless Steels

EN 10250-4, Open Die Steel Forgings for General Engineering Purposes — Part 4: Stainless Steels

Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium

MM-4.5 Plate, Sheet, and Strip

Plate, sheet, and strip manufactured in accordance with the following specifications are acceptable.

ASTM A240/A240M, Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications

ASTM A666, Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar

ASTM B443, Specification for Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Columbium Alloy (UNS N06625) and Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Silicon Alloy (UNS N06219) Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM B575, Specification for Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum, Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Copper, Low-Carbon



Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Tantalum, and Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Tungsten Alloy Plate, Sheet, and Strip

ASTM B688, Specification for Chromium-Nickel-Molybdenum-Iron (UNS N08366 and UNS N08367) Plate, Sheet, and Strip

Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)

DIN 17744, Wrought nickel alloys with molybdenum and chromium — Chemical composition

DIN 17750, Strip and sheet of nickel and wrought nickel alloys — Properties

Publisher: DIN Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V., Burggrafenstraße 6, 10787 Berlin, Germany

EN 10028-1, Flat Products Made of Steels for Pressure Purposes — Part 1 — General Requirements

EN 10028-7, Flat Products Made of Steels for Pressure Purposes — Part 7: Stainless Steels

EN 10088-2, Stainless Steels — Part 2: Technical Delivery Conditions for Sheet/Plate and Strip of Corrosion Resisting Steels for General Purposes

EN 10095, Heat resistant steels and nickel alloys

Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium

MM-4.6 Hollow Products, Rod, and Bar Stock

Hollow products, rod, and bar stock manufactured in accordance with the following specifications are acceptable.

ASTM A276, Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes

ASTM A479/A479M, Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes for Use in Boilers and Other Pressure Vessels

ASTM B574, Specification for Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum, Low-Carbon Nickel-Molybdenum-Chromium-Tantalum, Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Copper, and Low-Carbon Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum-Tungsten Alloy Rod

ASTM B691, Specification for Iron-Nickel-Chromium-Molybdenum Alloys (UNS N08366 and UNS N08367) Rod, Bar, and Wire

Publisher: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International), 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959 (www.astm.org)

DIN 17744, Wrought nickel alloys with molybdenum and chromium — Chemical composition

DIN 17752, Wrought nickel and nickel alloy rods and bars — Requirements and testing

Publisher: DIN Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V., Burggrafenstraße 6, 10787 Berlin, Germany

EN 10095, Heat resistant steels and nickel alloys

EN 10263-1, Steel Rod, Bars and Wire for Cold Heading and Cold Extrusion — Part 1: General Technical Delivery Conditions

EN 10263-5, Steel Rod, Bars and Wire for Cold Heading and Cold Extrusion — Part 5: Technical Delivery Conditions for Stainless Steels

EN 10272, Stainless Steel Bars for Pressure Purposes

EN 10088-3, Stainless Steels — Part 3: Technical Delivery Conditions for Semi-Finished Products, Bars, Rods, Wire, Sections and Bright Products of Corrosion Resisting Steels for General Purposes

Publisher: European Committee for Standardization (CEN), Avenue Marnix 17, B-1000 Brussels, Belgium

For austenitic stainless steels, hollow products and bar stock are acceptable for nozzles and clamping mechanisms.

MM-5 FABRICATION

MM-5.1 General

This Part provides fabrication requirements and guidelines for metallic components, equipment, and distribution systems fabricated from the stainless steel grades and nickel alloys listed in Tables MM-2.1-1 through MM-2.1-3. Fabrication with metallic materials other than those listed in this Part is permitted with the owner's written approval (see MM-3.3). Such fabrication shall be performed in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

MM-5.1.1 Austenitic Stainless Steel Weld Ends.

Weld ends that are to be autogenously welded shall have a sulfur content between 0.005 wt. % and 0.017 wt. %. This requirement applies to the common austenitic stainless steels listed in Table MM-2.1-1 with the exception of UNS S31703, UNS N08904, and their comparable alloys. For fittings and process components employing welds, this requirement does not apply to welds made in the construction of the fitting or component.

MM-5.1.2 Superaustenitic and Duplex Stainless Steels.

If a filler metal or consumable insert is used during fitting and component fabrication, it must be in accordance with the required filler metals or consumable inserts listed in Table MM-5.1.2-1 or Table MM-5.1.2-2, respectively. The fabricator must also supply proof of filler metal or consumable insert compliance as part of the documentation.

MM-5.1.3 Castings. When cast alloys discussed in this section solidify, microsegregation of chromium and molybdenum occurs. Segregation reduces corrosion resistance and is corrected in castings by a full solution anneal as specified by the material specification or as



Table MM-5.1.2-1 Filler Metals

Base Metal Alloy [Note (1)]		Filler Metal									
UNS Designation	EN Designation	SMAW			GTAW/GMAW/SAW/PAW						
		AWS Classification	SFA Specification	UNS Designation	ISO 14343-A Designation	EN Designation	AWS Classification	SFA Specification	UNS Designation	ISO 14343-A Designation	EN Designation
Austenitic Stainless Steels											
S30400	...	E308-15 E308-16 E308-17	5.4	W30810 W30810 W30810	...	...	ER308 ER308L ER308Si ER308LSi	5.9	S30880 S30883 S30881 S30888	...	...
...	1.4301	...	...	...	19 9 L 19 9 Nb	1.4316 1.4551	...	...	...	19 9 L Si 19 9 Nb Si	1.4316 1.4551
S30403	...	E308L-15 E308L-16 E308L-17	5.4	W30813 W30813 W30813	...	...	ER308L ER308LSi	5.9	S30883 S30888	...	...
...	1.4307	...	...	...	19 9 L 19 9 Nb	1.4316 1.4551	...	...	...	19 9 L Si 19 9 Nb Si	1.4316 1.4551
...	1.4306	...	...	...	19 9 Nb	1.4551	...	...	...	19 9 Nb Si	1.4551
S31600	...	E316-15 E316-16 E316-17	5.4	W31610 W31610 W31610	...	...	ER316L ER316LSi	5.9	S31683 S31688	...	...
...	1.4401	...	...	...	19 12 3 L 19 12 3 Nb 20 25 5 Cu N L	1.4430 1.4576 1.4519	...	...	...	19 12 3 L Si 19 12 3 Nb Si 20 25 5 Cu L	1.4430 1.4576 1.4519
S31603	...	E316L-15 E316L-16 E316L-17	5.4	W31613 W31613 W31613	...	...	ER316L ER316LSi	5.9	S31683 S31688	...	...
...	1.4404	...	...	...	19 12 3 L 19 12 3 Nb	1.4430 1.4576	...	...	...	19 12 3 L Si 19 12 3 Nb Si 20 25 5 Cu L	1.4430 1.4576 1.4519
...	1.4435	...	...	...	19 12 3 L 19 12 3 Nb 18 16 5 N L 20 16 3 Mn N L 20 25 5 Cu N L	1.4430 1.4576 1.4440 1.4455 1.4519	...	...	...	19 12 3 L Si 19 12 3 Nb Si 18 16 5 N L 20 16 3 Mn L 20 25 5 Cu L	1.4430 1.4576 1.4440 1.4455 1.4519
S31703	...	E317L-15 E317L-16 E317L-17	5.4	W31713 W31713 W31713	...	...	ER317L	5.9	S31783	...	...
...	1.4438	...	...	...	18 16 5 N L 20 25 5 Cu N L	1.4440 1.4519	...	...	...	18 16 5 N L 20 25 5 Cu L	1.4440 1.4519
N08904	...	E385-15 E385-16 E385-17	5.4	W88904	...	...	ER385	5.9	...	...	...
...	1.4539	...	...	...	20 25 5 Cu N L Ni 6625 [Note (2)]	1.4519 2.4621	...	...	...	20 25 5 Cu N L Ni 6625 [Note (3)]	1.4519 2.4831

(12)



(12)

Table MM-5.1.2-1 Filler Metals (Cont'd)

Base Metal Alloy [Note (1)]		Filler Metal									
UNS Designation	EN Designation	SMAW			GTAW/GMAW/SAW/PAW						
		AWS Classification	SFA Specification	UNS Designation	ISO 14172 Designation	EN Designation	AWS Classification	SFA Specification	UNS Designation	ISO 18274 Designation	EN Designation
Superaustenitic Stainless Steels											
S31254	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
...	1.4547	...	...	...	Ni 6059 Ni 6625	2.4609 2.4621	...	...	...	Ni 6082 Ni 6625	2.4806 2.4831
N08367	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
N08926	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
...	1.4529	...	...	...	Ni 6059 Ni 6625	2.4609 2.4621	...	...	...	Ni 6059 Ni 6625	2.4607 2.4831
Duplex Stainless Steels [Note (4)]											
S32205	...	E2209 E2553 E2593 E2594 E2595	5.4	W39209 W39553 W39593 W39594 W39595	...	...	ER2209 ER2553 ER2594	5.9	S39209 S39553 S32750	...	...
...	1.4462	...	...	...	22 9 3 N L [Note (5)]	1.4462	...	...	...	22 9 3 N L [Note (5)]	1.4462 [Note (6)]
Nickel Alloys											
N10276	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
...	2.4819	...	...	...	Ni 6059	2.4609	...	...	...	Ni 6059	2.4607
N06022	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
...	2.4602	...	...	...	Ni 6059	2.4609	...	...	...	Ni 6059	2.4607
N06625	...	ENiCrMo-3 ENiCrMo-4 ENiCrMo-10	5.11	W86112 W80276 W86022	...	...	ERNiCrMo-3 ERNiCrMo-4 ERNiCrMo-10	5.14	N06625 N10276 N06022	...	...
...	2.4856	...	...	...	Ni 6625	2.4621	...	...	...	Ni 6625	2.4831

GENERAL NOTE: The use of AWS/UNS filler metal is recommended for welding of UNS base metal; the use of EN filler metal is recommended for welding of EN base metal.

NOTES:

- (1) Alloys listed between horizontal lines are not equivalent, but comparable.
- (2) Filler metal designation as per ISO 14172.
- (3) Filler metal designation as per ISO 18274.
- (4) Any super duplex stainless steel filler metal can be used to weld any duplex stainless steel.
- (5) Filler metal designation as per ISO 14343-A.
- (6) Addition of small amounts of nitrogen to shielding and backing gas recommended.



(12) **Table MM-5.1.2-2 Consumable Inserts for Superaustenitic and Duplex Stainless Steels**

Base Metal Alloy			Insert Alloy [Note (1)]	
UNS Designation	ACI Designation	EN Designation	UNS Designation	EN Designation
Superaustenitic Stainless Steels				
N08367	...	...	N06625 N06022 N10276	...
N08926	...	...	N06625 N06022 N10276	...
...	...	1.4529	...	2.4856 2.4602 2.4819
S31254	...	...	N06625 N06022 N10276	...
...	...	1.4547	...	2.4856 2.4602 2.4819
J94651	CN3MN	...	N06625 N06022 N10276	...
J93254	CK3MCuN	...	N06625 N06022 N10276	...
...	...	1.4557	...	2.4856 2.4602 2.4819
Duplex Stainless Steels				
S32205	...	...	N06022 N10276	...
...	...	1.4462	...	2.4602 2.4819
J92205	CD3MN	...	N06022 N10276	...
...	...	1.4470	...	2.4602 2.4819

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) The use of UNS consumable inserts is recommended for welding of UNS base metal; the use of EN consumable inserts is recommended for welding of EN base metal.
- (b) Alloys listed between horizontal lines are not equivalent, but comparable.

NOTE:

- (1) See MM-4 for listed rod, bar, or plate specifications from which these consumable inserts may be manufactured.

Table MM-5.1.4-1 Predicted Ferrite Number (FN) Ranges for Various 316 Product Forms and Welds

Product Form	Expected FN
Wrought product forms with sulfur levels less than 0.005%	FN = 0.5 to 4
Wrought product forms with a sulfur range of 0.005% to 0.017%	FN = 1.0 to 6
GMAW/GTAW using ER316L [Note (1)]	FN = 4 to 12 [Note (2)]
SMAW using ER316L [Notes (3), (4)]	FN = 4 to 10 [Note (5)]
CF8M and CF3M castings	FN = 5 to 15

GENERAL NOTE: FN ranges determined from D. J. Kotecki and T. A. Siewart, "WRC-1992 Constitution Diagram for Stainless Steel Weld Metals: A Modification of the WRC-1988 Diagram," *Welding Journal* 71(5), p. 171-s, 1992.

NOTES:

- (1) SFA 5.9/5.9M, Specification for Bare Stainless Steel Welding Electrodes and Rods.
- (2) Nitrogen pickup or weld metal dilution could result in a 3 FN to 4 FN loss in the as deposited weld metal.
- (3) SFA 5.4/5.4M, Specification for Stainless Steel Electrodes for Shielded Metal Arc Welding.
- (4) Electrodes with a restricted FN usually require a special order, with the exception of 2 FN maximum product for cryogenic service temperatures.
- (5) FN in the as-deposited weld is influenced by welding technique and is lowered by nitrogen pickup or weld metal dilution.

recommended by the material manufacturer. All cast materials shall be supplied in the solution annealed condition, and the solution anneal procedure shall meet the time and temperature requirements of the product specification. Any weld repair by the casting manufacturer shall meet the requirements of the specification or shall be as specified by the owner.

MM-5.1.4 Ferrite. If specific ferrite levels in 316 and other common austenitic stainless steel equipment are deemed necessary to maintain certain properties, the owner/user shall specify required ferrite ranges separately for base metal, for welds in the solution annealed condition, and for welds left in the as-welded condition. As a general rule, material with high ratios of Ni to Cr show lower ferrite levels in the base metal and subsequent to welding. See Table MM-5.1.4-1 for predicted ferrite number ranges for various 316 stainless steel product forms. These are not acceptance criteria. The listed ferrite numbers refer to as-solidified 316 stainless steels and therefore indicate predicted ferrite levels of the respective autogenous welds, welds with filler metal, or castings. Additional information regarding ferrite can be found in Nonmandatory Appendix G.

MM-5.1.5 Special Materials. When specified by the owner/user, other metals, including coatings such as



platinum, gold, and others, may be used for product contact surfaces in process instrumentation.

MM-5.2 Filler Metals and Consumable Inserts

Filler material shall conform to a published specification. Table MM-5.1.2-1 lists the recommended filler metals for welding the listed austenitic, superaustenitic, and duplex stainless steels and nickel alloys.

Table MM-5.1.2-2 lists the recommended materials from which inserts may be made for use in welding the listed superaustenitic and duplex stainless steels.

Filler materials other than those listed in Tables MM-5.1.2-1 and MM-5.1.2-2 may be used with the prior approval of the owner/user provided that:

- (a) they produce weld metal having corrosion resistance equal to or greater than that of the base metal
- (b) the welding procedure is qualified in accordance with Section IX of the ASME BPVC

Proprietary filler materials may be used with the prior agreement of the owner/user, provided all procedure and performance qualification requirements of Part MJ of this Standard and Section IX of the ASME BPVC are met.

MM-5.2.1 Austenitic Stainless Steels. Only the low-carbon grades of stainless steel filler metals may be used to weld these alloys.

MM-5.2.2 Superaustenitic Stainless Steels. The superaustenitic stainless steels in Tables MM-2.1-1 and MM-2.1-3 are prone to the precipitation of undesirable secondary intermetallic phases such as sigma and chi. This precipitation typically occurs in the range of 1,000°F (540°C) to 1,900°F (1,040°C). This is a concern during welding and other thermomechanical processes, including solution annealing. It is, therefore, desirable to keep exposure time within this temperature range to a minimum.

Owners/users are cautioned that any service temperature, heat treatment, or welding procedure that exposes this material to these temperatures should be minimized. The material manufacturer should be consulted for specific instructions regarding heat treatment.

MM-5.2.3 Consumable Inserts for Orbital Welding of Listed Alloys. Table MM-5.1.2-2 lists the most common alloys from which consumable inserts are machined for use in welding specific superaustenitic and duplex stainless steels. Other nickel-chromium-molybdenum inserts may be used as long as the corrosion resistance of the final weldment meets or exceeds that of the base metal.

MM-5.2.4 Duplex Stainless Steels. The corrosion resistance and mechanical properties of duplex stainless steels are based on having roughly equal amounts of ferrite and austenite in the microstructure at room temperature.

The listed duplex stainless steel, UNS S32205, may be prone to the precipitation of undesirable secondary intermetallic phases such as sigma and chi. This precipitation occurs continually in the range of 1,200°F (650°C) to 1,830°F (1,000°C). Owner/users are cautioned that any service temperature, heat treatment, or welding procedure that exposes this material to these temperatures should be minimized. The material manufacturer should be consulted for specific instructions regarding heat treatment.

MM-5.3 Field Bending of Tubing

Field bending of tubing is permitted for diameters up to and including ½ in. (12.7 mm). Post-bending heat treatment is not required. Bending of tubing of any diameter requires prior written permission from the owner/user. Consult the material manufacturer for recommended minimum bend radii.

MM-5.4 Heat Treatment

Heat treatment of process components made from the common austenitic stainless steels in Table MM-2.1-1 is not addressed by this Standard. For other alloys and/or fabrication processes, components may require heat treatment. The material manufacturer should be consulted.

MM-6 MECHANICAL PROPERTIES

MM-6.1 General

The specific service environment for which the alloys in Tables MM-2.1-1 through MM-2.1-3 may be used is not within the scope of this Standard. The possibility of material deterioration in service should be considered by the owner/user. Carbide phase degradation of corrosion resistance, susceptibility to intergranular corrosion of austenitic materials, or grain boundary attack of nickel-based alloys are among those items requiring attention.

MM-6.2 Tubing/Piping

All tube or pipe used for product contact surfaces, cleaning solution contact surfaces, and nonproduct contact surfaces shall meet the mechanical property requirements of the specification to which they are manufactured.

MM-6.3 Fittings and Welded Components

Refer to DT-2 for strength requirements for fittings and valves.

MTRs for fittings are not required to list mechanical properties; however, if they do, they must comply with the specifications for the raw materials from which the fittings were fabricated. It should be understood that the mechanical properties for worked products, such as



fittings, can be expected to deviate from that of the original heat, or from the original MTR of the material.

MM-6.4 Toughness

Some of the materials listed in Tables MM-2.1-1 through MM-2.1-3 undergo a decrease in toughness when used at low temperatures, to the extent that other applicable Codes may require impact tests for applications even at temperatures higher than +20°F (−6.67°C). It is the responsibility of the owner/user to ensure that such testing is performed and that the requirements of all applicable codes are met.

MM-6.5 Testing

Refer to DT-6 for the testing requirements for fittings and SG-3.3.2.3 for the testing requirements for valves.

MM-7 CORROSION RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS

MM-7.1 General

Resistance to corrosion is an essential characteristic of the materials used to fabricate the systems governed by this Standard. Corrosion testing is recommended whenever specific production performance characteristics must be determined. The owner/user shall have the final responsibility for proper material selection.

MM-7.2 Corrosion Testing

Corrosion testing may be performed for the following reasons:

- (a) to compare a number of alloys in a specific standard environment, or
- (b) to determine the compatibility of an alloy in a specific user defined environment

Once a particular alloy has been selected for an application, more extensive testing may be appropriate. This testing may involve the evaluation of any one of a number of process variables on material performance. These

variables include, but may not be limited to, upset temperature conditions, varying concentrations of the corrosive agent or condition, cleaning chemical type and concentration, various surface finishes, welding process, and filler metal alloy. It may be appropriate to use electrochemical test methods or a standard immersion test method to evaluate the effect of the various parameters. Standard ASTM corrosion tests commonly used are discussed in Nonmandatory Appendix F, Corrosion Testing.

MM-8 UNLISTED ALLOYS

MM-8.1 General

Unlisted alloys may be submitted for consideration for inclusion into Table MM-2.1-1, Table MM-2.1-2, or Table MM-2.1-3 of this Part of the Standard when the following information is submitted to and found acceptable by the MM Subcommittee:

- (a) an industry-recognized specification or standard including tensile strength properties.
- (b) certification that fittings and fabricated components meet the pressure ratings of Table DT-2-1 and valves meet the pressure rating requirements of DT-2.
- (c) data showing that the corrosion resistance of the alloy, as measured by the pitting resistance equivalent (PRE) number using the applicable equation on a typical composition, meets or exceeds that of 316L stainless steel (UNS S31603). PRE number listings can be found in Nonmandatory Appendix F, Corrosion Testing.
- (d) evidence that the material can be mechanically polished, electropolished, and/or passivated to meet the applicable requirements of Part SF.
- (e) a recommended welding process(es) and filler metal(s), evidence showing that the combination of base metal, filler metal(s), and recommended welding process(es) meets the requirements of MM-6, MM-7, Part SF, and Part MJ. Special restrictions or instructions shall be noted.



(12)

Part PI

Process Instrumentation

PI-1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this Part is to provide requirements for process instrumentation. This Part defines the minimum requirements for the application of process instrumentation in hygienic systems.

PI-2 PROCESS INSTRUMENTATION GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Process instrumentation includes primary elements, transmitters, analyzers, controllers, recorders, transducers, final control elements, signal converting or conditioning devices, computing devices, and electrical devices such as annunciators, switches, and push-buttons. The term does not apply to parts (receiver bellows or a resistor) that are internal components of an instrument.

PI-2.1 General Considerations

All process instrumentation should be installed per the manufacturers' instructions for proper operation. Indicating devices shall be oriented and located such that they can be easily viewed for maintenance and operation purposes. Instruments shall be located and oriented so connections can be easily made and ample room exists for removal, service, and calibration.

Instruments, connecting tubing, and systems shall be supported utilizing additional brackets as necessary, in such a manner that undue stress is not imposed upon the instrument and to allow for ease of removal without disturbing the connected components.

Remote-mounted devices (transmitters, etc.) shall be mounted with appropriate supports to a permanent structure. Ladders, handrails, guardrails, etc. shall not be acceptable mounting supports. If necessary, dedicated instrument supports shall be provided.

All instrumentation shall be located and installed in such a way as to ensure that the instrument will operate in the manner intended by the instrument manufacturer. Adequate maintenance access shall be provided.

PI-2.1.1 Additional Considerations

(a) Liquid-filled elements in measuring devices should not contain materials that are harmful to the product.

(b) Gage siphons (pigtailed) should not be used. The number of isolation valves should be minimized.

(c) Where required for proper operation, all instruments, valves, and in-line devices shall be permanently marked for proper installation (flow direction or orientation).

(d) Measurement elements shall be designed in a way that a failure will not cause contamination hazards to the process and environment.

(e) The internal volume of the instrument's sensing element should be minimized.

(f) Instruments should have integral hygienic fittings. Threaded ferrules are not acceptable to convert standard instrumentation to hygienic standards.

PI-2.1.2 Exterior Design. Care should be given to material selection to be compatible with all intended uses to include expected facility / facilities general cleaning procedures. Sensors and transmitters shall be housed in an enclosure with a suitable rating as agreed upon by the owner/user and shall comply with Part SD.

PI-2.2 Instrumentation Categories

Process instrumentation may be broadly categorized by process installation type as in-line, insertion, at-line, and off-line devices. Process instruments within these categories share some basic installation recommendations for hygienic and in-process performance.

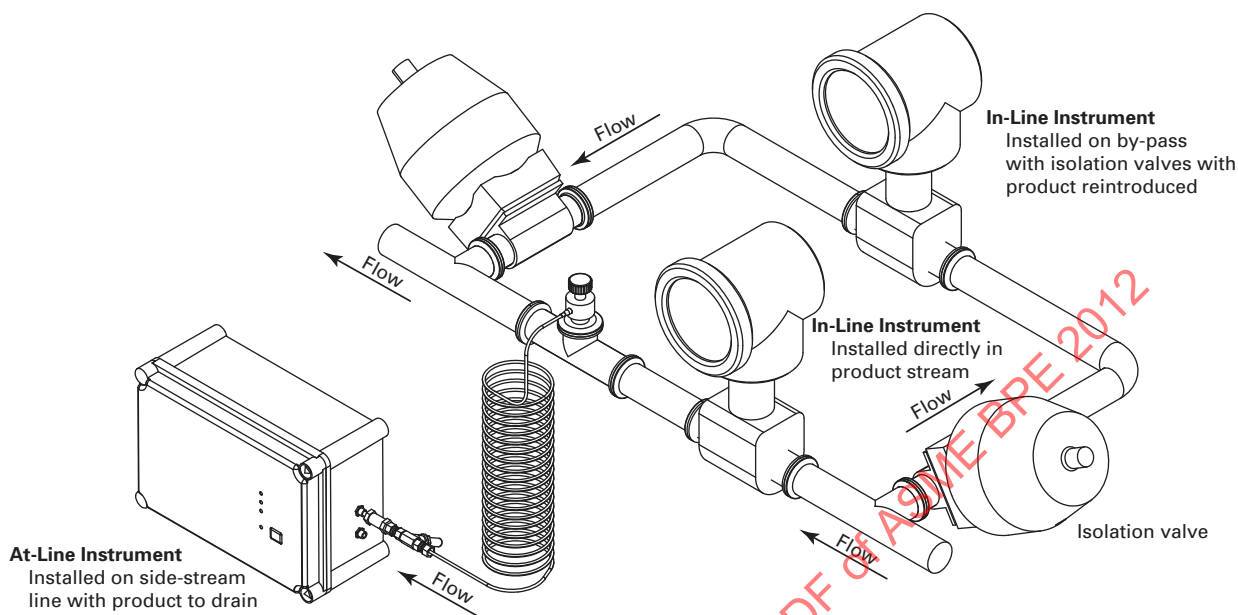
PI-2.2.1 In-Line Devices. In-line process instruments are self-contained devices installed directly into the process tubing system similar to a standard fitting. Basic installation requirements for hygienic operation as found in Part SD pertain to in-line process instrumentation. In-line devices may be installed directly in the product stream or in a by-pass line to facilitate periodic services (see Fig. PI-2.2.1-1). Device-specific recommendations are defined later in this Part.

PI-2.2.2 Insertion Devices. Insertion devices are instruments that are inserted directly into the process tubing system or process vessel to measure a parameter. Insertion devices generally require proper immersion into the process media for optimal performance. Installation of insertion devices must balance performance requirements and hygienic operation. Refer to later sections of this Part and/or the manufacturer's recommended guidelines for specific recommendations (see Fig. PI-2.2.2-1).

PI-2.2.3 At-Line Devices. At-line devices are instruments that measure various parameters by the means



Fig. PI-2.2.1-1 In-Line and At-Line Instrument Installation Examples



of a side-stream sampling loop, which are generally not reintroduced back into the process. Connection of the sampling stream shall be compliant with Part SD and designed to ensure continuous sampling flow to maintain hygienic operation for optimal measurement (see Fig. PI-2.2.1-1).

PI-2.2.4 Off-Line Devices. Off-line devices are instruments located away from the main process and are not covered in this Part.

PI-3 INSTRUMENT RECEIVING, HANDLING, AND STORAGE

PI-3.1 Introduction

Material compatibility and environmental storage conditions shall be considered when receiving, handling, and storing process instrumentation. All instruments shall have markings such as labels, tags, barcodes, or radio-frequency identification (RFID) to ease identification.

PI-3.2 Instrument Receiving

The instrument(s) shall be identified by part/model numbers.

PI-3.2.1 Original Packaging. The integrity of the original packaging of any component, with cleaning certifications such as passivated, cleaned for oxygen service, or hydrocarbon free, shall be maintained during inspection and storage.

PI-3.3 Instrument Handling: Protection of Process Connections and Surface Finish

Care shall be taken to protect the process connection(s) and surface finish of the instrument during receiving, handling, calibration, and storage.

PI-3.4 Instrument Storage

PI-3.4.1 Special Considerations. Special consideration for storage shall be made for certain instrumentation, such as analytical instruments, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

PI-3.4.2 Instrument Shelf Life and Environmental Requirements. Instruments with limited shelf lives or environmental requirements (temperature, humidity, etc.) shall be identified.

Additional information regarding instrument receiving, handling, and storage is contained in Nonmandatory Appendix Q.

PI-4 FLOWMETERS

PI-4.1 Coriolis Flowmeter

PI-4.1.1 General Considerations. This section provides the requirements for installation and operation of Coriolis flowmeters specific to bioprocessing and pharmaceutical industries as well as other applications with hygienic requirements.

The design, construction, and fabrication of Coriolis flowmeters are governed by other parts of this Standard. PI-4.1.2 and PI-4.1.3 may be used as a general reference.

Fig. PI-2.2.2-1 Accepted Insertion Device Installation Examples

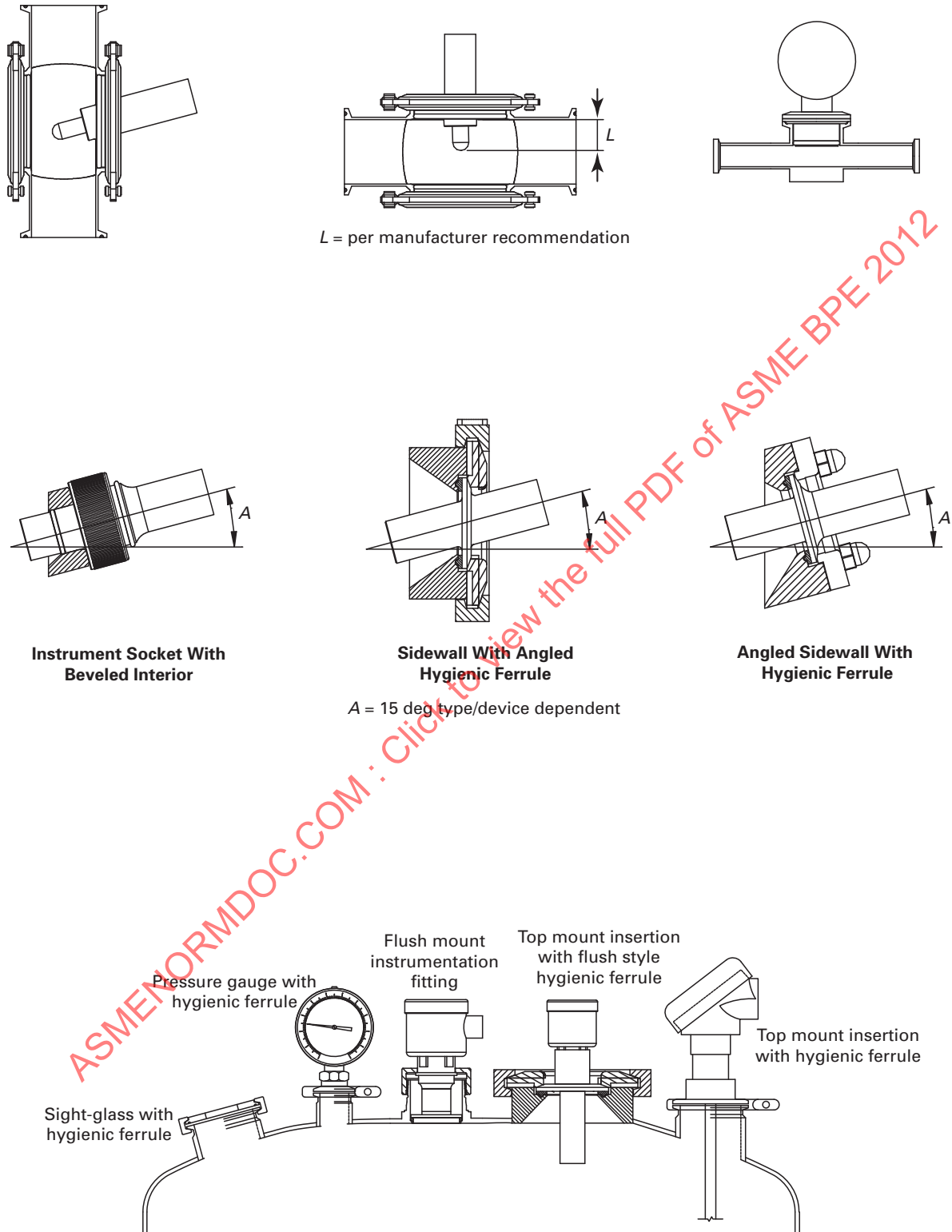
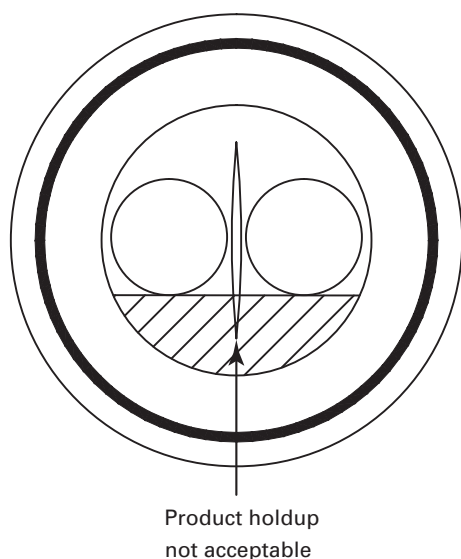


Fig. PI-4.1.3.2-1 Manifold or Flow Splitter for Dual Tube Construction Flowmeters and Potential for Product Holdup



PI-4.1.2 Essential Components. Improper design and/or installation of a flowmeter can affect the drainability and cleanability of the system to which it is attached. Three components of Coriolis flow meters affect drainability and cleanability: the flow tube(s), the manifold or flow splitter, and the process connections in combination with the installation angle.

The Coriolis flowmeter shall meet the product contact surface requirements as specified in Part SF for all the process wetted components including flow tube(s), manifold/flow splitter, and process connection.

PI-4.1.3 Components

PI-4.1.3.1 Flow Tube(s). Coriolis flowmeters are either of single tube or dual tube construction. The tube(s) can be either straight or bent. The geometry of tube bends shall be considered when assessing drainability and determining installation requirements.

PI-4.1.3.2 Manifold or Flow Splitter. The manifolds or flow splitters for dual tube construction flowmeters are the interface between the sensor process connections and the sensor measuring tubes and they can create product hold up as shown in Fig. PI-4.1.3.2-1. The geometry of manifolds or flow splitters shall be considered when assessing drainability and determining installation requirements.

PI-4.1.3.3 Process Connections. The interface between the process connections and the sensor tube(s) may result in product holdup, even with single straight tube flowmeters. This is shown for concentrically reducing process connections in Fig. PI-4.1.3.3-1. Eccentrically reducing process connections may allow a single tube

construction flowmeter, with a tube inside diameter differing from the process line inside diameter, to be mounted in horizontal piping. The geometry of process connections, including reductions in flow area, shall be considered when assessing drainability and determining installation requirements. The Coriolis flowmeter shall use acceptable hygienic connections and fittings as per Part SG.

PI-4.1.4 Installation. The manufacturer shall provide the owner/user with the mounting and cleanability requirements necessary to maintain, operate, and properly drain the flow meter.

PI-4.1.4.1 Drainability. The flow tube or tubes, the manifold or flow splitter, and the process connections shall be considered a system. If a design can be supplied with different types of process connections, then the orientation shall consider the worst case for drainability, or each type of process connection shall be considered individually.

Coriolis flowmeters should be drainable with gravity. Coriolis flowmeters that are not drainable with gravity shall be indicated by the manufacturer and should be of single tube or other system design to minimize product hold-up. An additional motive force (e.g., air purge) may be required to ensure complete drainability.

Drainability requirements should be determined by process requirement and shall be defined by the owner/user.

PI-4.1.4.2 Cleanability. Coriolis flowmeters using a dual tube construction with small diameter tubes have a potential for plugging and can adversely affect the cleanability of the flow meter. It is the responsibility of the owner/user to assess the risk of plugging and the effectiveness of cleaning processes, based on their process and the information provided by the manufacturer.

Requirements relating to cleanability, sterility, and drainability are addressed in Part SD.

PI-4.1.4.3 Mounting Location. It is recommended to install the Coriolis flowmeter vertically with the process fluid flowing upward through the flowmeter (refer to Fig. PI-4.1.4.3-1). If the Coriolis flowmeter is to be installed horizontally, then drainability shall be considered (e.g., by gravity or air purge).

PI-4.1.4.4 Orientation. The Coriolis flowmeter will operate in any orientation as long as the flow tube(s) remain full of process fluid.

For Coriolis flowmeters that are drainable with gravity, the manufacturer shall provide the owner/user with information on how the flowmeter is to be installed to ensure effective drainability.

For flowmeters that are mounted in-plane with the process line, the information should include the minimum angle of inclination, α ; and how to orient the flowmeter in that plane (refer to Fig. PI-4.1.4.4-1 for definition

Fig. PI-4.1.3.3-1 Concentrically Reducing Process Connection

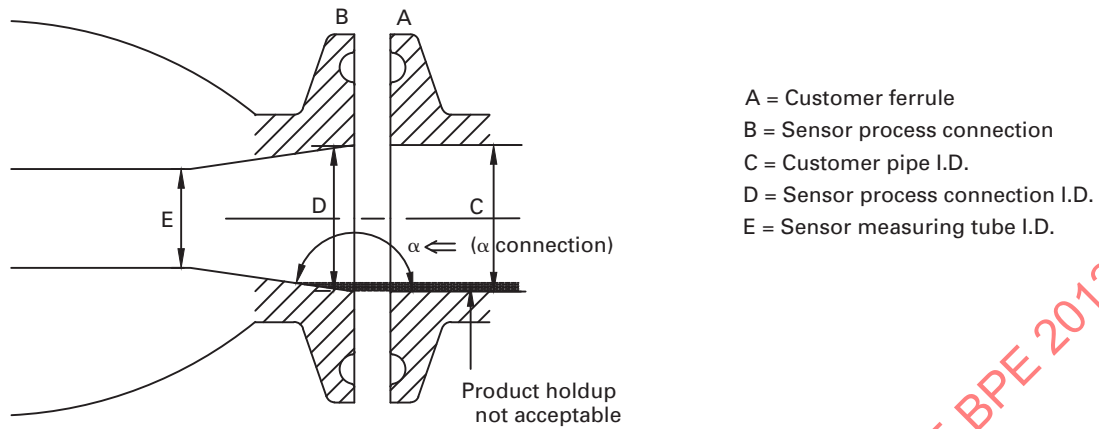


Fig. PI-4.1.4.3-1 Vertical Installation

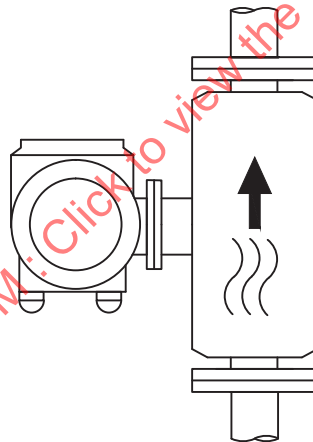
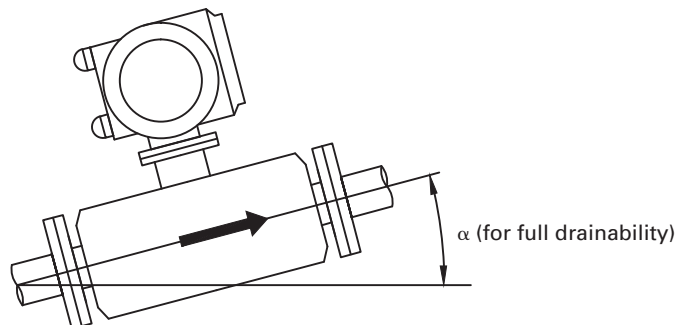


Fig. PI-4.1.4.4-1 Minimum Angle of Inclination, α



of angle of inclination, α). It is recommended the information be provided in pictorial format.

Manufacturer's recommendation for installation and support of Coriolis flowmeters should be followed.

PI-4.1.4.5 Special Considerations for Passivation of Coriolis Flowmeters. Coriolis flowmeter materials of construction vary significantly between manufacturers. Certain passivation procedures may damage Coriolis flowmeter materials. If the Coriolis flowmeter is to be passivated, the complete passivation procedure should be provided by the owner/user to the manufacturer for review and approval.

If the owner/user and the manufacturer cannot agree on an acceptable passivation procedure, the owner/user shall remove the flowmeter during passivation.

PI-4.1.5 Performance. The Coriolis flowmeter performance varies depending on the parameter to which it applies (e.g., mass, volume, density, temperature, or viscosity).

Guidelines and common terminology for selection, installation, calibration, and operation of Coriolis flowmeters are identified in ASME MFC-11 and ISO 10790.

PI-4.1.5.1 Accuracy. For Coriolis flowmeters, the accuracy specification usually includes the combined effects of linearity, repeatability, hysteresis, and zero stability.

PI-4.1.5.2 Process Influences. Coriolis flowmeters deliver their best performance when completely filled with a uniformly distributed process fluid. Entrained gas should be eliminated or minimized. Multiphase applications involving non-homogeneous mixtures can cause measurement errors. The use of filters, air and/or vapor eliminators, or other protective devices to reduce errors in measurement should be placed upstream from the Coriolis flowmeter.

PI-4.1.5.3 Ambient Influences. Large differences in the temperature between the measuring tube(s) and the ambient temperature can cause errors in the temperature compensation (e.g., CIP/SIP). The use of insulation materials can reduce these effects.

PI-4.1.6 Selection. The major consideration when selecting and sizing a Coriolis flowmeter is the tradeoff between pressure drop and flowmeter performance (accuracy).

The necessary engineering data shall be supplied by the owner/user to ensure correct sizing of the Coriolis flowmeter. The manufacturer shall use this information to provide all necessary calculations for minimum and maximum velocities, accuracy, and pressure drop. This will optimize the flowmeter performance over the flow rate range with a pressure drop that is acceptable for both CIP/SIP and normal operating conditions.

Chemical compatibility should be established between process wetted materials [i.e., the flow tube(s),

the manifold or flow splitter, the process connections], and the process fluid and the cleaning fluid (e.g., process, CIP, SIP, and passivation).

PI-4.1.7 Maintenance. There are no specific maintenance requirements for a Coriolis mass flowmeter.

PI-4.1.7.1 Seals/Gaskets. The manufacturer shall advise the owner/user if the process connections are not fully welded to the sensor body and if use of a seal/gasket assembly that requires periodic inspection is needed.

PI-4.1.7.2 Recalibration/Verification Schedule. A Coriolis flowmeter properly installed and operated within the manufacturer's guidelines on clean, non-corrosive and non-abrasive fluids is stable. The frequency of recalibration or verification of the flowmeter is governed by the criticality of the measurement and the nature of the operating conditions. The frequency of calibration verification shall be determined by the owner/user.

As the Coriolis mass flowmeter is a mass flow device, it is preferable to perform the calibration verification against a mass traceable reference. Calibration against a volume traceable reference combined with a density traceable reference may be used where applicable. Master flowmeters may be used to verify calibration of Coriolis flowmeters.

Calibration of the mass reference or a master flowmeter shall be traceable to nationally recognized standards or other standard as agreed to by the owner/user and manufacturer.

Calibration procedures can be found in ASME MFC-11.

PI-5 LEVEL INSTRUMENTS

[Reserved for future content]

PI-6 PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

[Reserved for future content]

PI-7 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

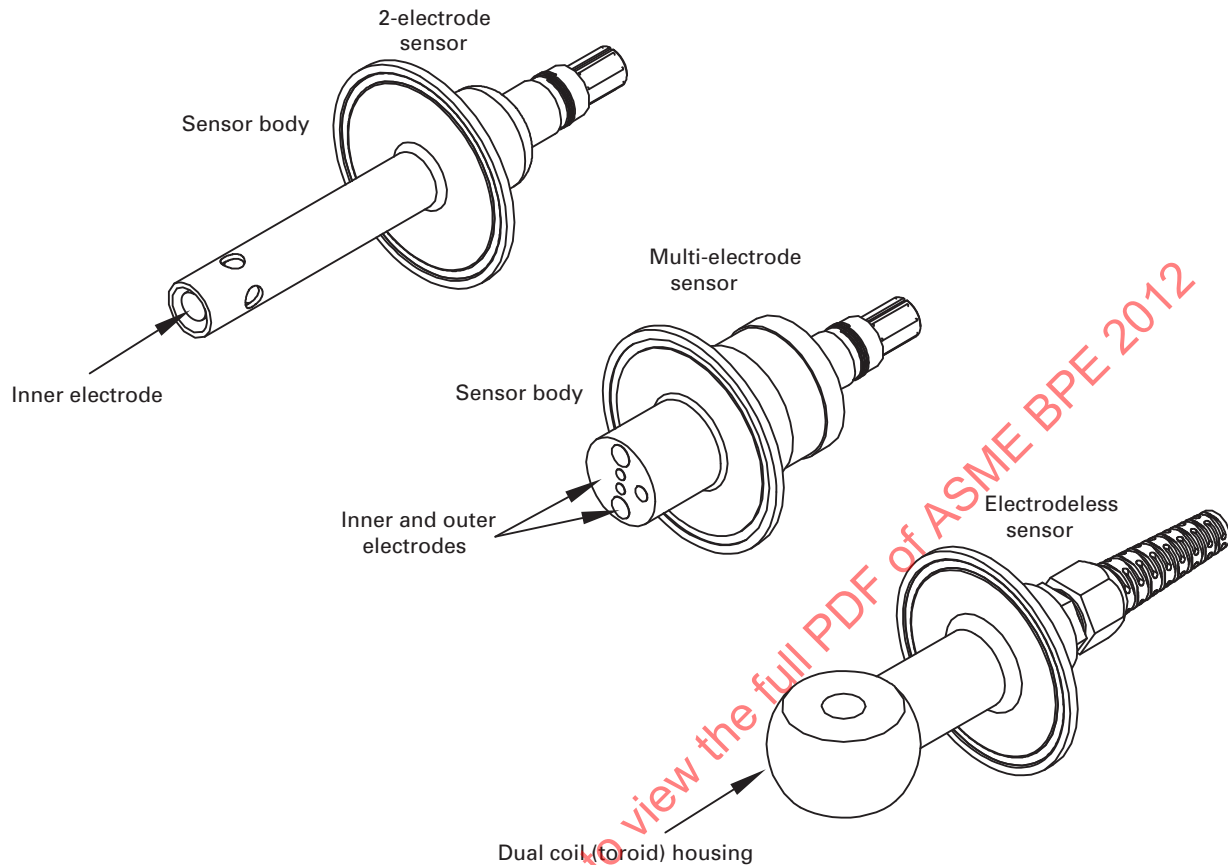
Refer to Nonmandatory Appendix P.

PI-8 ANALYTICAL INSTRUMENTS

PI-8.1 Conductivity

PI-8.1.1 General. Conductivity measurements are used to determine the level of ionic activity within an aqueous media. They are used in hygienic applications for in-line monitoring of process and water systems. Compendial water, in part, requires conductivity measurements of water for injection (WFI) and purified



Fig. PI-8.1.2-1 Conductivity Type Examples

water (PW) as an integral component of validated systems.

There are three basic types of conductivity sensors designed for specific measurement ranges; 2-electrode, multi-electrode, and electrodeless. Sensor-type selection is dependent upon intended measurement and installation requirements. The owner/user should consult the manufacturer for final selection suitability based upon the design criteria and may use PI-8.1.5 as a general reference.

Temperature impacts conductivity measurements by increasing conductivity as temperature increases. All conductivity sensors shall utilize either an internal or external temperature sensor for compensation to express the conductivity of the solution at a standard temperature.

PI-8.1.2 Essential Components. An electrode type sensor has wetted electrodes, between which an AC voltage is applied and the amperage measured is expressed as conductivity (see Fig. PI-8.1.2-1).

An electrodeless sensor consists of a non-conductive body material encapsulating two non-wetted coils/toroids. Measurements are made of the induced current from the powered coil to the measurement coil by having

the process fluid pass through the center and around the outside of the non-wetted coils (see Fig. PI-8.1.2-1).

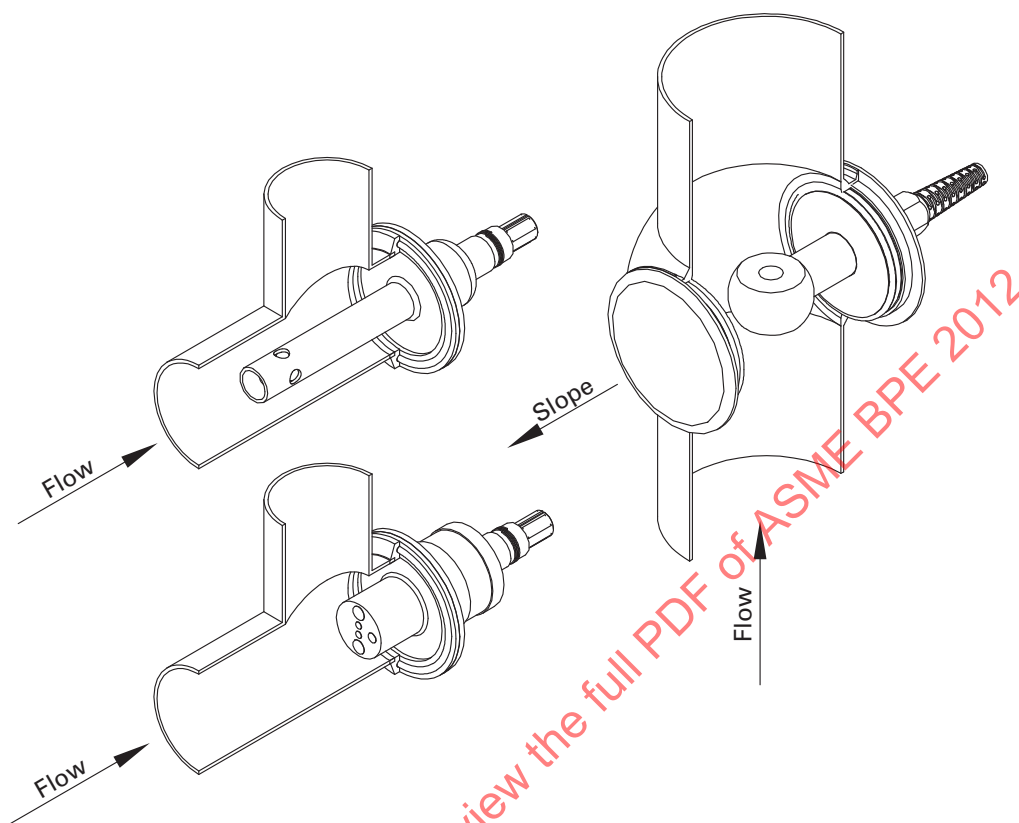
PI-8.1.2.1 Sensor Types. There are three typical designs of conductivity sensors:

(a) *2-electrode.* A 2-electrode type conductivity sensor generally consists of an outer shaft/body and inner electrode. Conductivity measurements are made in this interstitial space and require this area to be fully wetted.

(b) *Multi-electrode.* A multi-electrode type conductivity sensor consists of a wetted body with inner and outer electrodes generally arranged on the same plane. Conductivity measurements are made immediately in front of and in between the electrodes and require this area to be fully wetted. A non-conductive material of construction is required between the electrodes with the sensor body generally used as the insulator.

(c) *Electrodeless.* An electrodeless type conductivity sensor consists of two encapsulated coils. One coil generates a current and the second coil detects changes proportionate to the conductivity of the process fluid. An electrodeless sensor requires process fluid through and around the coils for proper measurements.

PI-8.1.3 Installation. All conductivity sensors require full immersion of their measurement electrodes

Fig. PI-8.1.3-1 Accepted Installations for Conductivity Sensors

or coils into the process fluid for proper functionality. Most conductivity sensors are offered as insertion devices, with some manufacturers offering in-line options.

Electrode conductivity sensors should be installed with flow into the sensor while maintaining drainability. Figure PI-8.1.3-1 provides examples of acceptable installations.

PI-8.1.3.1 Drainability. Conductivity sensors shall be installed in accordance with Part SD to ensure drainability.

PI-8.1.3.2 Cleanability. Conductivity sensors shall be cleanable as required in Part SD.

PI-8.1.3.3 Mounting Location. Insertion electrode sensors perform best with process fluid flow into the sensor's electrode(s) as shown in Fig. PI-8.1.3-1.

Electrodeless sensors shall be mounted with coils fully immersed in the process.

In-line installations shall ensure continuous process fluid flow around sensor electrodes or coils, to maximize measurement accuracy.

PI-8.1.3.4 Orientation. Conductivity sensors shall be oriented to ensure electrodes or coils are fully wetted. Horizontal installations should not be top mounted

insertions to avoid air pockets or bubbles interfering with the measurement.

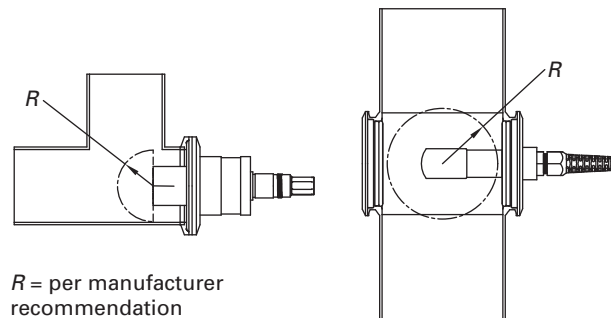
PI-8.1.3.5 Immersion Length/Depth. The owner/user shall follow manufacturer's recommendations regarding immersion length/depth to allow for sufficient clearance of electrodes or coil fields.

PI-8.1.3.6 Special Consideration. Sensor electrodes mounted too close to tube or vessel walls may cause conductivity field distortions resulting in measurement inaccuracies. The owner/user shall consult manufacturer's clearance requirements and recommendations (see Fig. PI-8.1.3.6-1).

Conductivity sensors for purified water of WFI systems shall be installed in such a manner as to allow periodic calibration in accordance with compendial water requirements.

PI-8.1.4 Performance. Conductivity devices are generally required to be full of process liquid and free of air pockets. Consult manufacturer for details.

PI-8.1.4.1 Accuracy. Compendial water guidelines establish a standard for the quality assessment of water based on measurements of the electrolytic conductivity. Sensors used for WFI or PW systems shall comply with this accuracy requirement.

Fig. PI-8.1.3.6-1 Installation Clearance Requirements

PI-8.1.4.2 Response Time. Conductivity sensor response times are impacted predominately by the response time of the temperature sensing element. All sensor types are responsive to changing conductivity levels without changes in temperatures. Electrodeless sensors are slower to respond in processes with changing temperatures due to the non-conductive nature of the coils' encapsulating material.

PI-8.1.4.3 Process Influences. Temperature changes impact conductivity measurements of a process fluid. All conductivity sensors shall utilize either an internal or external temperature sensor for compensation as required.

PI-8.1.4.4 Ambient Influences. Not applicable.

PI-8.1.5 Selection. Sensor selection shall be based upon the anticipated conductivity range of the process. The following may be used as a general selection reference:

(a) 2-electrode sensors should be selected for WFI systems, PW systems or other process fluids that have low conductivity ranges. These sensors are most suitable for systems from 0.02 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$ to 10 000 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$.

(b) Multi-electrode (more than two) sensors should be selected for process fluids that have medium to high conductivities, such as those found on clean in place (CIP) or chromatography systems. These sensors are most suitable for systems ranging from 0.01 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$ to 800 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$.

(c) Electrodeless (inductive or toroidal) sensors should be selected for process fluids that have the highest conductivity. These sensors are most suitable for systems ranging from 0.1 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$ to 2 000 $\mu\text{S}/\text{cm}$.

PI-8.1.6 Maintenance

PI-8.1.6.1 Calibration/Verification Schedule. Sensors used in WFI or PW systems shall be calibrated in accordance with compendial water requirements.

PI-8.2 pH — Glass Measuring Electrode

PI-8.2.1 General. This section provides the requirements for installation and operation of ion-selective pH

sensors specific to bioprocessing and pharmaceutical industries as well as other applications with hygienic requirements.

The design, construction, and fabrication of pH sensors are governed by other parts of this Standard.

PI-8.2.2 Components. Commonly used pH sensor technologies incorporate four major components:

- (a) an ion selective electrode (measuring electrode)
- (b) an electrolyte-filled reference electrode
- (c) a liquid interface (reference junction)
- (d) an internal or external temperature sensor (temperature compensator)

Typical pH sensor construction combines all four of these components into one body, referred to as a combination pH sensor (see Fig. PI-8.2.2-1).

Other components that compose a complete sensor assembly may include elastomeric seals and gaskets, polymeric and/or metallic based components, holders, and hygienic clamp connections.

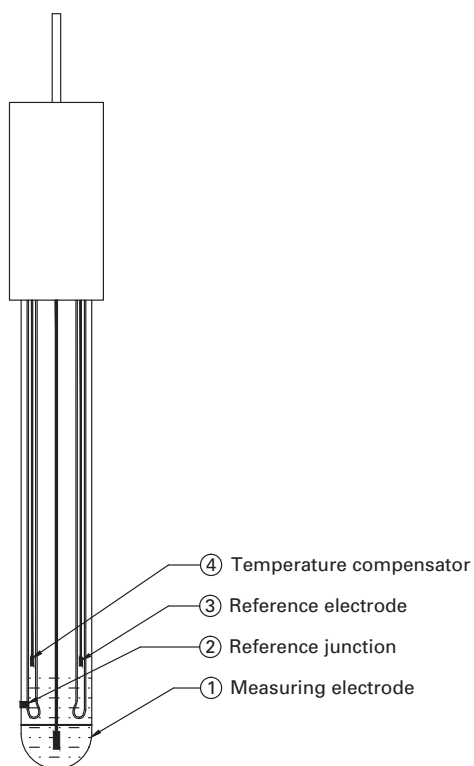
PI-8.2.3 Installation. All pH sensors require insertion of the measuring electrode and reference junction into the process fluid for proper functionality. Most pH sensors are offered as insertion devices. Figure PI-8.2.3-1 provides examples of acceptable installations. The owner/user should consult with the sensor manufacturer to determine other installation options.

PI-8.2.3.1 Drainability. When installed, pH sensor assemblies shall be drainable in accordance with Part SD.

PI-8.2.3.2 Cleanability. The owner/user should consult with the sensor manufacturer regarding suitability of sensor for intended use and sterilization/sanitation methods.

PI-8.2.3.3 Mounting Location. Sensor mounting location affects sensor performance. The following process specific issues should be considered when specifying the location and use of a pH sensor:

(a) The point of addition of acid and/or base to the process solution should be considered when locating a pH sensor. Sufficient distance and/or time is required to ensure complete liquid mixing and reaction.

Fig. PI-8.2.2-1 pH Sensor Components

(b) Locating sensors in areas prone to flashing, cavitation, or siphoning; or where sensor may not be in constant contact with liquid should be avoided.

(c) Maintenance of pH sensors should be considered when selecting sensor location.

The owner/user should consult with the sensor manufacturer for mounting recommendations.

PI-8.2.3.4 Orientation. pH sensors should be installed in horizontal tubing, up-flow tubing, appropriately designed flow cells, and vessels. Most pH sensor technologies exhibit optimal performance when installed at 15 deg or more from the horizontal (see Fig. PI-8.2.3.4-1).

pH sensors can be sensitive to flow-profile. Orientation should be kept consistent in order to produce repeatable results.

The owner/user should follow the sensor manufacturer's installation orientation recommendations for optimal measurement reliability.

PI-8.2.3.5 Insertion Length/Depth. The sensor shall be inserted far enough into the tube or vessel so that the sensor measuring electrode and reference junction are always in contact with the process fluid. Unprotected sensor exposure should be limited to help prevent inadvertent breakage. Maximum recommended insertion of unprotected sensor from holder is less than or

equal to 0.25 in. (6.3 mm) as measured from the reference junction (see Fig. PI-8.2.3.5-1).

The owner/user should consult with the sensor manufacturer for appropriate sensor design and sensor holder selection.

PI-8.2.3.6 Special Considerations. The measuring electrode and reference junction should be kept wet at all times whether in service or in storage. Extended periods without liquid contact will permanently affect sensor performance.

pH sensors are consumable devices and require periodic replacement. The owner/user should consider sensor accessibility during installation planning.

The owner/user should consult with sensor manufacturer for specific storage, handling, and re-wetting recommendations.

PI-8.2.4 Performance. pH sensor performance will degrade over time. The rate of degradation is application, maintenance, and installation dependent. Critical factors that affect performance and the frequency of replacement are

- (a) changes in span and response (measuring electrode function)
- (b) changes in offset and stability (reference electrode function)
- (c) temperature compensator response
- (d) installation (insertion length, location, and orientation)
- (e) maintenance schedules and methods
- (f) post maintenance sensor recovery time

pH sensors are sensitive to coating and/or plugging of the measuring electrode and reference junction. After cleaning, sensors should be calibrated.

The owner/user should contact the sensor manufacturer for recommendations based on documented owner/user performance requirements.

PI-8.2.4.1 Accuracy. Published pH sensor accuracy can be affected by calibration (standardization) methods, maintenance procedures and frequencies, cleaning methods, process conditions, sensor design, installation, sensor age and condition, as well as the ambient conditions.

PI-8.2.4.2 Response Time. pH sensor response time is affected by sensor design, sensor age and condition, and process temperature. As a sensor ages or process fluid temperature decreases, sensor response time will become slower.

PI-8.2.4.3 Process Influences. pH sensors are sensitive to process influences that include, but are not limited to, process fluid velocity, process fluid temperature, high pH, and high ionic strength.

Process fluid velocity in excess of 8 ft/sec (2.4 m/s) can cause excessive signal noise and physical damage.

Fig. PI-8.2.3-1 Accepted pH Sensor Installations

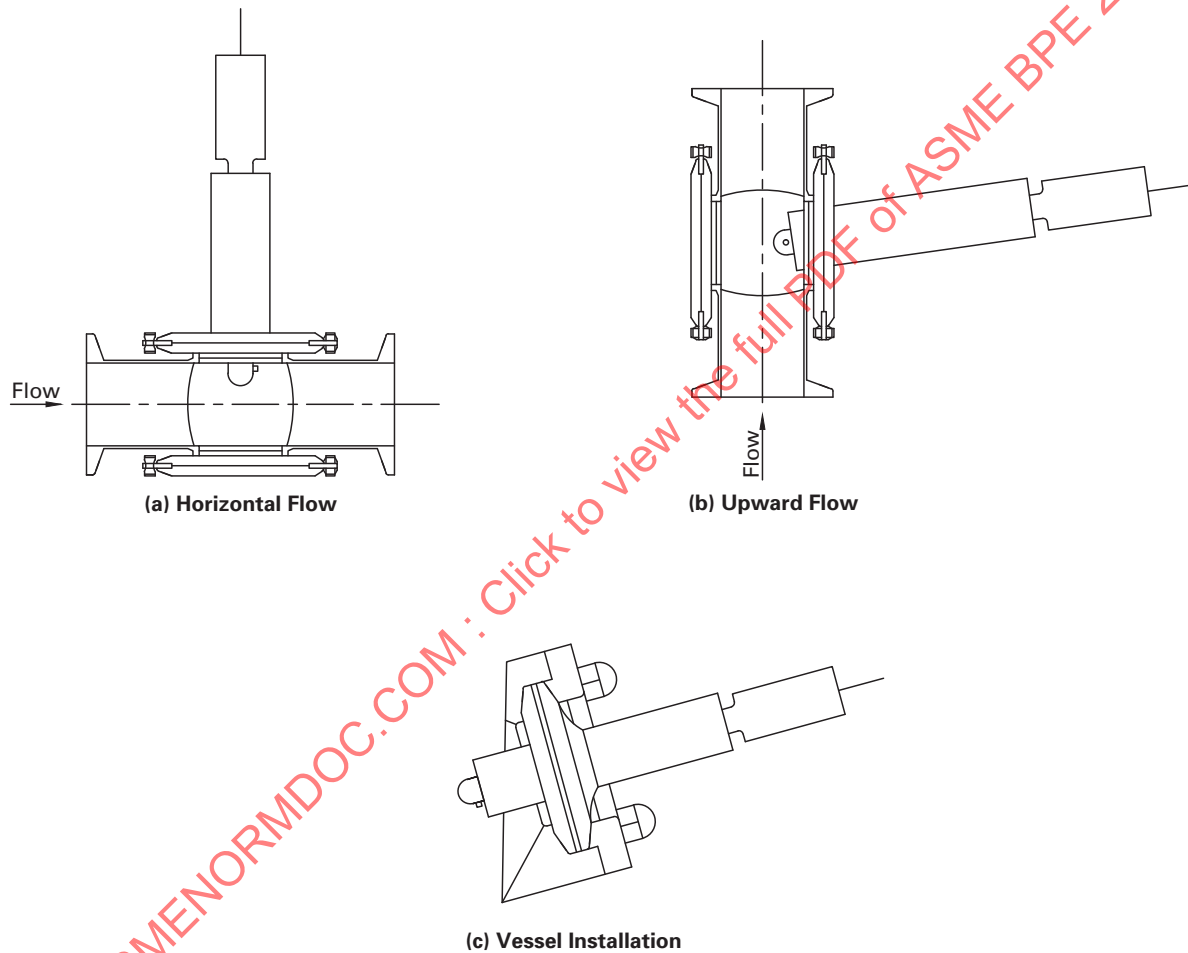
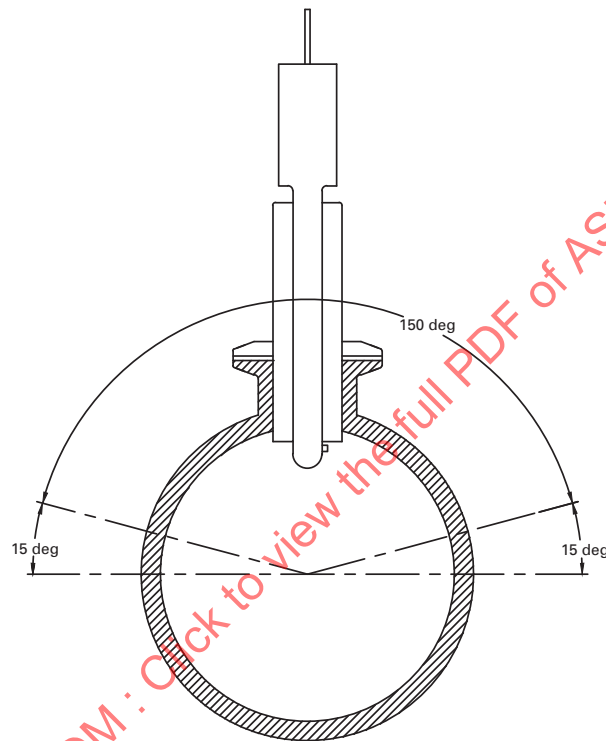
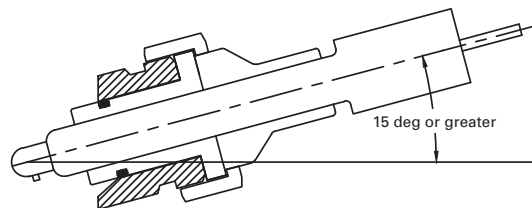


Fig. PI-8.2.3.4-1 Accepted Mounting Orientations

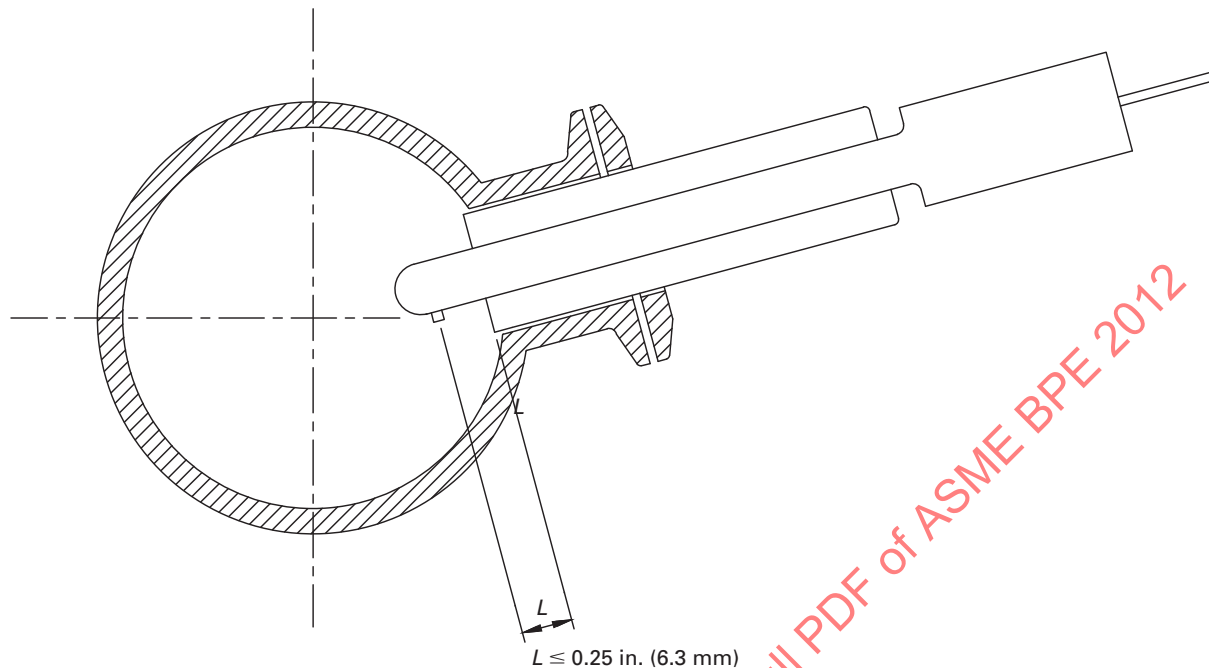


(a) Horizontal Flow Orientation



(b) Upward Flow or Vessel Orientation

Fig. PI-8.2.3.5-1 Insertion Length or Depth



As process fluid temperature increases, response time becomes faster but sensor life may be adversely affected.

High pH (over 12 pH) will tend to decrease sensor life.

High ionic strength chemicals such as those used in CIP systems can decrease sensor life.

The owner/user should discuss process conditions with sensor manufacturer to minimize potentially negative process influences.

PI-8.2.4.4 Ambient Influences. pH sensors, in combination with other loop components (electronics and cables), can be affected by electrical noise, EMI/RFI interference, ground loops, close coupling of sensors with other instruments or equipment, and external washdown environments.

The owner/user should consult with sensor manufacturer to match complete loop with ambient conditions.

PI-8.2.5 Selection. The owner/user should consult with the manufacturer to determine sensor applicability and loop component (mounting hardware, cable, and electronics) compatibility.

PI-8.2.6 Maintenance. Maintenance schedules and methods shall be established by the owner/user based on owner/user historical experience and sensor manufacturer recommendations.

PI-8.2.6.1 Calibration/Verification Schedule. pH sensors should be calibrated using multi-point and/or single-point methods.

A multi-point calibration adjusts both the sensor span (measuring electrode) and sensor offset (reference electrode). A single-point calibration, often referred to as

standardization, only adjusts the sensor offset.

pH sensor span, offset, response time, and stability can be affected by coating and/or plugging of the measuring electrode and reference junction. Operators should perform a calibration or standardization after each cleaning or sterilization cycle.

The owner/user should consult with sensor manufacturer to establish procedures based on sensor design, owner/user expectations, instrument historical performance, and process design.

PI-9 OPTICAL

PI-9.1 Optical Devices

PI-9.1.1 General. Optical devices are used to measure various process characteristics including; color, turbidity, concentration, percent solids, optical density, particle and cell size/shape, cell density, and cell viability. They are used in filtration, chromatography, fermentation, and water systems. They provide critical control information and process safeguards.

PI-9.1.2 Components

PI-9.1.2.1 Light Source. Optical devices involve a light source such as visible (VIS), ultraviolet (UV), near infrared (NIR), or infrared (IR), which is transmitted or reflected into the process fluid.

PI-9.1.2.2 Sensor. Sensor types include photo detectors, photomultipliers, and CCD (charge-coupled device) imaging chips. The system can involve various

optical components to focus, filter, and enhance the light beam either one-dimensionally or two-dimensionally.

PI-9.1.2.3 Sight Glass. Sight glasses are one of the key components of an optical device. One acceptable method for mounting glass is to fuse it to metal. Wetted components of the sight glass assembly shall comply with Parts MM and PM.

PI-9.1.3 Installation. It is recommended to install the measuring probe beyond the boundary layer to ensure optimal measurement.

PI-9.1.3.1 Drainability. Optical devices shall be installed in accordance with Part SD.

PI-9.1.3.2 Cleanability. Product contact surfaces of optical devices shall be cleanable as required per Part SD. Additional cleaning devices or device removal may be required in some applications. If used, additional cleaning devices shall be designed to the same requirement as spray devices, as per Part SD.

PI-9.1.3.3 Mounting Location. Optical devices shall be mounted in a pipe or vessel where a representative measurement can be made.

A light or combined light and sight glass for viewing shall be mounted as shown in Fig. PI-9.1.3.3-1.

PI-9.1.3.4 Orientation. The preferred mounting of in-line optical devices is in the vertical section of tubing to avoid product or particle segregation. The probe should be in constant contact with the process fluid.

PI-9.1.3.5 Insertion Length. For tube diameters less than 1 in. (25 mm), experimental test data should be used to measure performance.

For in-line installation of tube diameters ranging from 1 in. (25 mm) to 4 in. (100 mm), optical probes should be mounted a minimum (L_{min}) of 0.3 in. (8 mm) away from any interior tube wall (reference Fig. PI-9.1.3.5-1).

For vessels and tubing in excess of 4 in. (100 mm) diameter, optical probes should be mounted where the glass measurement surface is a minimum (L_{min}) of 1.5 in. (38 mm) from any interior tube wall (reference Fig. PI-9.1.3.5-2).

PI-9.1.3.6 Special Considerations. Special care should be taken for processes that are adversely impacted by temperature to avoid high temperatures on the process side of the sight glass or optical window caused by the optical devices. Heat generated by the optical device should be kept to a minimum. Testing of

the optical device at the maximum operating wattage of the probe or probes should not result in still water within 0.5 in. (13 mm) of the probe rising more than 2°F (1°C) in 1 hr.

For light sources used for viewing only, a thermal switch, timer, momentary switch, IR filter, or some other suitable means should be considered to control overheating.

PI-9.1.4 Performance. In-line optical devices generally require the tube to be full of liquid and free of excess air pockets. Certain optical devices can tolerate the presence of some air bubbles. The owner/user should consult with the optical device manufacturer for guidance.

PI-9.1.4.1 Accuracy. Optical devices are inherently accurate and repeatable but dependent upon device-specific calibration. The owner/user should follow the manufacturer's recommended calibration procedures to maximize performance.

PI-9.1.4.2 Response Time. Optical sensing elements provide instantaneous readings with no delays due to process conditions such as temperature or flow. Refresh rates are often a function of transmitter or system electronic settings. The owner/user should consult the manufacturer if a specific response time is desired.

PI-9.1.4.3 Process Influences. Velocity and particulate content in the process fluid may impact the cleaning frequency requirement of the optical device.

PI-9.1.4.4 Ambient Influences. Some optical sensing electronics have limited process and ambient temperature ranges for optimal performance. The owner/user should consult the manufacturer to ensure selection is compatible with the temperature conditions.

PI-9.1.5 Selection. Optical device sensing technologies vary based upon intended application and suitable measurement ranges. The owner/user should determine desired measurement range and unit of measurement before selecting optical device and associated technology.

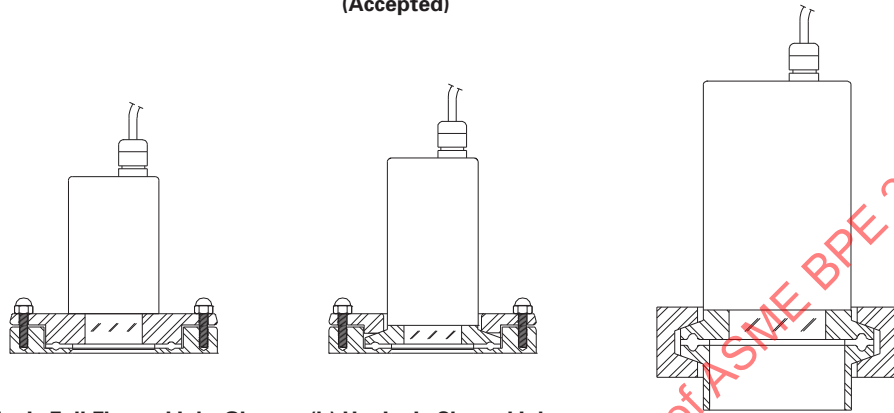
PI-9.1.6 Maintenance. Optical devices often require periodic maintenance that includes cleaning of glass and replacement of light source. Installations should consider manufacturer's maintenance recommendations and allow for appropriate services.

PI-9.1.6.1 Calibration/Verification. [Reserved for future content]



Fig. PI-9.1.3.3-1 Vessel Light Glass Design and Mounting

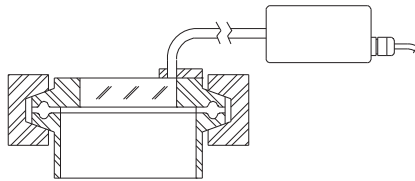
(Accepted)



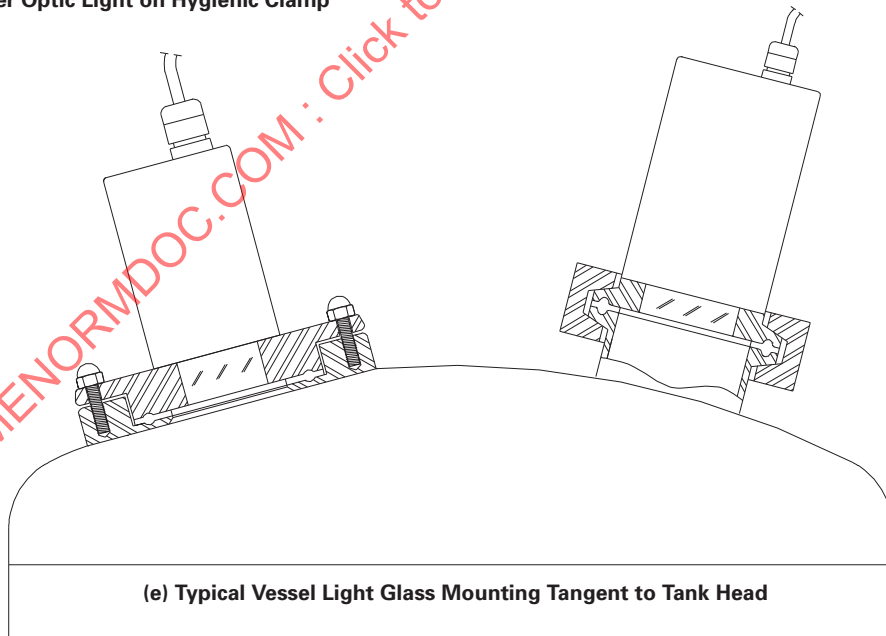
(a) Hygienic Full Flange Light Glass on Hygienic Clamp Pad

(b) Hygienic Clamp Light on Hygienic Clamp Pad

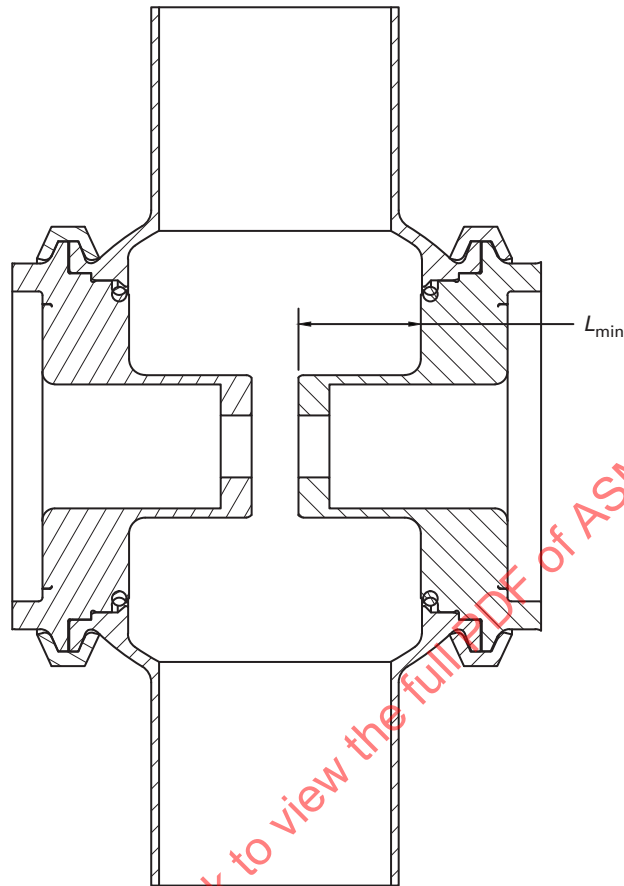
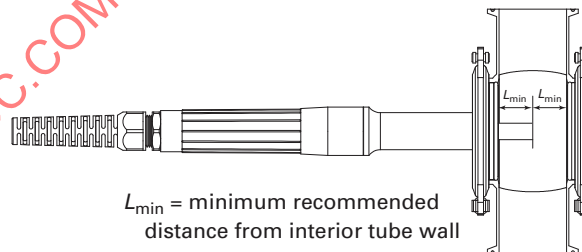
(c) Hygienic Clamp Light



(d) Fiber Optic Light on Hygienic Clamp



(e) Typical Vessel Light Glass Mounting Tangent to Tank Head

Fig. PI-9.1.3.5-1 In-Line Insertion Length**Fig. PI-9.1.3.5-2 Insertion Probe Length**

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK



MANDATORY APPENDIX I

SUBMITTAL OF TECHNICAL INQUIRIES TO THE BIOPROCESSING EQUIPMENT (BPE) COMMITTEE

I-1 INTRODUCTION

(a) This Mandatory Appendix provides guidance to BPE Standard users for submitting technical inquiries to the Committee. Technical inquiries include requests for revisions or additions to the rules of the Standard, requests for Code Cases, and requests for interpretations of the Standard, as described in the following:

(1) *Revisions.* Revisions are considered to accommodate technological developments, address administrative requirements, incorporate Code Cases, or to clarify the intent of the Standard.

(2) *Code Cases.* Code Cases represent alternatives or additions to existing rules. Code Cases are written as a question and reply, and are usually intended to be incorporated into the Standard at a later date. When used, Code Cases prescribe mandatory requirements in the same sense as the text of the Standard. However, users are cautioned that not all jurisdictions or owners automatically accept Code Cases. The most common applications for Code Cases are

(a) to permit early implementation of an approved revision based on an urgent need

(b) to permit the use of a new material for construction

(c) to gain experience with new materials or alternative rules prior to incorporation directly into the Standard

(3) *Interpretations.* Interpretations provide clarification of the meaning of existing rules and are also presented in question and reply format. Interpretations do not introduce new requirements. In cases where existing text does not fully convey the meaning that was intended, and revision of the rules is required to support an interpretation, an Intent Interpretation will be issued and the Standard will be revised.

(b) The rules, Code Cases, and Interpretations established by the Committee are not to be considered as approving, recommending, certifying, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design, or as limiting in any way the freedom of manufacturers, constructors, or owners to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the rules of the Standard.

(c) Inquiries that do not comply with the provisions of this Mandatory Appendix or that do not provide

sufficient information for the Committee's full understanding may result in the request being returned to the inquirer with no action.

I-2 INQUIRY FORMAT

Submittals to the Committee shall include

(a) *Purpose.* Specify one of the following:

(1) revision of present rules

(2) new or additional rules

(3) Code Case

(4) Interpretation

(b) *Background.* Provide the information needed for the Committee's understanding of the inquiry, being sure to include reference to the applicable Edition, Addenda, paragraphs, figures, and tables. Preferably, provide a copy of the specific referenced portions of the Standard.

(c) *Presentations.* The inquirer may desire or be asked to attend a meeting of the Committee to make a formal presentation or to answer questions from the Committee members with regard to the inquiry. Attendance at a Committee meeting shall be at the expense of the inquirer. The inquirer's attendance or lack of attendance at a meeting shall not be a basis for acceptance or rejection of the inquiry by the Committee.

I-3 REVISIONS OR ADDITIONS

Requests for revisions or additions shall provide the following:

(a) *Proposed Revisions or Additions.* For revisions, identify the rules of the Standard that require revision and submit a copy of the appropriate rules as they appear in the Standard, marked up with the proposed revision. For additions, provide the recommended wording referenced to the existing rules.

(b) *Statement of Need.* Provide a brief explanation of the need for the revision or addition.

(c) *Background Information.* Provide background information to support the revision or addition, including any data or changes in technology that form the basis for the request that will allow the Committee to adequately evaluate the proposed revision or addition. Sketches, tables, figures, and graphs should be submitted as appropriate. When applicable, identify any pertinent paragraph in the Standard that would be affected



by the revision or addition and identify paragraphs in the Standard that reference the paragraphs that are to be revised or added.

I-4 CODE CASES

Requests for Code Cases shall provide a Statement of Need and Background Information similar to that defined in I-3(b) and I-3(c), respectively, for revisions or additions. The urgency of the Code Case (e.g., project underway or imminent, new procedure, etc.) must be defined and it must be confirmed that the request is in connection with equipment that will be governed by the ASME BPE Standard. The proposed Code Case should identify the part, paragraph, table, and/or figure and be written as a Question and a Reply in the same format as existing Code Cases. Requests for Code Cases should also indicate the applicable Editions and Addenda to which the proposed Code Case applies.

I-5 INTERPRETATIONS

(a) Requests for Interpretations shall provide the following:

(1) *Inquiry*. Provide a condensed and precise question, omitting superfluous background information and, when possible, composed in such a way that a “yes” or a “no” *Reply*, with brief provisos if needed, is acceptable. The question should be technically and editorially correct.

(2) *Reply*. Provide a proposed *Reply* that will clearly and concisely answer the *Inquiry* question. Preferably, the *Reply* should be “yes” or “no,” with brief provisos if needed.

(3) *Background Information*. Provide any background information that will assist the Committee in understanding the proposed *Inquiry* and *Reply*.

(b) Requests for Interpretations must be limited to an interpretation of a particular requirement in the Standard or a Code Case. The Committee cannot consider consulting type requests such as the following:

(1) a review of calculations, design drawings, welding qualifications, or descriptions of equipment or parts to determine compliance with requirements in the Standard

(2) a request for assistance in performing any Standard-prescribed functions relating to, but not limited to, material selection, designs, calculations, fabrication, inspection, pressure testing, or installation

(3) a request seeking the rationale for requirements in the Standard

I-6 SUBMITTALS

Submittals to and responses from the Committee shall meet the following:

(a) *Submittal*. Inquiries from BPE Standard users shall be in English and preferably be submitted in typewritten form. However, legible handwritten inquiries will also be considered. They shall include the name, address, telephone number, fax number, and e-mail address, if available, of the inquirer and be mailed to the following address:

Secretary
ASME BPE Committee
The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

(b) *Response*. The Secretary of the ASME BPE Committee or of the appropriate Subcommittee shall acknowledge receipt of each properly prepared inquiry and shall provide a written response to the inquirer upon completion of the requested action by the Standards Committee.



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX A

COMMENTARY: SLAG

A-1 GENERAL

- (a) Inert-gas welding processes do not introduce slag.
- (b) Stainless steels, especially type 316L, typically produce a small, round, black spot at the termination of the weld bead, on the O.D., I.D., or both. This spot is generally unavoidable and has been found to be acceptable in most process applications.
- (c) Slag in or on welds may be the result of faulty weld preparation, such as contamination, poor cleaning, or faulty tacking procedures.

(d) Slag may also result from melting base metals of certain compositions that include elements not normally reported on Material Test Reports. These elements include, but are not limited to, aluminum, calcium, cerium, and zirconium.

(e) The owner/user and contractor should investigate the origin of any slag found during weld examination, determine its acceptability, and agree on any corrective action.

(f) The inert-gas welding processes themselves do not introduce a slag because no fluxing materials are used (see GR-8 and AWS 3.0).



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX B MATERIAL EXAMINATION LOG AND WELD LOG

(See Forms beginning on next page.)

ASMENORMDOC.COM : Click to view the full PDF of ASME BPE 2012



Comments: _____

(1) Per applicable sections of Part SF.

Form MEL-2 Material Examination Log**Item**

Page: ____ of ____

Customer company name, _____

address, contact names, _____

and number: _____

Project Information: _____

Material Specification: _____

P.O. Number: _____

Packing List #: _____

Lot #: _____

Examiner's Information: _____

Manufacturer: _____

Material/Alloy Type: _____

Material Description: _____

Heat Number/Heat Code: _____

Wall Thickness: _____

O.D. Tolerance: _____

Surface RA: _____

Visual Examination: _____

MTR Verified: _____

Quantity Received: _____

Qty. Accepted: _____

Qty. Rejected: _____

Date Inspected: _____

Comments: _____



Instructions for Completing the Material Examination Log

Item	Typical Entry
Top Right Section (Suggested)	
	Customer company name, address, contact names, and number
Top Center Section (Suggested)	
Project Information:	Specifications, Codes and Standards
Material Specification:	ASTM specification, customer specification
Top Left Section (Suggested)	
Page: ____ of ____:	Sequential identifying number and total pages in package
P.O. Number:	Purchase order number which the material was ordered under
Packing List #:	Packing list identifying number
Lot #:	Lot number issued from the Material Receiving Log
Examiner's Information:	The name of the examiner, company of examiner, etc.
Bottom Section (Required)	
Manufacturer:	Name of manufacturer
Material/Alloy Type:	Type or grade of material (316L, AL6XN, etc.)
Material Description:	Size, material product form (tubing, 90, 45, TEE, ferrule, valve, etc.)
Heat Number/Heat Code:	Record heat number(s) for the sample
Wall Thickness:	Record Accept or Reject after physical examination of the lot. (if required)
O.D. Tolerance:	Record Accept or Reject after physical examination of the lot. (if required)
Surface RA:	Record Accept or Reject after physical examination of the lot. (if required)
Visual Examination:	Record Accept or Reject after physical examination
DT-11 Compliant:	Record Accept or Reject after markings verification
MTR Verified:	Record Accept or Reject for MTR compliance with specifications
Quantity Received:	Total quantity of material received in the shipment or lot
Quantity Examined:	Total quantity of material physically inspected (if required)
Qty. Accepted:	Record quantity accepted
Qty. Rejected:	Record quantity rejected
Examiner's Initials:	Initials of examiner who performed the work
Date Inspected:	Date the examination(s) were performed for the samples listed
NCR Number:	The NCR report number if needed
Comments:	Record any notes for inspection area(s) requiring more description



Form WL-1 Weld Log (Weld and Examination/Inspection Log)

[illegible]

GENERAL NOTES:

- (a) Welds must be uniquely identified per applicable drawings.
- (b) Rejected welds that can be rewelded shall use the same number with an "R" after it.
- (c) Rejected welds that must be cut out and replaced with a new weld shall be assigned the same identifier followed by an "A" for the first, "B" for the second, in consecutive order.
- (d) If a weld is cut out for a reason other than a rejected weld, it shall be recorded as a "Deleted" weld in the Comments section. The replacement weld shall be assigned the next available identifier.

NOTES:

- (1) VO = Visual O.D. only, VI = Visual O.D. and BoreScope I.D.
(2) Blind welds shall be indicated as “Blind” in the Comments section. Manual welds shall be indicated as “Manual” in the Comments section. Videotaped welds shall be indicated as “Video” in the Comments section. Any other requirements can be indicated in the Comments section.



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX C

SLOPE MEASUREMENT

C-1 GENERAL

(a) Slope measurement shall be made with a digital level or a digital protractor. The instrument used should be capable of displaying slope in degrees, percent, and in./ft (mm/m).

(b) Refer to the owner's manual for the proper procedure to perform the self-calibration routine. This must be performed immediately prior to use.

(c) Slope measurements shall only be made under the following conditions:

- (1) before insulation has been installed
- (2) after hangers/pipe supports have been installed, adjusted, and fixed in-place
- (3) before the introduction of any fluids, such as liquids or process gases (pure oxygen, nitrogen, steam, etc.)
- (4) when the system is at ambient pressure and temperature

(d) For piping or tubing systems, slope measurements shall be made at the following locations:

- (1) between hangers/pipe supports
- (2) at each change in direction

(3) at any other location deemed necessary by the inspector, such as between welds or any apparent change in slope

(e) Slope should be measured only on runs that are approximately horizontal.

(f) Slope measurements may be made on either the top or bottom of the tubing/piping.

(g) For slope measurements made on skids or modules, ensure that the base is level in all directions. Then, make sure that all slope measurements are made relative to the base.

(h) Slope shall be verified after the fabricator has completed, or corrected, the piping installation, and set the slope.



NONMANDATORY APPENDIX D

ROUGE AND STAINLESS STEEL

D-1 GENERAL

Rouge is a naturally occurring phenomenon in existing stainless steel high purity process systems (including water or pure steam). The degree to which it forms depends upon

- (a) the stainless steel material used for each component within the system
- (b) how the system was fabricated (e.g., welding, surface finish, passivation treatment)
- (c) what process service conditions the system is exposed to (e.g., water purity, process chemicals, temperatures, pressures, mechanical stresses, flow velocities, and oxygen exposure)
- (d) how the system is maintained

The presence of rouge in a system needs to be evaluated against its potential to affect the product process and/or long-term operation of the system.

This Appendix provides the methods to measure rouge in a system in both the process solution and on the actual product contact surface. It also suggests various fabrication and operation practices to minimize rouge formation, and methods/techniques for its remediation.

For the definition of rouge and its classification into Classes I, II, and III, see Section GR-8 of this Standard.

D-2 CONSIDERATIONS FOR REDUCING ROUGE FORMATION

Tables D-2-1 and D-2-2 provide guidance on different variables and how they may contribute to the presence of rouge in a high purity system. They are listed in the following categories:

- (a) *Category 1: Little Influence on the Formation of Rouge.* There are theories that suggest other factors that may have a role in the formation of rouge. These variables are not listed in Tables D-2-1 and D-2-2.
- (b) *Category 2: Moderate Influence on the Formation of Rouge.* There is industry data supporting these variables, and they should be considered.
- (c) *Category 3: Strong Influence on the Formation of Rouge.* There is well established industry data supporting these variables, and they should be considered.

D-2.1 System Fabrication

See Table D-2-1 for a discussion of fabrication variables that affect the amount of rouge formation.

D-2.2 System Operation

See Table D-2-2 for a discussion of operation variables that affect the amount of rouge formation.

D-3 EVALUATION METHODS TO MEASURE ROUGE

Rouge can be measured by either its presence in the process fluid, and/or its presence on the product/solution contact surface.

D-3.1 Process Fluid Analyses

Fluid analyses provide a means of identifying the mobile constituents within a subject process system. They represent the current quality status of the media, and the result of rouging.

Table D-3.1-1 provides description, pros, and cons of various tests for the identification of mobile constituents.

D-3.2 Solid Surface Analyses

Surface analyses provide information on the nature, microstructure, and composition of surface layers. They may represent the future status of the media, and the possible threat of rouging to the water quality.

Table D-3.2-1 provides description, pros, and cons of various tests for the identification of surface layers' composition.

D-4 METHODS TO REMEDIATE THE PRESENCE OF ROUGE IN A SYSTEM

Remediation (derouging) processes are designed to remove iron oxide and other surface constituents of rouge while minimizing damage to the surface finish. Rouge occurs on the surface, from corrosion, or precipitates onto the surface after migrating from other locations. These conditions are easily categorized by using the standard Classes I, II, and III rouge. The following sections describe these remediation processes and the conditions under which they are performed.

D-4.1 Class I Rouge Remediation

Class I rouges are weakly attached to the surface and relatively easily removed and dissolved. This rouge is generally hematite or red ferric iron oxide with low levels of other oxides or carbon content. Phosphoric acid is useful to remove light accumulations and can be blended with other acids and compounds including citric, nitric, formic, or other organic acids and surfactants



Table D-2-1 Considerations That Affect the Amount of Rouge Formation During the Fabrication of a System

Variables	Considerations
Category 3 — Strong Influence on the Formation of Rouge [Note (1)]	
Alloy selection	Selection of the proper alloy [e.g., 316L stainless steel (S31603), 6 moly (N08367), etc.] should address the corrosive effects of the process conditions. For example, low carbon stainless steel (316L) has better corrosion resistance versus the higher carbon stainless steels (316). Beneficial alloys can mitigate premature or accelerated corrosion. Higher nickel content will enhance corrosion resistance.
Mechanical polishing/buffing	Striations from cold working techniques may include residual grinding/polishing debris in lapping inclusions. Cumulative increase of interior area due to surface finish inconsistency proportionally exposes more alloy to the mechanisms of corrosion and burden of passivation.
Electropolishing	Minimizes the exposure area of the native alloy to oxidizing fluids or halides, and minimizes the origins for micropitting by various mechanisms including halide attack and thermal stress corrosion. Surface occlusion from passivation fluids is minimized by the smooth, more even finish.
Passivation	Impedes or retards corrosive developments of stainless steel surfaces. The effectiveness of passivation methods in terms of depth and enhancement of surface alloy ratios (i.e., chrome to iron) determine the eventual propensity of an alloy to corrode and the rates of corrosion.
Alloy composition	(% molybdenum, chromium, nickel, etc.) The microstructure quality affects precipitation of impurities at grain boundaries. Migration of impurities to the alloy surface can either support corrosion cells or seed downstream corrosion. Weld joints on tubing and/or components with dissimilar sulfur concentrations may result in lack of penetration due to weld pool shift. The resulting crevice may become a corrosion initiation site.
Welding, welding conditions, purging, etc.	Improper welds can result in chromium depleted heat affected zones (HAZs) and other conditions that reduce corrosion resistance. Weld discontinuities create opportunities to trap fluid borne impurities. Cracks resulting from poor welds will create breaches in passive layer and form active corrosion cells. Proper purging prevents weld contamination by heat tint oxides and the concurrent loss of corrosion resistance. Passivation cannot reverse the effects of improper purging.
Product form and fabrication methods	The ferrite content can be greatly affected by the forming process (e.g., a forging will typically have much lower ferrite percentages than a casting). Barstock endgrain voids at the surface can enhance the potential of the alloy to pit and corrode. Minimization of differences in sulfur content will enhance the potential for successful welding.
Category 2 — Moderate Influence on the Formation of Rouge [Note (1)]	
Installation/storage environment	Unidentified corrosion due to the storage or installation environment, including carbon steel contamination, scratching, exposure to chemical contaminants, stagnated condensation or liquids, etc., may warrant a derouging step prior to passivation. Failure to detect instances of corrosion will marginalize the effect of a normal passivation.
Expansion and modifications to an established system	Oxide formations in newly commissioned systems can form at different rates than older systems and initially generate migratory Class I rouge. Where oxide films exist in established systems, they are likely to be more stable, producing less migratory iron or chrome oxides. Because the newer system can generate and distribute lightly held Class I migratory hematite forms throughout the system, the corrosion origin and cause can be difficult to identify.

NOTE:

(1) There is well established industry data supporting this, and it needs to be considered.



Table D-2-2 Considerations That Affect the Amount of Rouge Formation During the Operation of a System

Variables	Considerations
Category 3 — Strong Influence on the Formation of Rouge [Note (1)]	
Corrosive process fluid (bleach, halides, etc.)	Corrosion cell inceptions at breaches in the passive layer, as in chloride corrosion cells, will progressively catalyze the corrosion mechanism. This has a very strong influence for applications such as high salt buffer tanks, etc.
High shear/velocity environment (pump - impeller, sprayball, tees, etc.)	Erosive forces deplete or erode the passive layer and introduce base metal composition particles to the remainder of the system. Severe instances can cause pitting on the tips of pump impellers, or fluid impingement spots on vessel walls. In pure steam systems, high velocity sections can scour tubing walls either preventing sustained buildup of stable magnetite layers or sloughing off fragments from developing oxide formations that are then transported downstream for possible corrosion seeding.
Operating temperature and temperature gradients	Operating temperature and temperature gradients will affect the eventual nature of oxide formations (e.g., Class I hematite versus Class III magnetite), the ease of removal, the propensity to become stationary, stable, or lightly held and migratory. The nature of restoration by passivation and derouging may be largely determined by the operating temperature of the system. Established magnetite formations in pure steam systems may require a derouging step prior to the passivation steps.
Gaseous phase composition, including dissolved gases (O ₂ , CO ₂ , N ₂ , etc.)	For monographed fluids (WFI and pure steam), the constituency of dissolved gases are generally believed to have a minor influence on rouge formation when within established conductivity and total organic carbon (TOC) limits in systems that have an adequate passive layer. It is possible for impurities to migrate across distillation and pure steam generation processes as dissolved gases. A variety of analytic spectrometry methods are available to identify these species. (Refer to Tables D-3.1-1 and D-3.2-1.)
Application, process media (pure steam, WFI, buffer, media, CIP, etc.), frequency of operation	The nature of the oxide formations, potential for corrosion, remedial methods, and period of formation are greatly influenced by the application as noted in the other impact descriptions (temperature, corrosive process, etc.). In steam-in-place (SIP) systems, velocity, temperature, and trapping can have impacts on the composition and locations of rouge formations and migratory deposits. Adequately designed systems can minimize this impact. Poorly trapped pure steam headers, regularly exposed to pressure gradients, can introduce corrosion mechanisms and products through steam condensate. Long hold periods in high salt buffer tanks and the effectiveness of the tank agitation can promote or accelerate rouge formation. SIP following inadequate CIP can create corrosion mechanisms and further aggravate removal methods.
System CIP, cleaning methods	Exposure to CIP cycles and the specific chemical cleaning solutions strongly affect the potential for rouge occurrence. System sections exposed to a cyclic CIP regime will be less likely to form or collect rouge. Significant factors include whether there is an acid or hot acid CIP cycle in the CIP recipe. The duration and temperature of the acid cycle can be important. Acid cycles with mild concentrations (e.g., 2% to 20% phosphoric acid) have been shown to maintain and restore passive layers.
Redox potential	The use of ozone to sanitize purified water or WFI systems has also demonstrated beneficial effects in impeding alloy corrosion.



Table D-2-2 Considerations That Affect the Amount of Rouge Formation During the Operation of a System (Cont'd)

Variables	Considerations
Category 2 — Moderate Influence on the Formation of Rouge [Note (1)]	
Maintenance of the system	System components such as worn pure steam regulator plug seats, improper or misaligned gaskets, worn regulator and valve diaphragms, pump impellers (with worn tips), and eroded or cracked heat exchanger tube returns are believed to be sources of Class I rouge.
Stagnant flow areas	A moving oxidizing fluid can maintain the passive layer. (Studies with nitrogen blanketed WFI storage tanks have shown negative effects on passive layers as a result of minimizing oxygen in the fluid.) Liquid condensate that is not immediately removed from a pure steam conduit or that collects from improper valve sequencing can concentrate and transport surface oxidation products or steam contained solubles. These can concentrate and deposit at a branch terminus such as a vessel sprayball, dip tube, etc. These deposits are typically lightly held forms of hematite. Though easily removed, they can be difficult to remove in large vessels and appear to go against the common stipulation of “visually clean.”
Pressure gradients	Pure steam systems only. Pressure changes in the distribution system will affect the amount of steam condensate as well as affect the quality of the steam. If system sections are exposed to pressure ranges, condensate that is not effectively removed from horizontal sections can be re-vaporized at higher pressures, which will lower the steam quality and transport any impurities borne in the steam condensate.
System age	This depends on how the system has been maintained in regard to frequency of passivation or derouging, CIP exposure, and formation of stable oxide layers. New systems have been observed to generate disproportionate amounts of Class I rouge formations in contrast to established systems. In pure steam systems, although oxide formations become stable with age, they can also thicken and be prone to particle sloughing in high velocity sections. It should be noted that system time in use can have both beneficial and negative effects in regard to rouge formation and that regular system monitoring is important in identification of incipient corrosion.

NOTE:

(1) There is well established industry data supporting this, and it needs to be considered.

to assist in its derouging effectiveness. Citric acid-based chemistries with additional organic acids are effective at rouge removal. The use of sodium hydrosulfite (i.e., sodium dithionite) is also fast and effective at removal of Class I rouge.

These chemistries are processed at elevated temperatures from 104°F (40°C) to 176°F (80°C) for between 2 hr and 12 hr. The process time and temperatures may depend upon the severity of rouge accumulation, the system component's material of construction, and the concentration of chemistries. The concentration of each chemistry is based upon proprietary testing and process design criteria.

Electrochemical cleaning is an alternative method of rouge removal that uses phosphoric acid and applied direct current where the product contact surface is anodic. As a cathode is moved over the product contact surface to be cleaned, rouge is readily removed. This process is very effective in removing all three classes of rouge but is limited to accessible parts of a system and is primarily performed on the product contact surfaces in vessels.

For specific Class I rouge remediation processes, refer to Table D-4.1-1.

D-4.2 Class II Rouge Remediation

Class II rouge is removed with chemistries that are very similar to the above listed processes with the addition of oxalic acid, which improves the effectiveness in removal of this type of rouge. This rouge consists mostly of hematite or ferric iron oxide with some amount of chromium and nickel oxides as well as small carbon content. All of the above chemistries remove the rouge without damage to the surface finish with the exception of oxalic acid, which may etch the surface depending on conditions and concentration processed. Class II rouges are more difficult to remove than Class I, and may require additional time, even though these processes are often run at slightly higher temperatures and increased concentrations.

For specific Class II rouge remediation processes, refer to Table D-4.1-1.



Table D-3.1-1 Process Fluid Analyses for the Identification of Mobile Constituents of Rouge

Type of Test	Test Description	Test Criteria	
		Pros	Cons
Ultra trace inorganic analysis (ICP/MS)	Concentrations of trace metals in process solutions including pure water/steam are directly analyzed by inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry (ICP/MS).	Noninvasive sample acquisition. Highly quantitative information. Provides strong ability to trend data.	Baseline must be determined for each system analyzed.
Standard particulate analysis (via light)	A liquid sample is subjected to a laser light, which scatters upon contact with particles. The scattered light is collected, processed, segregated by channel, and displayed as a specific count for each size range analyzed.	Noninvasive sample acquisition. Highly quantitative information. Provides strong ability to trend data.	Baseline must be determined for each system analyzed.
Ultra trace inorganic analysis (by SEM/EDX)	Fluids are filtered via vacuum filtration, and particles are collected on a fine pore filter medium. The particles are then analyzed by scanning electron microscopy for size, composition, and topographical features.	Provides highly detailed physical observation and elemental composition data for mobile particulates.	Limited with respect to organic particulate identification.
Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy (FTIR)	Organic analysis of liquid samples or extracts from wipe samples. Used to identify possible organic films or deposits.	Potentially noninvasive sample acquisition. Allows for organic identification of elastomers or alternate organic contaminants.	Organic contaminants must be profiled in a specific target compound library.

D-4.3 Class III Rouge Remediation

Class III rouge is much more difficult to remove compared to Class I and Class II rouge, both due to its chemical composition difference and its structural difference. These high temperature deposits form magnetite iron oxide with some substitution of chromium, nickel, or silica in the compound structure. Significant amounts of carbon are generally present in these deposits due to reduction of organics present in the water, which sometimes produces the "smut" or black film that may form during derouging. The chemistries used to remove this rouge are very aggressive and will affect the surface finish to some degree. Phosphoric acid-based derouging systems are generally only effective on very light accumulation of the rouge. The strong organic acid blends with formic and oxalic acid are effective on some of these high temperature rouges, and being less aggressive, produce much less potential for etching of the surface finish.

The citric and nitric blends with hydrofluoric acid or ammonium bifluoride will remove these Class III rouges more quickly, but will definitely etch the surface wherever the base metal is subjected to the derouging fluid. The amount of etching or increase in surface finish

roughness is dependent upon process conditions, chemical concentration, and variability of the rouge thickness and level of surface finish roughness initially. The condition of use for these processes is highly variable both in temperature and time required to effectively remove all of the rouge and leave the surface prepared for cleaning and passivation. The less aggressive chemistries are used at higher temperatures [140°F (60°C) to 176°F (80°C)] and require longer contact time (8 hr to 48-plus hours); the nitric acid-based fluoride solutions are often used at lower temperatures [ambient to 104°F (40°C)], while the citric acid-based fluoride solutions are used at the higher temperatures and shorter contact times (2 hr to 24 hr).

For specific Class III rouge remediation processes, refer to Table D-4.1-1.

D-4.4 Remediation Variables

The times and temperatures given above are in direct relation to the percent by weight of the base reactant(s). A change in a formulation will change those corresponding requirements. Different application methods include fluid circulation, gelled applications for welds or surfaces, and spraying methods for vessels and equipment.



Table D-3.2-1 Solid Surface Analyses for the Identification of Surface Layers Composition

Type of Test	Test Description	Test Criteria	
		Pros	Cons
Microscopic and human visual analysis	Visual analysis via polarized light microscopy (PLM), scanning electron microscopy (SEM), or alternative microscopy instrumentation.	Good test for morphology determination. Can be coupled with energy dispersive X-ray (spectroscopy) (EDX) analysis for elemental composition information.	Invasive test. Requires the periodic removal of solid samples (e.g., coupons)
Scanning auger microanalysis (SAM) or auger electron spectroscopy (auger)	Surface metal elemental composition analysis. Provides for detailed qualitative elemental composition data on both the surface itself and the sub-surface (or base metal).	Highly accurate method for positive identification and qualification of the surface metal composition. Utilized to determine the depth and elemental composition of the surface including the passive layer itself.	Invasive and destructive test. Requires the periodic removal of solid samples (e.g., coupons)
Small spot electron spectroscopy for chemical analysis (ESCA) or X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy (XPS)	The sample is subjected to a probe beam of X-rays of a single energy. Electrons are emitted from the surface and measured to provide elemental analysis of the top surface layers.	Highly accurate method for the qualification and quantification of the surface metal composition. Utilized to determine the depth and compositional analysis of the passive layer. Provides excellent elemental analysis of the top surface layers, including which oxide(s) are present.	Invasive and destructive test. Requires the periodic removal of solid samples (e.g., coupons)
Reflection grade ellipsometry	Multicolor interferometry utilizing light and its diffractive properties to assess surface conditions.	Nondestructive analysis. Known diffractive characteristics of elements could provide for qualitative analysis of surface chemistry properties.	Invasive test. Requires the periodic removal of solid samples (e.g., coupons). Field qualification of this method is still ongoing.
Electrochemical impedance spectrometry	The analysis of electrochemical noise in order to quantify state of corrosion of a metallic surface.	Noninvasive, real time quantification of metallic corrosion. Provides strong ability to trend data.	Field qualification of this method is still ongoing.

Rinsing of the surface after processing as well as proper waste disposal planning is critical to the derouging process. The waste fluids generated by these processes can be classified as hazardous due to chemical constituents or heavy metals content.

Rouge can effectively be removed from product contact surfaces to reduce the potential for oxide particulate

generation into the process fluids. These derouging processes are required prior to proper cleaning and passivation of the stainless steel surface for restoration of the passive layer after corrosion. Analytical testing of utility fluids can be useful in identifying the level of particulate generation and levels of metal oxides contained in these fluids as corrosion degrades the surface.

